or order thereunder, or any person who willfully, in any application, report, or document filed or required to be filed under the provisions of this subchapter or any rule, regulation, or order thereunder, makes any untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, shall upon conviction be fined not more than $10,000 or imprisoned not more than five years, or both.

(May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title III, § 325, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1177; amended Pub. L. 94–29, § 27(d), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 163.)

AMENDMENTS

1975—Pub. L. 94–29 substituted ''$10,000'' for ''$5,000''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### § 77zzz. Effect on existing law

Except as otherwise expressly provided, nothing in this subchapter shall affect (1) the jurisdiction of the Commission under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], or the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935,[1] over any person, security, or contract, or (2) the rights, obligations, duties, or liabilities of any person under such acts; nor shall anything in this subchapter affect the jurisdiction of any other commission, board, agency, or officer of the United States or of any State or political subdivision of any State, over any person or security, insofar as such jurisdiction does not conflict with any provision of this subchapter or any rule, regulation, or order thereunder.

(May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title III, § 326, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1177.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in text, is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 77a et seq.) of this chapter. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in text, is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 2B (§ 78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

The Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, referred to in text, is title I of act Aug. 26, 1935, ch. 687, 49 Stat. 803, as amended, which was classified generally to chapter 2C (§ 79 et seq.) of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, § 1263, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 974. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### § 77aaaa. Contrary stipulations void

Any condition, stipulation, or provision binding any person to waive compliance with any provision of this subchapter or with any rule, regulation, or order thereunder shall be void.

(May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title III, § 327, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1177.)

### § 77bbbb. Separability

If any provision of this subchapter or the application of such provision to any person or circumstance shall be held invalid, the remainder of the subchapter and the application of such provision to persons or circumstances other than those as to which it is held invalid shall not be affected thereby.

(May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title III, § 328, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1177.)

## CHAPTER 2B—SECURITIES EXCHANGES


Sec.
78a. Short title.
78b. Necessity for regulation.
78c. Definitions and application.
(a) Definitions.
(b) Power to define technical, trade, accounting, and other terms.
(c) Application to governmental departments or agencies.
(d) Issuers of municipal securities.
(e) Charitable organizations.
(f) Consideration of promotion of efficiency, competition, and capital formation.
(g) Church plans.
78c–1. Swap agreements.
(a) Non-security-based swap agreements.
(b) Security-based swap agreements.
78d. Securities and Exchange Commission.
(a) Establishment; composition; limitations on commissioners; terms of office.
(b) Appointment and compensation of staff and leasing authority.
(c) Acceptance of travel support for Commission activities from non-Federal sources; regulations.
(d) Acceptance of relocation expenses from former employers by professional fellows program participants.
(e) Fee payments.
(f) Reimbursement of expenses for assisting foreign securities authorities.
78d–1. Delegation of functions by Commission.
(a) Authorization; functions delegable; eligible persons; application of other laws.
(b) Right of review; procedure.
(c) Finality of delegated action.
78d–2. Transfer of functions with respect to assignment of personnel to chairman.
78d–3. Appearance and practice before the Commission.
(a) Authority to censure.
(b) Definition.
78e. Transactions on unregistered exchanges.
78f. National securities exchanges.
(a) Registration; application.
(b) Determination by Commission requisite to registration of applicant as a national securities exchange.
(c) Denial of membership in national exchanges; denial of association with member; conditions; limitation of membership.
(d) Discipline of national securities exchange members and persons associated with members; summary proceedings.


[1] See References in Text note below.

Sec.
(e) Commissions, allowances, discounts, and other fees.
(f) Compliance of non-members with exchange rules.
(g) Notice registration of security futures product exchanges.
(h) Trading in security futures products.
(i) Rules to avoid duplicative regulation of dual registrants.
(j) Procedures and rules for security future products.
(k) Rules relating to security futures products traded on foreign boards of trade.
78g. Margin requirements.
(a) Rules and regulations for extension of credit; standard for initial extension; undermargined accounts.
(b) Lower and higher margin requirements.
(c) Unlawful credit extension to customers.
(d) Unlawful credit extension in violation of rules and regulations; exceptions to application of rules, etc.
(e) Effective date of this section and rules and regulations.
(f) Unlawful receipt of credit; exemptions.
(g) Effect of bona fide agreement for delayed delivery of mortgage related security.
78h. Restrictions on borrowing and lending by members, brokers, and dealers.
78i. Manipulation of security prices.
(a) Transactions relating to purchase or sale of security.
(b) Transactions relating to puts, calls, straddles, or options.
(c) Endorsement or guarantee of puts, calls, straddles, or options.
(d) Registered warrant, right, or convertible security not included in ''put'', ''call'', ''straddle'', or ''option''.
(e) Persons liable; suits at law or in equity.
(f) Subsection (a) not applicable to exempted securities.
(g) Foreign currencies and security futures products.
(h) Limitations on practices that affect market volatility.
(i) Limitation on Commission authority.
78j. Manipulative and deceptive devices.
78j–1. Audit requirements.
(a) In general.
(b) Required response to audit discoveries.
(c) Auditor liability limitation.
(d) Civil penalties in cease-and-desist proceedings.
(e) Preservation of existing authority.
(f) Definitions.
(g) Prohibited activities.
(h) Preapproval required for non-audit services.
(i) Preapproval requirements.
(j) Audit partner rotation.
(k) Reports to audit committees.
(*l*) Conflicts of interest.
(m) Standards relating to audit committees.
78k. Trading by members of exchanges, brokers, and dealers.
(a) Trading for own account or account of associated person; exceptions.
(b) Registration of members as odd-lot dealers and specialists.
(c) Exemptions from provisions of section and rules and regulations.
(d) Prohibition on extension of credit by broker-dealer.
78k–1. National market system for securities; securities information processors.
(a) Congressional findings; facilitating establishment of national market system for securities; designation of qualified securities.
(b) Securities information processors; registration; withdrawal of registration; access to services; censure; suspension or revocation of registration.
(c) Rules and regulations covering use of mails or other means or instrumentalities of interstate commerce; reports of purchase or sale of qualified securities; limiting registered securities transactions to national securities exchanges.
(d) National Market Advisory Board.
(e) National markets system for security futures products.
78*l*. Registration requirements for securities.
(a) General requirement of registration.
(b) Procedure for registration; information.
(c) Additional or alternative information.
(d) Effective date of registration; withdrawal of registration.
(e) Exemption from provisions of section for period ending not later than July 1, 1935.
(f) Unlisted trading privileges for security originally listed on another national exchange.
(g) Registration of securities by issuer; exemptions.
(h) Exemption by rules and regulations from certain provisions of section.
(i) Securities issued by banks.
(j) Denial, suspension, or revocation of registration; notice and hearing.
(k) Trading suspensions; emergency authority.
(*l*) Issuance of any security in contravention of rules and regulations; application to annuity contracts and variable life policies.
78*l*–1. Applications for unlisted trading privileges deemed filed under section 78*l* of this title.
78m. Periodical and other reports.
(a) Reports by issuer of security; contents.
(b) Form of report; books, records, and internal accounting; directives.
(c) Alternative reports.
(d) Reports by persons acquiring more than five per centum of certain classes of securities.
(e) Purchase of securities by issuer.
(f) Reports by institutional investment managers.
(g) Statement of equity security ownership.
(h) Large trader reporting.
(i) Accuracy of financial reports.
(j) Off-balance sheet transactions.
(k) Prohibition on personal loans to executives.
(*l*) Real time issuer disclosures.
78n. Proxies.
(a) Solicitation of proxies in violation of rules and regulations.
(b) Giving or refraining from giving proxy in respect of any security carried for account of customer.
(c) Information to holders of record prior to annual or other meeting.

Sec.
(d) Tender offer by owner of more than five per centum of class of securities; exceptions.
(e) Untrue statement of material fact or omission of fact with respect to tender offer.
(f) Election or designation of majority of directors of issuer by owner of more than five per centum of class of securities at other than meeting of security holders.
(g) Filing fees.
(h) Proxy solicitations and tender offers in connection with limited partnership rollup transactions.
78*o*. Registration and regulation of brokers and dealers.
(a) Registration of all persons utilizing exchange facilities to effect transactions; exemptions.
(b) Manner of registration of brokers and dealers.
(c) Use of manipulative or deceptive devices; contravention of rules and regulations.
(d) Filing of supplementary and periodic information.
(e) Compliance with this chapter by members not required to be registered.
(f) Prevention of misuse of material, nonpublic information.
(g) Requirements for transactions in penny stocks.
(h) Limitations on State law.
(i) Rulemaking to extend requirements to new hybrid products.
(i) Limitation on Commission authority.
78*o*–1. Brokers deemed to be registered.
78*o*–2. Liabilities arising prior to amendment unaffected.
78*o*–3. Registered securities associations.
(a) Registration; application.
(b) Determinations by Commission requisite to registration of applicant as national securities association.
(c) National association rules; provision for registration of affiliated securities association.
(d) Registration as affiliated association; prerequisites; association rules.
(e) Dealings with nonmember professionals.
(f) Transactions in municipal securities.
(g) Denial of membership.
(h) Discipline of registered securities association members and persons associated with members; summary proceedings.
(i) Broker-dealer disciplinary history.
(j) Registration for sales of private securities offerings.
(k) Limited purpose national securities association.
(*l*) Rules to avoid duplicative regulation of dual registrants.
(m) Procedures and rules for security future products.
78*o*–4. Municipal securities.
(a) Registration of municipal securities dealers.
(b) Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board; rules and regulations.
(c) Discipline of municipal securities dealers; censure; suspension or revocation of registration; other sanctions; investigations.
(d) Issuance of municipal securities.
78*o*–5. Government securities brokers and dealers.
(a) Registration requirements; notice to regulatory agencies; manner of registration; exemption from registration requirements.
(b) Rules with respect to transactions in government securities.
(c) Sanctions for violations.
(d) Records of brokers and dealers subject to examination.
(e) Membership in national securities exchange; exemptions.
(f) Large position reporting.
(g) Effect on other laws; authority of Commission.
(h) Emergency authority.
78*o*–6. Securities analysts and research reports.
(a) Analyst protections.
(b) Disclosure.
(c) Definitions.
78p. Directors, officers, and principal stockholders.
(a) Disclosures required.
(b) Profits from purchase and sale of security within six months.
(c) Conditions for sale of security by beneficial owner, director, or officer.
(d) Securities held in investment account, transactions in ordinary course of business, and establishment of primary or secondary market.
(e) Application of section to foreign or domestic arbitrage transactions.
(f) Treatment of transactions in security futures products.
(g) Limitation on Commission authority.
78q. Records and reports.
(a) Rules and regulations.
(b) Records subject to examination.
(c) Copies of reports filed with other regulatory agencies.
(d) Self-regulatory organizations.
(e) Balance sheet and income statement; other financial statements and information.
(f) Missing, lost, counterfeit, and stolen securities.
(g) Persons extending credit.
(h) Risk assessment for holding company systems.
(i) Investment bank holding companies.
(j) Authority to limit disclosure of information.
(k) Coordination of examining authorities.
78q–1. National system for clearance and settlement of securities transactions.
(a) Congressional findings; facilitating establishment of system.
(b) Registration of clearing agencies; application; determinations by Commission requisite to registration of applicant as clearing agency; denial of participation; discipline; summary proceedings; exemption; facilities for handling derivatives.
(c) Registration of transfer agents.
(d) Activities of clearing agencies and transfer agents; enforcement by appropriate regulatory agencies.
(e) Physical movement of securities certificates.
(f) Rules concerning transfer of securities and rights and obligations of involved or affected parties.
78q–2. Automated quotation systems for penny stocks.
(a) Findings.
(b) Mandate to facilitate establishment of automated quotation systems.

Sec.
(c) Exemptive authority.
(d) Commission reporting requirements.
78r. Liability for misleading statements.
(a) Persons liable; persons entitled to recover; defense of good faith; suit at law or in equity; costs, etc.
(b) Contribution.
(c) Period of limitations.
78s. Registration, responsibilities, and oversight of self-regulatory organizations.
(a) Registration procedures; notice of filing; other regulatory agencies.
(b) Proposed rule changes; notice; proceedings.
(c) Amendment by Commission of rules of self-regulatory organizations.
(d) Notice of disciplinary action taken by self-regulatory organization against a member or participant; review of action by appropriate regulatory agency; procedure.
(e) Disposition of review; cancellation, reduction, or remission of sanction.
(f) Dismissal of review proceeding.
(g) Compliance with rules and regulations.
(h) Suspension or revocation of self-regulatory organization's registration; censure; other sanctions.
(i) Appointment of trustee.
78t. Liability of controlling persons and persons who aid and abet violations.
(a) Joint and several liability; good faith defense.
(b) Unlawful activity through or by means of any other person.
(c) Hindering, delaying, or obstructing the making or filing of any document, report, or information.
(d) Liability for trading in securities while in possession of material nonpublic information.
(e) Prosecution of persons who aid and abet violations.
(f) Limitation on Commission authority.
78t–1. Liability to contemporaneous traders for insider trading.
(a) Private rights of action based on contemporaneous trading.
(b) Limitations on liability.
(c) Joint and several liability for communicating.
(d) Authority not to restrict other express or implied rights of action.
(e) Provisions not to affect public prosecutions.
78u. Investigations and actions.
(a) Authority and discretion of Commission to investigate violations.
(b) Attendance of witnesses; production of records.
(c) Judicial enforcement of investigative power of Commission; refusal to obey subpoena; criminal sanctions.
(d) Injunction proceedings; authority of court to prohibit persons from serving as officers and directors; money penalties in civil actions.
(e) Mandamus.
(f) Rules of self-regulatory organizations or Board.
(g) Consolidation of actions; consent of Commission.
(h) Access to records.
(i) Information to CFTC.
78u–1. Civil penalties for insider trading.
(a) Authority to impose civil penalties.
(b) Limitations on liability.
(c) Authority of Commission.
(d) Procedures for collection.
(e) Authority to award bounties to informants.
(f) Definition.
(g) Limitation on Commission authority.
78u–2. Civil remedies in administrative proceedings.
(a) Commission authority to assess money penalties.
(b) Maximum amount of penalty.
(c) Determination of public interest.
(d) Evidence concerning ability to pay.
(e) Authority to enter order requiring accounting and disgorgement.
78u–3. Cease-and-desist proceedings.
(a) Authority of Commission.
(b) Hearing.
(c) Temporary order.
(d) Review of temporary orders.
(e) Authority to enter order requiring accounting and disgorgement.
(f) Authority of the Commission to prohibit persons from serving as officers or directors.
78u–4. Private securities litigation.
(a) Private class actions.
(b) Requirements for securities fraud actions.
(c) Sanctions for abusive litigation.
(d) Defendant's right to written interrogatories.
(e) Limitation on damages.
(f) Proportionate liability.
78u–5. Application of safe harbor for forward-looking statements.
(a) Applicability.
(b) Exclusions.
(c) Safe harbor.
(d) Duty to update.
(e) Dispositive motion.
(f) Stay pending decision on motion.
(g) Exemption authority.
(h) Effect on other authority of Commission.
(i) Definitions.
78v. Hearings by Commission.
78w. Rules, regulations, and orders; annual reports.
(a) Power to make rules and regulations; considerations; public disclosure.
(b) Omitted.
(c) Procedure for adjudication.
(d) Cease-and-desist procedures.
78x. Public availability of information.
(a) ''Records'' defined.
(b) Disclosure or personal use.
(c) Confidential disclosures.
(d) Records obtained from foreign securities authorities.
(e) Savings provision.
78y. Court review of orders and rules.
(a) Final Commission orders; persons aggrieved; petition; record; findings; affirmance, modification, enforcement, or setting aside of orders; remand to adduce additional evidence.
(b) Commission rules; persons adversely affected; petition; record; affirmance, enforcement, or setting aside of rules; findings; transfer of proceedings.
(c) Objections not urged before Commission; stay of orders and rules; transfer of enforcement or review proceedings.
(d) Other appropriate regulatory agencies.
78z. Unlawful representations.
78aa. Jurisdiction of offenses and suits.
78aa–1. Special provision relating to statute of limitations on private causes of action.

Sec.
(a) Effect on pending causes of action.
(b) Effect on dismissed causes of action.
78bb. Effect on existing law.
(a) Addition of rights and remedies; recovery of actual damages; State securities commissions.
(b) Modification of disciplinary procedures.
(c) Continuing validity of disciplinary sanctions.
(d) Physical location of facilities of registered clearing agencies or registered transfer agents not to subject changes in beneficial or record ownership of securities to State or local taxes.
(e) Exchange, broker, and dealer commissions; brokerage and research services.
(f) Limitations on remedies.
78cc. Validity of contracts.
(a) Waiver provisions.
(b) Contract provisions in violation of chapter.
(c) Validity of loans, extensions of credit, and creation of liens; actual knowledge of violation.
78dd. Foreign securities exchanges.
78dd–1. Prohibited foreign trade practices by issuers.
(a) Prohibition.
(b) Exception for routine governmental action.
(c) Affirmative defenses.
(d) Guidelines by Attorney General.
(e) Opinions of Attorney General.
(f) Definitions.
(g) Alternative jurisdiction.
78dd–2. Prohibited foreign trade practices by domestic concerns.
(a) Prohibition.
(b) Exception for routine governmental action.
(c) Affirmative defenses.
(d) Injunctive relief.
(e) Guidelines by Attorney General.
(f) Opinions of Attorney General.
(g) Penalties.
(h) Definitions.
(i) Alternative jurisdiction.
78dd–3. Prohibited foreign trade practices by persons other than issuers or domestic concerns.
(a) Prohibition.
(b) Exception for routine governmental action.
(c) Affirmative defenses.
(d) Injunctive relief.
(e) Penalties.
(f) Definitions.
78ee. Transaction fees.
(a) Recovery of cost of services.
(b) Exchange-traded securities.
(c) Off-exchange trades of exchange registered and last-sale-reported securities.
(d) Assessments on security futures transactions.
(e) Dates for payments.
(f) Exemptions.
(g) Publication.
(h) Pro rata application.
(i) Deposit of fees.
(j) Recapture of projection windfalls for further rate reductions.
(k) Lapse of appropriation.
(*l*) Definitions.
78ff. Penalties.
(a) Willful violations; false and misleading statements.
(b) Failure to file information, documents, or reports.
(c) Violations by issuers, officers, directors, stockholders, employees, or agents of issuers.
78gg. Separability.
78hh. Effective date.
78hh–1. Effective date of certain sections.
78ii, 78jj. Omitted or Repealed.
78kk. Authorization of appropriations.
78*ll*. Requirements for the EDGAR system.
78mm. General exemptive authority.
(a) Authority.
(b) Limitation.
78nn. Tennessee Valley Authority.
(a) In general.
(b) Limited treatment as issuer.
(c) No effect on TVA authority.

## § 78a. Short title

This chapter may be cited as the ''Securities Exchange Act of 1934.''

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §1, 48 Stat. 881.)

### References in Text

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original ''This Act'' meaning the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, act June 6, 1934, ch. 404. The act was divided into two titles as follows: ''Title I—Regulation of Securities Exchanges'' and ''Title II—Amendments to Securities Act of 1933.'' This section was section 1 of title I of the Act, which title, as amended, is set out as sections 78a to 78*l*, 78m to 78*o*, 78*o*–3 to 78dd–1, 78ee to 78hh, and 78mm of this title. Sections 78kk, 78*ll*, and 78nn of this title, which were directed to be added at the end of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, have been treated in the Code as added to title I of the Act to reflect the probable intent of Congress. See Codification notes set out under those sections. Title II of the act amended or repealed sections 77b to 77e, 77j, 77k, 77m, 77*o*, and 77s, and added former sections 78ii and 78jj of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

### Short Title of 2004 Amendment

Pub. L. 108–458, title VII, §7803(a), Dec. 17, 2004, 118 Stat. 3861, provided that: ''This section [amending sections 78*l* and 78*o*–5 of this title] may be cited as the 'Emergency Securities Response Act of 2004'.''

### Short Title of 2002 Amendments

Pub. L. 107–204, title XI, §1101, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 807, provided that: ''This title [amending sections 77h–1, 78u–3, and 78ff of this title and sections 1512 and 1513 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 994 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure] may be cited as the 'Corporate Fraud Accountability Act of 2002'.''

Pub. L. 107–123, §1, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2390, provided that: ''This Act [enacting chapter 48 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, amending sections 77f, 77ggg, 78d, 78m, 78n, and 78ee of this title, sections 3132 and 5373 of Title 5, and section 1833b of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 78ee of this title and section 4802 of Title 5] may be cited as the 'Investor and Capital Markets Fee Relief Act'.''

### Short Title of 1998 Amendments

Pub. L. 105–366, §1, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3302, provided that: ''This Act [enacting section 78dd–3 of this title, amending sections 78dd–1, 78dd–2, and 78ff of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 78dd–1 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Anti-Bribery and Fair Competition Act of 1998'.''

Pub. L. 105–353, §1, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3227, provided that: ''This Act [amending sections 77b, 77k, 77m,

77p, 77r, 77v, 77z–1 to 77z–3, 77aa, 77ccc, 77ddd, 77mmm, 77sss, 78c, 78d, 78g, 78n, 78*o*, 78*o*–4, 78*o*–5, 78q, 78s, 78t, 78u–4, 78z, 78bb, 78ee, 78kk, 78*ll*, 80a–2, 80a–3, 80a–12, 80a–18, 80a–29, 80a–30, 80b–3, and 80b–18a of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 77p and 78u of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act of 1998'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104–290, § 1(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3416, provided that: ''This Act [enacting sections 77z–3, 78mm, and 80b–3a of this title, amending sections 77b, 77c, 77f, 77r, 77ddd, 78c, 78d, 78g, 78h, 78*o*, 78q, 78bb, 78ee, 78kk, 80a–2, 80a–3, 80a–6, 80a–12, 80a–24, 80a–26, 80a–27, 80a–29, 80a–30, 80a–34, 80a–54, 80a–60, 80a–63, 80b–2, 80b–3, 80b–5, and 80b–18a of this title and section 1002 of Title 29, Labor, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 77e, 77r, 78b, 78n, 78*o*, 78ee, 80a–2, 80a–3, 80a–24, 80a–51, 80b–2, 80b–3a, 80b–10, and 80b–20 of this title, and section 1002 of Title 29] may be cited as the 'National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996'.''

Pub. L. 104–290, title I, § 101, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3417, provided that: ''This title [enacting sections 77z–3 and 78mm of this title, amending sections 77b, 77r, 78c, 78g, 78h, 78*o*, 78q, 78bb, and 80a–2 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 77e and 77r of this title] may be cited as the 'Capital Markets Efficiency Act of 1996'.''

Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, § 401, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3441, provided that: ''This title [amending sections 77f, 78d, 78ee, and 78kk of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 78ee of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities and Exchange Commission Authorization Act of 1996'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104–67, § 1(a), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 737, provided that: ''This Act [enacting sections 77z–1, 77z–2, 78j–1, 78u–4, and 78u–5 of this title, amending sections 77k, 77*l*, 77t, 78*o*, 78t, 78u, and 78u–4 of this title and section 1964 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 77k, 77*l*, and 78j–1 of this title] may be cited as the 'Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1994 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 103–389, § 1, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4081, provided that: ''This Act [amending section 78*l* of this title] may be cited as the 'Unlisted Trading Privileges Act of 1994'.''

Pub. L. 103–325, title II, § 201, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2198, provided that: ''This subtitle [subtitle A (§§ 201–210) of title II of Pub. L. 103–325 enacting section 1835 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, amending sections 77r–1, 78c, 78g, 78h, and 78k of this title and sections 24, 1464, and 1757 of Title 12, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 78b of this title and section 3305 of Title 12] may be cited as the 'Small Business Loan Securitization and Secondary Market Enhancement Act of 1994'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103–202, § 1(a), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2344, provided that: ''This Act [enacting section 3130 of Title 31, Money and Finance, amending sections 78c, 78f, 78n, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78*o*–5, 78s, and 78w of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 78f, 78n, and 78*o*–5 of this title, and section 3121 of Title 31] may be cited as the 'Government Securities Act Amendments of 1993'.''

Pub. L. 103–202, title III, § 301, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2359, provided that: ''This title [amending sections 78f, 78n, and 78*o*–3 of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78f and 78n of this title] may be cited as the 'Limited Partnership Rollup Reform Act of 1993'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1990 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 101–550, § 1, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2713, provided that: ''This Act [amending sections 77ccc to 77eee, 77iii to 77rrr, 77uuu, 77vvv, 78c, 78d, 78n, 78*o*, 78*o*–4, 78*o*–5, 78q–1, 78x, 78kk, 79z–5, 80a–2, 80a–9, 80a–44, 80a–45, 80b–2, 80b–3, 80b–10, and 80b–18 of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 77aaa and 78n of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities Acts Amendments of 1990'.''

Pub. L. 101–550, title I, § 101, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2713, provided that: ''This title [amending sections 77uuu, 78d, 78kk, 79z–5, 80a–45, and 80b–18 of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities and Exchange Commission Authorization Act of 1990'.''

Pub. L. 101–550, title II, § 201, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2714, provided that: ''This title [amending sections 78c, 78d, 78*o*, 78*o*–4, 78*o*–5, 78q–1, 78x, 80a–2, 80a–9, 80a–44, 80b–2, 80b–3, and 80b–10 of this title] may be cited as the 'International Securities Enforcement Cooperation Act of 1990'.''

Pub. L. 101–550, title III, § 301, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2721, provided that: ''This title [amending section 78n of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 78n of this title] may be cited as the 'Shareholder Communications Improvement Act of 1990'.''

Pub. L. 101–432, § 1, Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 963, provided that: ''This Act [enacting section 1831*l* of Title 12, Banks and Banking, amending sections 78i, 78*l*, 78m, 78*o*–5, 78q, 78q–1, and 78y of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78b and 78q–1 of this title] may be cited as the 'Market Reform Act of 1990'.''

Pub. L. 101–429, § 1(a), Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 931, provided that: ''This Act [enacting sections 77h–1, 78q–2, 78u–2, and 78u–3 of this title, amending sections 77g, 77t, 78c, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78*o*–4, 78q–1, 78u, 78u–1, 78w, 78cc, 80a–9, 80a–41, 80b–3, 80b–9, and 80b–14 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 77g, 78*o*, and 78s of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities Enforcement Remedies and Penny Stock Reform Act of 1990'.''

Pub. L. 101–429, title V, § 501, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 951, provided that: ''This title [enacting section 78q–2 of this title, amending sections 77g, 78c, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, and 78cc of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78*o* and 78s of this title] may be cited as the 'Penny Stock Reform Act of 1990'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1988 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 100–704, § 1, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4677, provided that: ''This Act [enacting sections 78t–1, 78u–1, and 80b–4a of this title, amending sections 78c, 78*o*, 78u, 78ff, and 78kk of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78b, 78*o*, and 78u–1 of this title] may be cited as the 'Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act of 1988'.''

Pub. L. 100–418, title V, § 5001, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1415, provided that: ''This part [part I (§§ 5001–5003) of subtitle A of title I of Pub. L. 100–418, amending sections 78m, 78dd–1, 78dd–2, and 78ff of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 78dd–1 of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Corrupt Practices Act Amendments of 1988'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1987 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 100–181, § 1, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1249, provided that: ''This Act [enacting sections 78d–1, 78d–2, and 78*ll* of this title, amending sections 77b, 77c, 77f, 77i, 77s, 77t, 77v, 77ccc, 78c, 78d, 78f, 78k–1, 78*l*, 78m, 78*o*, 78*o*–4, 78*o*–5, 78q, 78q–1, 78u, 78w, 78aa, 78bb, 78kk, 78*lll*, 79h, 79r, 79x, 79y, 79z–4, 80a–2, 80a–3, 80a–5, 80a–6, 80a–9, 80a–12, 80a–15, 80a–17, 80a–18, 80a–20, 80a–21, 80a–22, 80a–24, 80a–26, 80a–28, 80a–35, 80a–41, 80a–52, 80a–53, 80a–54, 80a–56, 80b–2, 80b–3, 80b–5, 80b–9, 80b–11, 80b–13, and 80b–14 of this title, and repealing sections 78d–1, 78d–2, and 78jj of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities and Exchange Commission Authorization Act of 1987'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 99–571, § 1(a), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3208, provided that: ''This Act [enacting section 78*o*–5 of this title and section 9110 of Title 31, Money and Finance, amending sections 78c, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78q, 78w, 78y, 80a–9, and 80b–3 of this title and section 3121 of Title 31, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 78*o*–5 of this title] may be cited as the 'Government Securities Act of 1986'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 99–222, § 1, Dec. 28, 1985, 99 Stat. 1737, provided that: ''This Act [amending section 78n of this title and enacting a provision set out as a note under section 78n of this title] may be cited as the 'Shareholder Communications Act of 1985'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 98–376, § 1, Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1264, provided that: ''This Act [amending sections 78c, 78*o*, 78t, 78u, and 78ff of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 78c of this title] may be cited as the 'Insider Trading Sanctions Act of 1984'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1977 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 95–213, title I, § 101, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1494, provided that: ''This title [enacting sections 78dd–1 and 78dd–2 of this title and amending sections 78m and 78ff of this title] may be cited as the 'Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977'.''

Pub. L. 95–213, title II, § 201, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1498, provided that: ''This title [amending sections 78m and 78*o* of this title] may be cited as the 'Domestic and Foreign Investment Improved Disclosure Act of 1977'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 94–29, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 97, provided: ''That this Act [enacting sections 78k–1, 78*o*–4, 78q–1, and 78kk of this title, amending sections 77d, 77x, 77yyy, 78b, 78c, 78d–1, 78f, 78h, 78k, 78*l*, 78m, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78q, 78s, 78u, 78w, 78x, 78y, 78bb, 78ee, 78ff, 78iii, 79z–3, 80a–9, 80a–10, 80a–13, 80a–15, 80a–16, 80a–18, 80a–31, 80a–35, 80a–48, 80b–3, 80b–4, and 80b–17 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78b and 78f of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities Acts Amendments of 1975'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Section 1 of Pub. L. 88–467, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 565, provided: ''That this Act [amending sections 77d, 78c, 78*l* to 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78p, 78t, 78w, and 78ff of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 78c of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities Acts Amendments of 1964'.''

SHORT TITLE OF 1936 AMENDMENT

Act May 27, 1936, ch. 462, 49 Stat. 1375, enacting sections 78*l*–1, 78*o*–1, 78*o*–2, and 78hh–1 of this title, and amending sections 78*l*, 78*o*, 78q, 78r, 78t, 78u, 78w, and 78ff of this title, is popularly known as the Unlisted Securities Trading Act.

SEVERABILITY

Pub. L. 104–290, § 3, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3417, provided: ''If any provision of this Act [see Short Title of 1996 Amendment note above], an amendment made by this Act, or the application of such provision or amendment to any person or circumstance is held to be unconstitutional, the remainder of this Act, the amendments made by this Act, and the application of the provisions of such to any person or circumstance shall not be affected thereby.''

CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 105–353, § 2, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3227, provided that: ''The Congress finds that—

''(1) the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 [see Short Title of 1995 Amendment note above] sought to prevent abuses in private securities fraud lawsuits;

''(2) since enactment of that legislation, considerable evidence has been presented to Congress that a number of securities class action lawsuits have shifted from Federal to State courts;

''(3) this shift has prevented that Act from fully achieving its objectives;

''(4) State securities regulation is of continuing importance, together with Federal regulation of securities, to protect investors and promote strong financial markets; and

''(5) in order to prevent certain State private securities class action lawsuits alleging fraud from being used to frustrate the objectives of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995, it is appropriate to enact national standards for securities class action lawsuits involving nationally traded securities, while preserving the appropriate enforcement powers of State securities regulators and not changing the current treatment of individual lawsuits.''

PURPOSES OF 1996 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, § 402, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3441, provided: ''The purposes of this title [see Short Title of 1996 Amendment note above] are—

''(1) to authorize appropriations for the Commission for fiscal year 1997; and

''(2) to reduce over time the rates of fees charged under the Federal securities laws.''

DEFINITIONS

Pub. L. 104–290, § 2, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3417, provided: ''For purposes of this Act [see Short Title of 1996 Amendment note above]—

''(1) the term 'Commission' means the Securities and Exchange Commission; and

''(2) the term 'State' has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c].''

## § 78b. Necessity for regulation

For the reasons hereinafter enumerated, transactions in securities as commonly conducted upon securities exchanges and over-the-counter markets are affected with a national public interest which makes it necessary to provide for regulation and control of such transactions and of practices and matters related thereto, including transactions by officers, directors, and principal security holders, to require appropriate reports to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanisms of a national market system for securities and a national system for the clearance and settlement of securities transactions and the safeguarding of securities and funds related thereto, and to impose requirements necessary to make such regulation and control reasonably complete and effective, in order to protect interstate commerce, the national credit, the Federal taxing power, to protect and make more effective the national banking system and Federal Reserve System, and to insure the maintenance of fair and honest markets in such transactions:

(1) Such transactions (a) are carried on in large volume by the public generally and in large part originate outside the States in which the exchanges and over-the-counter markets are located and/or are effected by means of the mails and instrumentalities of interstate commerce; (b) constitute an important part of the current of interstate commerce; (c) involve in large part the securities of issuers engaged in interstate commerce; (d)

involve the use of credit, directly affect the financing of trade, industry, and transportation in interstate commerce, and directly affect and influence the volume of interstate commerce; and affect the national credit.

(2) The prices established and offered in such transactions are generally disseminated and quoted throughout the United States and foreign countries and constitute a basis for determining and establishing the prices at which securities are bought and sold, the amount of certain taxes owing to the United States and to the several States by owners, buyers, and sellers of securities, and the value of collateral for bank loans.

(3) Frequently the prices of securities on such exchanges and markets are susceptible to manipulation and control, and the dissemination of such prices gives rise to excessive speculation, resulting in sudden and unreasonable fluctuations in the prices of securities which (a) cause alternately unreasonable expansion and unreasonable contraction of the volume of credit available for trade, transportation, and industry in interstate commerce, (b) hinder the proper appraisal of the value of securities and thus prevent a fair calculation of taxes owing to the United States and to the several States by owners, buyers, and sellers of securities, and (c) prevent the fair valuation of collateral for bank loans and/or obstruct the effective operation of the national banking system and Federal Reserve System.

(4) National emergencies, which produce widespread unemployment and the dislocation of trade, transportation, and industry, and which burden interstate commerce and adversely affect the general welfare, are precipitated, intensified, and prolonged by manipulation and sudden and unreasonable fluctuations of security prices and by excessive speculation on such exchanges and markets, and to meet such emergencies the Federal Government is put to such great expense as to burden the national credit.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 2, 48 Stat. 881; Pub. L. 94–29, § 2, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 97.)

AMENDMENTS

1975—Pub. L. 94–29 inserted ''to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanisms of a national market system for securities and a national system for the clearance and settlement of securities transactions and the safeguarding of securities and funds related thereto,'' after ''require appropriate reports,'' in introductory provisions preceding par. (1).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29 provided that: ''This Act [enacting sections 78k–1, 78*o*–4, 78q–1, and 78kk of this title, amending this section and sections 77d, 77x, 77yyy, 78c, 78d–1, 78f, 78h, 78k, 78*l*, 78m, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78q, 78s, 78u, 78w, 78x, 78y, 78bb, 78ee, 78ff, 78iii, 79z–3, 80a–9, 80a–10, 80a–13, 80a–15, 80a–16, 80a–18, 80a–31, 80a–35, 80a–48, 80b–3, 80b–4, and 80b–17 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78a and 78f of this title] shall become effective on the date of its enactment [June 4, 1975] except as hereinafter provided. The amendments made by this Act to sections 3(a)(12), 6(a) through (d), 11A(b), 15(a), 15A, 15B(a), 17A(b), and (c), and 19(g) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [sections 78c(a)(12), 78f(a) through (d), 78k–1(b), 78*o*(a), 78*o*–3, 78*o*–4(a), 78q–1(b) and (c), and 78s(g) of this title] shall become effective one hundred eighty days after the date of enactment of this Act [June 4, 1975], and the amendments made by this Act to section 31 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [section 78ee of this title] shall become effective on January 1, 1976. Neither the provisions of section 3(a)(3), 6(b)(2), or 6(c)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (as amended by this Act) [section 78c(a)(3), 78f(b)(2), or 78f(c)(1) of this title] nor any rule or regulation thereunder shall apply so as to deprive any person of membership in any national securities exchange (or its successor) of which such person was, on the date of enactment of this Act [June 4, 1975], a member or a member firm as defined in the constitution of such exchange or so as to deny membership in any such exchange (or its successor) to any natural person who is or becomes associated with such member or member firm.''

STUDY AND REPORT ON IMPACT OF TECHNOLOGICAL ADVANCES ON SECURITIES MARKETS

Pub. L. 104–290, title V, § 510(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3450, provided that:

''(1) STUDY.—

''(A) IN GENERAL.—The Commission shall conduct a study of—

''(i) the impact of technological advances and the use of on-line information systems on the securities markets, including steps that the Commission has taken to facilitate the electronic delivery of prospectuses to institutional and other investors;

''(ii) how such technologies have changed the way in which the securities markets operate; and

''(iii) any steps taken by the Commission to address such changes.

''(B) CONSIDERATIONS.—In conducting the study under subparagraph (A), the Commission shall consider how the Commission has adapted its enforcement policies and practices in response to technological developments with regard to—

''(i) disclosure, prospectus delivery, and other customer protection regulations;

''(ii) intermediaries and exchanges in the domestic and international financial services industry;

''(iii) reporting by issuers, including communications with holders of securities;

''(iv) the relationship of the Commission with other national regulatory authorities and organizations to improve coordination and cooperation; and

''(v) the relationship of the Commission with State regulatory authorities and organizations to improve coordination and cooperation.

''(2) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996], the Commission shall submit a report to the Congress on the results of the study conducted under paragraph (1).''

JOINT STUDY ON IMPACT OF ADDITIONAL SECURITIES BASED ON POOLED OBLIGATIONS

Pub. L. 103–325, title II, § 209, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2202, provided that:

''(a) JOINT STUDY REQUIRED.—The Board and the Commission shall conduct a joint study of the impact of the provisions of this subtitle [subtitle A [§§ 201–210 of title II of Pub. L. 103–325], see Short Title of 1994 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] (including the amendments made by this subtitle) on the credit and securities markets. Such study shall evaluate—

''(1) the impact of the provisions of this subtitle on the availability of credit for business and commercial enterprises in general, and the availability of credit in particular for—

''(A) businesses in low- and moderate-income areas;

''(B) businesses owned by women and minorities;

''(C) community development efforts;

''(D) community development financial institutions;

''(E) businesses in different geographical regions; and

''(F) a diversity of types of businesses;

''(2) the structure and operation of the markets that develop for small business related securities and commercial mortgage related securities, including the types of entities (such as pension funds and insurance companies) that are significant purchasers of such securities, the extent to which such entities are sophisticated investors, the use of credit enhancements in obtaining investment-grade ratings, any conflicts of interest that arise in such markets, and any adverse effects of such markets on commercial real estate ventures, pension funds, or pension fund beneficiaries;

''(3) the extent to which the provisions of this subtitle with regard to margin requirements, the number of eligible investment rating categories, preemption of State law, and the treatment of such securities as government securities for the purpose of State investment limitations, affect the structure and operation of such markets; and

''(4) in view of the findings made pursuant to paragraphs (2) and (3), any additional suitability or disclosure requirements or other investor protections that should be required.

''(b) REPORTS.—

''(1) IN GENERAL.—The Board and the Commission shall submit to the Congress a report on the results of the study required by subsection (a) before the end of—

''(A) the 2-year period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 23, 1994];

''(B) the 4-year period beginning on such date of enactment; and

''(C) the 6-year period beginning on such date of enactment.

''(2) CONTENTS OF REPORT.—Each report required under paragraph (1) shall contain or be accompanied by such recommendations for administrative or legislative action as the Board and the Commission consider appropriate and may include recommendations regarding the need to develop a system for reporting additional information concerning investments by the entities described in subsection (a)(2).

''(c) DEFINITIONS.—As used in this section—

''(1) the term 'Board' means the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System; and

''(2) the term 'Commission' means the Securities and Exchange Commission.''

INTERMARKET COORDINATION; REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Pub. L. 101–432, § 8(a), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 976, provided that: ''The Secretary of the Treasury, the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Chairman of the Securities and Exchange Commission, and the Chairman of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, shall report to the Congress not later than May 31, 1991, and annually thereafter until May 31, 1995, on the following:

''(1) the efforts their respective agencies have made relating to the coordination of regulatory activities to ensure the integrity and competitiveness of United States financial markets;

''(2) the efforts their respective agencies have made to formulate coordinated mechanisms across marketplaces to protect the payments and market systems during market emergencies;

''(3) the views of their respective agencies with respect to the adequacy of margin levels and use of leverage by market participants; and

''(4) such other issues and concerns relating to the soundness, stability, and integrity of domestic and international capital markets as may be appropriate.

The agencies shall cooperate in the development of their reports, and prior to submitting its report to Congress, each agency shall provide copies to the other agencies.''

SECURITIES LAWS STUDY

Pub. L. 100–704, § 7, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4682, directed Securities and Exchange Commission to study and investigate adequacy of Federal securities laws and regulations for protection of the public interest and interests of investors, specified subjects for the study and investigation and authority of Commission in conducting the study and investigation, directed Commission to supply interim information to Congress on the progress of, and any impediments to completing, the study and investigation, directed Commission to report to Congress on results of the study and investigation within 18 months after the date funds are appropriated for the study and investigation, including in such report the Commission's recommendations.

FOREIGN INVESTMENT STUDY

Pub. L. 93–479, Oct. 26, 1974, 88 Stat. 1450, directed Secretary of the Treasury and Secretary of Commerce to conduct a comprehensive, overall study of foreign direct and portfolio investments in the United States and submit to Congress an interim report twelve months after Oct. 26, 1974, and not later than one and one-half years after Oct. 26, 1974, a full and complete report of the findings made under the study authorized, together with such recommendations as they considered appropriate.

EX. ORD. NO. 11858. FOREIGN INVESTMENT IN THE UNITED STATES

Ex. Ord. No. 11858, May 7, 1975, 40 F.R. 20263, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12188, Jan. 2, 1980, 45 F.R. 989; Ex. Ord. No. 12661, Dec. 27, 1988, 54 F.R. 779; Ex. Ord. No. 12860, Sept. 3, 1993, 58 F.R. 47201; Ex. Ord. No. 13286, § 57, Feb. 28, 2003, 68 F.R. 10629, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me by the Constitution and statutes of the United States of America, including the Act of February 14, 1903, as amended (15 U.S.C. 1501 et seq.), section 10 of the Gold Reserve Act of 1934, as amended (31 U.S.C. 822a), and section 301 of title 3 of the United States Code, and as President of the United States of America, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. (a) There is hereby established the Committee on Foreign Investment in the United States (hereinafter referred to as the Committee). The Committee shall be composed of the following:

(1) The Secretary of State.

(2) The Secretary of the Treasury.

(3) The Secretary of Defense.

(4) The Secretary of Commerce.

(5) The United States Trade Representative.

(6) The Chairman of the Council of Economic Advisers.

(7) The Attorney General.

(8) The Secretary of Homeland Security.

(9) The Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

(9)[sic] the Director of the Office of Science and Technology Policy.

(10) the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs.

(11) the Assistant to the President for Economic Policy.

The Secretary of the Treasury shall be the chairman of the Committee. The chairman, as he deems appropriate, may invite representatives of other departments and agencies to participate from time to time in activities of the Committee.

(b) The Committee shall have primary continuing responsibility within the Executive Branch for monitoring the impact of foreign investment in the United States, both direct and portfolio, and for coordinating the implementation of United States policy on such investment. In fulfillment of this responsibility, the Committee shall:

(1) arrange for the preparation of analyses of trends and significant developments in foreign investments in the United States;

(2) provide guidance on arrangements with foreign governments for advance consultations on prospective major foreign governmental investments in the United States;

(3) review investments in the United States which, in the judgment of the Committee, might have major implications for United States national interests;

(4) consider proposals for new legislation or regulations relating to foreign investment as may appear necessary; and

(5) coordinate the views of the Executive Branch and discharge the responsibilities with respect to Section 721(a) and (e) of the Defense Production Act of 1950 [50 U.S.C. App. 2170(a), (e)], as amended (50 U.S.C. App. 2061 *et seq.*) (''Defense Production Act'').

(c) As the need arises, the Committee shall submit recommendations and analyses to the National Security Council and to the Economic Policy Board. It shall also arrange for the preparation and publication of periodic reports.

SEC. 2. The Secretary of Commerce, with respect to the collection and use of data on foreign investment in the United States, shall provide, in particular, for the performance of the following activities:

(a) The obtainment, consolidation, and analysis of information on foreign investment in the United States;

(b) the improvement of procedures for the collection and dissemination of information on such foreign investment;

(c) the close observation of foreign investment in the United States;

(d) the preparation of reports and analyses of trends and of significant developments in appropriate categories of such investment;

(e) the compilation of data and preparation of evaluations of significant investment transactions; and

(f) the submission to the Committee of appropriate reports, analyses, data and recommendations relating to foreign investment in the United States, including recommendations as to how information on foreign investment can be kept current.

SEC. 3. The Secretary of the Treasury is authorized, without further approval of the President, to make reasonable use of the resources of the Exchange Stabilization Fund, in accordance with section 10 of the Gold Reserve Act of 1934, as amended (31 U.S.C. 822a) [31 U.S.C. 5302], to pay any of the expenses directly incurred by the Secretary of Commerce in the performance of the functions and activities provided by this order. This authority shall be in effect for one year, unless revoked prior thereto.

SEC. 4. All departments and agencies are directed to provide, to the extent permitted by law, such information and assistance as may be requested by the Committee or the Secretary of Commerce in carrying out their functions and activities under this order.

SEC. 5. Information which has been submitted or received in confidence shall not be publicly disclosed, except to the extent required by law; and such information shall be used by the Committee only for the purpose of carrying out the functions and activities prescribed by this order. Information or documentary material filed pursuant to Section 1(b)(5) or Section 7 of this Order shall be treated in accordance with paragraph (b) of Section 721 of the Defense Production Act [50 U.S.C. App. 2170(b)].

SEC. 6. Nothing in this order shall affect the data-gathering, regulatory, or enforcement authority of any existing department or agency over foreign investment, and the review of individual investments provided by this order shall not in any way supersede or prejudice any other process provided by law.

SEC. 7. (1) *Investigations.* (a) The Committee is designated to receive notices and other information, to determine whether investigations should be undertaken, and to make investigations, pursuant to Section 721(a) of the Defense Production Act [50 U.S.C. App. 2170(a)]. (b) If the Committee determines that an investigation should be undertaken, such investigation shall commence no later than 30 days after receipt by the Committee of written notification of the proposed or pending merger, acquisition, or takeover. Such investigation shall be completed no later than 45 days after such determination. (c) If one or more Committee members differ with a Committee decision not to undertake an investigation, the Chairman shall submit a report of the Committee to the President setting forth the differing views and presenting the issues for his decision within 25 days after receipt by the Committee of written notification of the proposed or pending merger, acquisition, or takeover. (d) A unanimous decision by the Committee not to undertake an investigation with regard to a notice shall conclude action under this section on such notice. The Chairman shall advise the President of said decision.

(2) *Report to the President.* Upon completion or termination of any investigation, the Committee shall report to the President and present a recommendation. Any such report shall include information relevant to subparagraphs (1) and (2) of Section 721(d) of the Defense Production Act. If the Committee is unable to reach a unanimous recommendation, the Chairman shall submit a report of the Committee to the President setting forth the differing views and presenting the issues for his decision.

SEC. 8. The Chairman of the Committee, in consultation with other members of the Committee, is hereby delegated the authority to issue regulations to implement Section 721 of the Defense Production Act [50 U.S.C. App. 2170].

EX. ORD. NO. 12631. WORKING GROUP ON FINANCIAL MARKETS

Ex. Ord. No. 12631, Mar. 18, 1988, 53 F.R. 9421, provided:

By virtue of the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and laws of the United States of America, and in order to establish a Working Group on Financial Markets, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Establishment.* (a) There is hereby established a Working Group on Financial Markets (Working Group). The Working Group shall be composed of:

(1) the Secretary of the Treasury, or his designee;

(2) the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, or his designee;

(3) the Chairman of the Securities and Exchange Commission, or his designee; and

(4) the Chairman of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, or her designee.

(b) The Secretary of the Treasury, or his designee, shall be the Chairman of the Working Group.

SEC. 2. *Purposes and Functions.* (a) Recognizing the goals of enhancing the integrity, efficiency, orderliness, and competitiveness of our Nation's financial markets and maintaining investor confidence, the Working Group shall identify and consider:

(1) the major issues raised by the numerous studies on the events in the financial markets surrounding October 19, 1987, and any of those recommendations that have the potential to achieve the goals noted above; and

(2) the actions, including governmental actions under existing laws and regulations (such as policy coordination and contingency planning), that are appropriate to carry out these recommendations.

(b) The Working Group shall consult, as appropriate, with representatives of the various exchanges, clearinghouses, self-regulatory bodies, and with major market participants to determine private sector solutions wherever possible.

(c) The Working Group shall report to the President initially within 60 days (and periodically thereafter) on its progress and, if appropriate, its views on any recommended legislative changes.

SEC. 3. *Administration.* (a) The heads of Executive departments, agencies, and independent instrumentalities shall, to the extent permitted by law, provide the Working Group such information as it may require for the purpose of carrying out this Order.

(b) Members of the Working Group shall serve without additional compensation for their work on the Working Group.

(c) To the extent permitted by law and subject to the availability of funds therefor, the Department of the Treasury shall provide the Working Group with such

administrative and support services as may be necessary for the performance of its functions.

RONALD REAGAN.

## § 78c. Definitions and application

### (a) Definitions

When used in this chapter, unless the context otherwise requires—

(1) The term ''exchange'' means any organization, association, or group of persons, whether incorporated or unincorporated, which constitutes, maintains, or provides a market place or facilities for bringing together purchasers and sellers of securities or for otherwise performing with respect to securities the functions commonly performed by a stock exchange as that term is generally understood, and includes the market place and the market facilities maintained by such exchange.

(2) The term ''facility'' when used with respect to an exchange includes its premises, tangible or intangible property whether on the premises or not, any right to the use of such premises or property or any service thereof for the purpose of effecting or reporting a transaction on an exchange (including, among other things, any system of communication to or from the exchange, by ticker or otherwise, maintained by or with the consent of the exchange), and any right of the exchange to the use of any property or service.

(3)(A) The term ''member'' when used with respect to a national securities exchange means (i) any natural person permitted to effect transactions on the floor of the exchange without the services of another person acting as broker, (ii) any registered broker or dealer with which such a natural person is associated, (iii) any registered broker or dealer permitted to designate as a representative such a natural person, and (iv) any other registered broker or dealer which agrees to be regulated by such exchange and with respect to which the exchange undertakes to enforce compliance with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its own rules. For purposes of sections 78f(b)(1), 78f(b)(4), 78f(b)(6), 78f(b)(7), 78f(d), 78q(d), 78s(d), 78s(e), 78s(g), 78s(h), and 78u of this title, the term ''member'' when used with respect to a national securities exchange also means, to the extent of the rules of the exchange specified by the Commission, any person required by the Commission to comply with such rules pursuant to section 78f(f) of this title.

(B) The term ''member'' when used with respect to a registered securities association means any broker or dealer who agrees to be regulated by such association and with respect to whom the association undertakes to enforce compliance with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its own rules.

(4) BROKER.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term ''broker'' means any person engaged in the business of effecting transactions in securities for the account of others.

(B) EXCEPTION FOR CERTAIN BANK ACTIVITIES.—A bank shall not be considered to be a broker because the bank engages in any one or more of the following activities under the conditions described:

(i) THIRD PARTY BROKERAGE ARRANGEMENTS.—The bank enters into a contractual or other written arrangement with a broker or dealer registered under this chapter under which the broker or dealer offers brokerage services on or off the premises of the bank if—

(I) such broker or dealer is clearly identified as the person performing the brokerage services;

(II) the broker or dealer performs brokerage services in an area that is clearly marked and, to the extent practicable, physically separate from the routine deposit-taking activities of the bank;

(III) any materials used by the bank to advertise or promote generally the availability of brokerage services under the arrangement clearly indicate that the brokerage services are being provided by the broker or dealer and not by the bank;

(IV) any materials used by the bank to advertise or promote generally the availability of brokerage services under the arrangement are in compliance with the Federal securities laws before distribution;

(V) bank employees (other than associated persons of a broker or dealer who are qualified pursuant to the rules of a self-regulatory organization) perform only clerical or ministerial functions in connection with brokerage transactions including scheduling appointments with the associated persons of a broker or dealer, except that bank employees may forward customer funds or securities and may describe in general terms the types of investment vehicles available from the bank and the broker or dealer under the arrangement;

(VI) bank employees do not receive incentive compensation for any brokerage transaction unless such employees are associated persons of a broker or dealer and are qualified pursuant to the rules of a self-regulatory organization, except that the bank employees may receive compensation for the referral of any customer if the compensation is a nominal one-time cash fee of a fixed dollar amount and the payment of the fee is not contingent on whether the referral results in a transaction;

(VII) such services are provided by the broker or dealer on a basis in which all customers that receive any services are fully disclosed to the broker or dealer;

(VIII) the bank does not carry a securities account of the customer except as permitted under clause (ii) or (viii) of this subparagraph; and

(IX) the bank, broker, or dealer informs each customer that the brokerage services are provided by the broker or dealer and not by the bank and that the securities are not deposits or other obli-

gations of the bank, are not guaranteed by the bank, and are not insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

(ii) TRUST ACTIVITIES.—The bank effects transactions in a trustee capacity, or effects transactions in a fiduciary capacity in its trust department or other department that is regularly examined by bank examiners for compliance with fiduciary principles and standards, and—

(I) is chiefly compensated for such transactions, consistent with fiduciary principles and standards, on the basis of an administration or annual fee (payable on a monthly, quarterly, or other basis), a percentage of assets under management, or a flat or capped per order processing fee equal to not more than the cost incurred by the bank in connection with executing securities transactions for trustee and fiduciary customers, or any combination of such fees; and

(II) does not publicly solicit brokerage business, other than by advertising that it effects transactions in securities in conjunction with advertising its other trust activities.

(iii) PERMISSIBLE SECURITIES TRANSACTIONS.—The bank effects transactions in—

(I) commercial paper, bankers acceptances, or commercial bills;

(II) exempted securities;

(III) qualified Canadian government obligations as defined in section 24 of title 12, in conformity with section 78*o*–5 of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, or obligations of the North American Development Bank; or

(IV) any standardized, credit enhanced debt security issued by a foreign government pursuant to the March 1989 plan of then Secretary of the Treasury Brady, used by such foreign government to retire outstanding commercial bank loans.

(iv) CERTAIN STOCK PURCHASE PLANS.—

(I) EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS.—The bank effects transactions, as part of its transfer agency activities, in the securities of an issuer as part of any pension, retirement, profit-sharing, bonus, thrift, savings, incentive, or other similar benefit plan for the employees of that issuer or its affiliates (as defined in section 1841 of title 12), if the bank does not solicit transactions or provide investment advice with respect to the purchase or sale of securities in connection with the plan.

(II) DIVIDEND REINVESTMENT PLANS.—The bank effects transactions, as part of its transfer agency activities, in the securities of an issuer as part of that issuer's dividend reinvestment plan, if—

(aa) the bank does not solicit transactions or provide investment advice with respect to the purchase or sale of securities in connection with the plan; and

(bb) the bank does not net shareholders' buy and sell orders, other than for programs for odd-lot holders or plans registered with the Commission.

(III) ISSUER PLANS.—The bank effects transactions, as part of its transfer agency activities, in the securities of an issuer as part of a plan or program for the purchase or sale of that issuer's shares, if—

(aa) the bank does not solicit transactions or provide investment advice with respect to the purchase or sale of securities in connection with the plan or program; and

(bb) the bank does not net shareholders' buy and sell orders, other than for programs for odd-lot holders or plans registered with the Commission.

(IV) PERMISSIBLE DELIVERY OF MATERIALS.—The exception to being considered a broker for a bank engaged in activities described in subclauses (I), (II), and (III) will not be affected by delivery of written or electronic plan materials by a bank to employees of the issuer, shareholders of the issuer, or members of affinity groups of the issuer, so long as such materials are—

(aa) comparable in scope or nature to that permitted by the Commission as of November 12, 1999; or

(bb) otherwise permitted by the Commission.

(v) SWEEP ACCOUNTS.—The bank effects transactions as part of a program for the investment or reinvestment of deposit funds into any no-load, open-end management investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.] that holds itself out as a money market fund.

(vi) AFFILIATE TRANSACTIONS.—The bank effects transactions for the account of any affiliate of the bank (as defined in section 1841 of title 12) other than—

(I) a registered broker or dealer; or

(II) an affiliate that is engaged in merchant banking, as described in section 1843(k)(4)(H) of title 12.

(vii) PRIVATE SECURITIES OFFERINGS.—The bank—

(I) effects sales as part of a primary offering of securities not involving a public offering, pursuant to section 3(b), 4(2), or 4(6) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77c(b), 77d(2), 77d(6)] or the rules and regulations issued thereunder;

(II) at any time after the date that is 1 year after November 12, 1999, is not affiliated with a broker or dealer that has been registered for more than 1 year in accordance with this chapter, and engages in dealing, market making, or underwriting activities, other than with respect to exempted securities; and

(III) if the bank is not affiliated with a broker or dealer, does not effect any primary offering described in subclause (I) the aggregate amount of which exceeds 25 percent of the capital of the bank, ex-

cept that the limitation of this subclause shall not apply with respect to any sale of government securities or municipal securities.

(viii) SAFEKEEPING AND CUSTODY ACTIVITIES.—

(I) IN GENERAL.—The bank, as part of customary banking activities—

(aa) provides safekeeping or custody services with respect to securities, including the exercise of warrants and other rights on behalf of customers;

(bb) facilitates the transfer of funds or securities, as a custodian or a clearing agency, in connection with the clearance and settlement of its customers' transactions in securities;

(cc) effects securities lending or borrowing transactions with or on behalf of customers as part of services provided to customers pursuant to division (aa) or (bb) or invests cash collateral pledged in connection with such transactions;

(dd) holds securities pledged by a customer to another person or securities subject to purchase or resale agreements involving a customer, or facilitates the pledging or transfer of such securities by book entry or as otherwise provided under applicable law, if the bank maintains records separately identifying the securities and the customer; or

(ee) serves as a custodian or provider of other related administrative services to any individual retirement account, pension, retirement, profit sharing, bonus, thrift savings, incentive, or other similar benefit plan.

(II) EXCEPTION FOR CARRYING BROKER ACTIVITIES.—The exception to being considered a broker for a bank engaged in activities described in subclause (I) shall not apply if the bank, in connection with such activities, acts in the United States as a carrying broker (as such term, and different formulations thereof, are used in section 78*o*(c)(3) of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder) for any broker or dealer, unless such carrying broker activities are engaged in with respect to government securities (as defined in paragraph (42) of this subsection).

(ix) IDENTIFIED BANKING PRODUCTS.—The bank effects transactions in identified banking products as defined in section 206 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act.

(x) MUNICIPAL SECURITIES.—The bank effects transactions in municipal securities.

(xi) DE MINIMIS EXCEPTION.—The bank effects, other than in transactions referred to in clauses (i) through (x), not more than 500 transactions in securities in any calendar year, and such transactions are not effected by an employee of the bank who is also an employee of a broker or dealer.

(C) EXECUTION BY BROKER OR DEALER.—The exception to being considered a broker for a bank engaged in activities described in clauses (ii), (iv), and (viii) of subparagraph (B) shall not apply if the activities described in such provisions result in the trade in the United States of any security that is a publicly traded security in the United States, unless—

(i) the bank directs such trade to a registered broker or dealer for execution;

(ii) the trade is a cross trade or other substantially similar trade of a security that—

(I) is made by the bank or between the bank and an affiliated fiduciary; and

(II) is not in contravention of fiduciary principles established under applicable Federal or State law; or

(iii) the trade is conducted in some other manner permitted under rules, regulations, or orders as the Commission may prescribe or issue.

(D) FIDUCIARY CAPACITY.—For purposes of subparagraph (B)(ii), the term ''fiduciary capacity'' means—

(i) in the capacity as trustee, executor, administrator, registrar of stocks and bonds, transfer agent, guardian, assignee, receiver, or custodian under a uniform gift to minor act, or as an investment adviser if the bank receives a fee for its investment advice;

(ii) in any capacity in which the bank possesses investment discretion on behalf of another; or

(iii) in any other similar capacity.

(E) EXCEPTION FOR ENTITIES SUBJECT TO SECTION 78*o*(e).—The term ''broker'' does not include a bank that—

(i) was, on the day before November 12, 1999, subject to section 78*o*(e) of this title; and

(ii) is subject to such restrictions and requirements as the Commission considers appropriate.

(5) DEALER.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—The term ''dealer'' means any person engaged in the business of buying and selling securities for such person's own account through a broker or otherwise.

(B) EXCEPTION FOR PERSON NOT ENGAGED IN THE BUSINESS OF DEALING.—The term ''dealer'' does not include a person that buys or sells securities for such person's own account, either individually or in a fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business.

(C) EXCEPTION FOR CERTAIN BANK ACTIVITIES.—A bank shall not be considered to be a dealer because the bank engages in any of the following activities under the conditions described:

(i) PERMISSIBLE SECURITIES TRANSACTIONS.—The bank buys or sells—

(I) commercial paper, bankers acceptances, or commercial bills;

(II) exempted securities;

(III) qualified Canadian government obligations as defined in section 24 of title 12, in conformity with section 78*o*–5

of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, or obligations of the North American Development Bank; or

(IV) any standardized, credit enhanced debt security issued by a foreign government pursuant to the March 1989 plan of then Secretary of the Treasury Brady, used by such foreign government to retire outstanding commercial bank loans.

(ii) INVESTMENT, TRUSTEE, AND FIDUCIARY TRANSACTIONS.—The bank buys or sells securities for investment purposes—

(I) for the bank; or

(II) for accounts for which the bank acts as a trustee or fiduciary.

(iii) ASSET-BACKED TRANSACTIONS.—The bank engages in the issuance or sale to qualified investors, through a grantor trust or other separate entity, of securities backed by or representing an interest in notes, drafts, acceptances, loans, leases, receivables, other obligations (other than securities of which the bank is not the issuer), or pools of any such obligations predominantly originated by—

(I) the bank;

(II) an affiliate of any such bank other than a broker or dealer; or

(III) a syndicate of banks of which the bank is a member, if the obligations or pool of obligations consists of mortgage obligations or consumer-related receivables.

(iv) IDENTIFIED BANKING PRODUCTS.—The bank buys or sells identified banking products, as defined in section 206 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act.

(6) The term ''bank'' means (A) a banking institution organized under the laws of the United States, (B) a member bank of the Federal Reserve System, (C) any other banking institution, whether incorporated or not, doing business under the laws of any State or of the United States, a substantial portion of the business of which consists of receiving deposits or exercising fiduciary powers similar to those permitted to national banks under the authority of the Comptroller of the Currency pursuant to section 92a of title 12, and which is supervised and examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over banks, and which is not operated for the purpose of evading the provisions of this chapter, and (D) a receiver, conservator, or other liquidating agent of any institution or firm included in clauses (A), (B), or (C) of this paragraph.

(7) The term ''director'' means any director of a corporation or any person performing similar functions with respect to any organization, whether incorporated or unincorporated.

(8) The term ''issuer'' means any person who issues or proposes to issue any security; except that with respect to certificates of deposit for securities, voting-trust certificates, or collateral-trust certificates, or with respect to certificates of interest or shares in an unincorporated investment trust not having a board of directors or of the fixed, restricted management, or unit type, the term ''issuer'' means the person or persons performing the acts and assuming the duties of depositor or manager pursuant to the provisions of the trust or other agreement or instrument under which such securities are issued; and except that with respect to equipment-trust certificates or like securities, the term ''issuer'' means the person by whom the equipment or property is, or is to be, used.

(9) The term ''person'' means a natural person, company, government, or political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality of a government.

(10) The term ''security'' means any note, stock, treasury stock, security future, bond, debenture, certificate of interest or participation in any profit-sharing agreement or in any oil, gas, or other mineral royalty or lease, any collateral-trust certificate, preorganization certificate or subscription, transferable share, investment contract, voting-trust certificate, certificate of deposit for a security, any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency, or in general, any instrument commonly known as a ''security''; or any certificate of interest or participation in, temporary or interim certificate for, receipt for, or warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase, any of the foregoing; but shall not include currency or any note, draft, bill of exchange, or banker's acceptance which has a maturity at the time of issuance of not exceeding nine months, exclusive of days of grace, or any renewal thereof the maturity of which is likewise limited.

(11) The term ''equity security'' means any stock or similar security; or any security future on any such security; or any security convertible, with or without consideration, into such a security, or carrying any warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase such a security; or any such warrant or right; or any other security which the Commission shall deem to be of similar nature and consider necessary or appropriate, by such rules and regulations as it may prescribe in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to treat as an equity security.

(12)(A) The term ''exempted security'' or ''exempted securities'' includes—

(i) government securities, as defined in paragraph (42) of this subsection;

(ii) municipal securities, as defined in paragraph (29) of this subsection;

(iii) any interest or participation in any common trust fund or similar fund that is excluded from the definition of the term ''investment company'' under section 3(c)(3) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(3)];

(iv) any interest or participation in a single trust fund, or a collective trust fund maintained by a bank, or any security arising out of a contract issued by an insurance

company, which interest, participation, or security is issued in connection with a qualified plan as defined in subparagraph (C) of this paragraph;

(v) any security issued by or any interest or participation in any pooled income fund, collective trust fund, collective investment fund, or similar fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(10)(B)];

(vi) solely for purposes of sections 78*l*, 78m, 78n, and 78p of this title, any security issued by or any interest or participation in any church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(14)]; and

(vii) such other securities (which may include, among others, unregistered securities, the market in which is predominantly intrastate) as the Commission may, by such rules and regulations as it deems consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions or for stated periods, exempt from the operation of any one or more provisions of this chapter which by their terms do not apply to an ''exempted security'' or to ''exempted securities''.

(B)(i) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A)(i) of this paragraph, government securities shall not be deemed to be ''exempted securities'' for the purposes of section 78q–1 of this title.

(ii) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A)(ii) of this paragraph, municipal securities shall not be deemed to be ''exempted securities'' for the purposes of sections 78*o* and 78q–1 of this title.

(C) For purposes of subparagraph (A)(iv) of this paragraph, the term ''qualified plan'' means (i) a stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plan which meets the requirements for qualification under section 401 of title 26, (ii) an annuity plan which meets the requirements for the deduction of the employer's contribution under section 404(a)(2) of title 26, (iii) a governmental plan as defined in section 414(d) of title 26 which has been established by an employer for the exclusive benefit of its employees or their beneficiaries for the purpose of distributing to such employees or their beneficiaries the corpus and income of the funds accumulated under such plan, if under such plan it is impossible, prior to the satisfaction of all liabilities with respect to such employees and their beneficiaries, for any part of the corpus or income to be used for, or diverted to, purposes other than the exclusive benefit of such employees or their beneficiaries, or (iv) a church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(14)], other than any plan described in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of this subparagraph which (I) covers employees some or all of whom are employees within the meaning of section 401(c) of title 26, or (II) is a plan funded by an annuity contract described in section 403(b) of title 26.

(13) The terms ''buy'' and ''purchase'' each include any contract to buy, purchase, or otherwise acquire. For security futures products, such term includes any contract, agreement, or transaction for future delivery.

(14) The terms ''sale'' and ''sell'' each include any contract to sell or otherwise dispose of. For security futures products, such term includes any contract, agreement, or transaction for future delivery.

(15) The term ''Commission'' means the Securities and Exchange Commission established by section 78d of this title.

(16) The term ''State'' means any State of the United States, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, or any other possession of the United States.

(17) The term ''interstate commerce'' means trade, commerce, transportation, or communication among the several States, or between any foreign country and any State, or between any State and any place or ship outside thereof. The term also includes intrastate use of (A) any facility of a national securities exchange or of a telephone or other interstate means of communication, or (B) any other interstate instrumentality.

(18) The term ''person associated with a broker or dealer'' or ''associated person of a broker or dealer'' means any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such broker or dealer (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such broker or dealer, or any employee of such broker or dealer, except that any person associated with a broker or dealer whose functions are solely clerical or ministerial shall not be included in the meaning of such term for purposes of section 78*o*(b) of this title (other than paragraph (6) thereof).

(19) The terms ''investment company'', ''affiliated person'', ''insurance company'', ''separate account'', and ''company'' have the same meanings as in the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.].

(20) The terms ''investment adviser'' and ''underwriter'' have the same meanings as in the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.].

(21) The term ''person associated with a member'' or ''associated person of a member'' when used with respect to a member of a national securities exchange or registered securities association means any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such member (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such member, or any employee of such member.

(22)(A) The term ''securities information processor'' means any person engaged in the business of (i) collecting, processing, or preparing for distribution or publication, or assisting, participating in, or coordinating the distribution or publication of, information with respect to transactions in or quotations for any security (other than an exempted security) or (ii) distributing or publishing (whether

by means of a ticker tape, a communications network, a terminal display device, or otherwise) on a current and continuing basis, information with respect to such transactions or quotations. The term ''securities information processor'' does not include any bona fide newspaper, news magazine, or business or financial publication of general and regular circulation, any self-regulatory organizations, any bank, broker, dealer, building and loan, savings and loan, or homestead association, or cooperative bank, if such bank, broker, dealer, association, or cooperative bank would be deemed to be a securities information processor solely by reason of functions performed by such institutions as part of customary banking, brokerage, dealing, association, or cooperative bank activities, or any common carrier, as defined in section 153 of title 47, subject to the jurisdiction of the Federal Communications Commission or a State commission, as defined in section 153 of title 47, unless the Commission determines that such carrier is engaged in the business of collecting, processing, or preparing for distribution or publication, information with respect to transactions in or quotations for any security.

(B) The term ''exclusive processor'' means any securities information processor or self-regulatory organization which, directly or indirectly, engages on an exclusive basis on behalf of any national securities exchange or registered securities association, or any national securities exchange or registered securities association which engages on an exclusive basis on its own behalf, in collecting, processing, or preparing for distribution or publication any information with respect to (i) transactions or quotations on or effected or made by means of any facility of such exchange or (ii) quotations distributed or published by means of any electronic system operated or controlled by such association.

(23)(A) The term ''clearing agency'' means any person who acts as an intermediary in making payments or deliveries or both in connection with transactions in securities or who provides facilities for comparison of data respecting the terms of settlement of securities transactions, to reduce the number of settlements of securities transactions, or for the allocation of securities settlement responsibilities. Such term also means any person, such as a securities depository, who (i) acts as a custodian of securities in connection with a system for the central handling of securities whereby all securities of a particular class or series of any issuer deposited within the system are treated as fungible and may be transferred, loaned, or pledged by bookkeeping entry without physical delivery of securities certificates, or (ii) otherwise permits or facilitates the settlement of securities transactions or the hypothecation or lending of securities without physical delivery of securities certificates.

(B) The term ''clearing agency'' does not include (i) any Federal Reserve bank, Federal home loan bank, or Federal land bank; (ii) any national securities exchange or registered securities association solely by reason of its providing facilities for comparison of data respecting the terms of settlement of securities transactions effected on such exchange or by means of any electronic system operated or controlled by such association; (iii) any bank, broker, dealer, building and loan, savings and loan, or homestead association, or cooperative bank if such bank, broker, dealer, association, or cooperative bank would be deemed to be a clearing agency solely by reason of functions performed by such institution as part of customary banking, brokerage, dealing, association, or cooperative banking activities, or solely by reason of acting on behalf of a clearing agency or a participant therein in connection with the furnishing by the clearing agency of services to its participants or the use of services of the clearing agency by its participants, unless the Commission, by rule, otherwise provides as necessary or appropriate to assure the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions or to prevent evasion of this chapter; (iv) any life insurance company, its registered separate accounts, or a subsidiary of such insurance company solely by reason of functions commonly performed by such entities in connection with variable annuity contracts or variable life policies issued by such insurance company or its separate accounts; (v) any registered open-end investment company or unit investment trust solely by reason of functions commonly performed by it in connection with shares in such registered open-end investment company or unit investment trust, or (vi) any person solely by reason of its performing functions described in paragraph (25)(E) of this subsection.

(24) The term ''participant'' when used with respect to a clearing agency means any person who uses a clearing agency to clear or settle securities transactions or to transfer, pledge, lend, or hypothecate securities. Such term does not include a person whose only use of a clearing agency is (A) through another person who is a participant or (B) as a pledgee of securities.

(25) The term ''transfer agent'' means any person who engages on behalf of an issuer of securities or on behalf of itself as an issuer of securities in (A) countersigning such securities upon issuance; (B) monitoring the issuance of such securities with a view to preventing unauthorized issuance, a function commonly performed by a person called a registrar; (C) registering the transfer of such securities; (D) exchanging or converting such securities; or (E) transferring record ownership of securities by bookkeeping entry without physical issuance of securities certificates. The term ''transfer agent'' does not include any insurance company or separate account which performs such functions solely with respect to variable annuity contracts or variable life policies which it issues or any registered clearing agency which performs such functions solely with respect to options contracts which it issues.

(26) The term ''self-regulatory organization'' means any national securities exchange, registered securities association, or registered

clearing agency, or (solely for purposes of sections 78s(b), 78s(c), and 78w(b)[1] of this title) the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board established by section 78*o*–4 of this title.

(27) The term ''rules of an exchange'', ''rules of an association'', or ''rules of a clearing agency'' means the constitution, articles of incorporation, bylaws, and rules, or instruments corresponding to the foregoing, of an exchange, association of brokers and dealers, or clearing agency, respectively, and such of the stated policies, practices, and interpretations of such exchange, association, or clearing agency as the Commission, by rule, may determine to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to be deemed to be rules of such exchange, association, or clearing agency.

(28) The term ''rules of a self-regulatory organization'' means the rules of an exchange which is a national securities exchange, the rules of an association of brokers and dealers which is a registered securities association, the rules of a clearing agency which is a registered clearing agency, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

(29) The term ''municipal securities'' means securities which are direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal or interest by, a State or any political subdivision thereof, or any agency or instrumentality of a State or any political subdivision thereof, or any municipal corporate instrumentality of one or more States, or any security which is an industrial development bond (as defined in section 103(c)(2)[1] of title 26) the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1)[1] of title 26 if, by reason of the application of paragraph (4) or (6) of section 103(c)[1] of title 26 (determined as if paragraphs (4)(A), (5), and (7) were not included in such section 103(c)),[1] paragraph (1) of such section 103(c)[1] does not apply to such security.

(30) The term ''municipal securities dealer'' means any person (including a separately identifiable department or division of a bank) engaged in the business of buying and selling municipal securities for his own account, through a broker or otherwise, but does not include—

(A) any person insofar as he buys or sells such securities for his own account, either individually or in some fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business; or

(B) a bank, unless the bank is engaged in the business of buying and selling municipal securities for its own account other than in a fiduciary capacity, through a broker or otherwise: *Provided, however*, That if the bank is engaged in such business through a separately identifiable department or division (as defined by the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board in accordance with section 78*o*–4(b)(2)(H) of this title), the department or division and not the bank itself shall be deemed to be the municipal securities dealer.

(31) The term ''municipal securities broker'' means a broker engaged in the business of effecting transactions in municipal securities for the account of others.

(32) The term ''person associated with a municipal securities dealer'' when used with respect to a municipal securities dealer which is a bank or a division or department of a bank means any person directly engaged in the management, direction, supervision, or performance of any of the municipal securities dealer's activities with respect to municipal securities, and any person directly or indirectly controlling such activities or controlled by the municipal securities dealer in connection with such activities.

(33) The term ''municipal securities investment portfolio'' means all municipal securities held for investment and not for sale as part of a regular business by a municipal securities dealer or by a person, directly or indirectly, controlling, controlled by, or under common control with a municipal securities dealer.

(34) The term ''appropriate regulatory agency'' means—

(A) When used with respect to a municipal securities dealer:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank, or a subsidiary or a department or division of any such bank;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a subsidiary or a department or division thereof, a bank holding company, a subsidiary of a bank holding company which is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i) or (iii) of this subparagraph, or a subsidiary or a department or division of such subsidiary;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System), or a subsidiary or department or division thereof; and

(iv) the Commission in the case of all other municipal securities dealers.

(B) When used with respect to a clearing agency or transfer agent:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank, or a subsidiary of any such bank;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a subsidiary thereof, a bank holding company, or a subsidiary of a bank holding company which is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i) or (iii) of this subparagraph;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System), or a subsidiary thereof; and

(iv) the Commission in the case of all other clearing agencies and transfer agents.

(C) When used with respect to a participant or applicant to become a participant in

[1] See References in Text note below.

a clearing agency or a person requesting or having access to services offered by a clearing agency:

(i) The Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank when the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency is not the Commission;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a bank holding company, or a subsidiary of a bank holding company, or a subsidiary of a bank holding company which is a bank other than a bank specified in clause (i) or (iii) of this subparagraph when the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency is not the Commission;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System) when the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency is not the Commission; and

(iv) the Commission in all other cases.

(D) When used with respect to an institutional investment manager which is a bank the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1811 et seq.]:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of any other member bank of the Federal Reserve System; and

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of any other insured bank.

(E) When used with respect to a national securities exchange or registered securities association, member thereof, person associated with a member thereof, applicant to become a member thereof or to become associated with a member thereof, or person requesting or having access to services offered by such exchange or association or member thereof, or the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, the Commission.

(F) When used with respect to a person exercising investment discretion with respect to an account;

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System in the case of any other member bank of the Federal Reserve System;

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of any other bank the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1811 et seq.]; and

(iv) the Commission in the case of all other such persons.

(G) When used with respect to a government securities broker or government securities dealer, or person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer:

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank or a Federal branch or Federal agency of a foreign bank (as such terms are used in the International Banking Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3101 et seq.]);

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a foreign bank, an uninsured State branch or State agency of a foreign bank, a commercial lending company owned or controlled by a foreign bank (as such terms are used in the International Banking Act of 1978), or a corporation organized or having an agreement with the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System pursuant to section 25 or section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act [12 U.S.C. 601 et seq., 611 et seq.];

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System or a Federal savings bank) or an insured State branch of a foreign bank (as such terms are used in the International Banking Act of 1978);

(iv) the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1813(b)]) the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;[2]

(v) the Commission, in the case of all other government securities brokers and government securities dealers.

(H) When used with respect to an institution described in subparagraph (D), (F), or (G) of section 1841(c)(2), or held under section 1843(f) of title 12—

(i) the Comptroller of the Currency, in the case of a national bank;

(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System or any corporation chartered under section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act [12 U.S.C. 611 et seq.];

(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of any other bank the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1811 et seq.]; or

(iv) the Commission in the case of all other such institutions.

As used in this paragraph, the terms ''bank holding company'' and ''subsidiary of a bank holding company'' have the meanings given them in section 1841 of title 12, and the term ''District of Columbia savings and loan association'' means any association subject to examination and supervision by the Office of Thrift Supervision under section 1466a of title 12.

(35) A person exercises ''investment discretion'' with respect to an account if, directly or

[2] So in original. Probably should be followed by ''and''.

indirectly, such person (A) is authorized to determine what securities or other property shall be purchased or sold by or for the account, (B) makes decisions as to what securities or other property shall be purchased or sold by or for the account even though some other person may have responsibility for such investment decisions, or (C) otherwise exercises such influence with respect to the purchase and sale of securities or other property by or for the account as the Commission, by rule, determines, in the public interest or for the protection of investors, should be subject to the operation of the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder.

(36) A class of persons or markets is subject to ''equal regulation'' if no member of the class has a competitive advantage over any other member thereof resulting from a disparity in their regulation under this chapter which the Commission determines is unfair and not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(37) The term ''records'' means accounts, correspondence, memorandums, tapes, discs, papers, books, and other documents or transcribed information of any type, whether expressed in ordinary or machine language.

(38) The term ''market maker'' means any specialist permitted to act as a dealer, any dealer acting in the capacity of block positioner, and any dealer who, with respect to a security, holds himself out (by entering quotations in an inter-dealer communications system or otherwise) as being willing to buy and sell such security for his own account on a regular or continuous basis.

(39) A person is subject to a ''statutory disqualification'' with respect to membership or participation in, or association with a member of, a self-regulatory organization, if such person—

(A) has been and is expelled or suspended from membership or participation in, or barred or suspended from being associated with a member of, any self-regulatory organization, foreign equivalent of a self-regulatory organization, foreign or international securities exchange, contract market designated pursuant to section 5 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 7), or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation, or futures association registered under section 17 of such Act (7 U.S.C. 21), or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation, or has been and is denied trading privileges on any such contract market or foreign equivalent;

(B) is subject to—

(i) an order of the Commission, other appropriate regulatory agency, or foreign financial regulatory authority—

(I) denying, suspending for a period not exceeding 12 months, or revoking his registration as a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer or limiting his activities as a foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above; or

(II) barring or suspending for a period not exceeding 12 months his being associated with a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, or foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above;

(ii) an order of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission denying, suspending, or revoking his registration under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.); or

(iii) an order by a foreign financial regulatory authority denying, suspending, or revoking the person's authority to engage in transactions in contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery or other instruments traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market, board of trade, or foreign equivalent thereof;

(C) by his conduct while associated with a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer, or while associated with an entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act, has been found to be a cause of any effective suspension, expulsion, or order of the character described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph, and in entering such a suspension, expulsion, or order, the Commission, an appropriate regulatory agency, or any such self-regulatory organization shall have jurisdiction to find whether or not any person was a cause thereof;

(D) by his conduct while associated with any broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, or any other entity engaged in transactions in securities, or while associated with an entity engaged in transactions in contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery or other instruments traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market, board of trade, or foreign equivalent thereof, has been found to be a cause of any effective suspension, expulsion, or order by a foreign or international securities exchange or foreign financial regulatory authority empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws relating to financial transactions as described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph;

(E) has associated with him any person who is known, or in the exercise of reasonable care should be known, to him to be a person described by subparagraph (A), (B), (C), or (D) of this paragraph; or

(F) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78*o*(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) or any other felony within ten years of the date of the filing of an application for membership or participation in, or to become associated with a member of, such self-regulatory organization, is enjoined from any action,

conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4), has willfully made or caused to be made in any application for membership or participation in, or to become associated with a member of, a self-regulatory organization, report required to be filed with a self-regulatory organization, or proceeding before a self-regulatory organization, any statement which was at the time, and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such application, report, or proceeding any material fact which is required to be stated therein.

(40) The term ''financial responsibility rules'' means the rules and regulations of the Commission or the rules and regulations prescribed by any self-regulatory organization relating to financial responsibility and related practices which are designated by the Commission, by rule or regulation, to be financial responsibility rules.

(41) The term ''mortgage related security'' means a security that is rated in one of the two highest rating categories by at least one nationally recognized statistical rating organization, and either:

(A) represents ownership of one or more promissory notes or certificates of interest or participation in such notes (including any rights designed to assure servicing of, or the receipt or timeliness of receipt by the holders of such notes, certificates, or participations of amounts payable under, such notes, certificates, or participations), which notes:

(i) are directly secured by a first lien on a single parcel of real estate, including stock allocated to a dwelling unit in a residential cooperative housing corporation, upon which is located a dwelling or mixed residential and commercial structure, on a residential manufactured home as defined in section 5402(6) of title 42, whether such manufactured home is considered real or personal property under the laws of the State in which it is to be located, or on one or more parcels of real estate upon which is located one or more commercial structures; and

(ii) were originated by a savings and loan association, savings bank, commercial bank, credit union, insurance company, or similar institution which is supervised and examined by a Federal or State authority, or by a mortgagee approved by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development pursuant to sections 1709 and 1715b of title 12, or, where such notes involve a lien on the manufactured home, by any such institution or by any financial institution approved for insurance by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development pursuant to section 1703 of title 12; or

(B) is secured by one or more promissory notes or certificates of interest or participations in such notes (with or without recourse to the issuer thereof) and, by its terms, provides for payments of principal in relation to payments, or reasonable projections of payments, on notes meeting the requirements of subparagraphs (A)(i) and (ii) or certificates of interest or participations in promissory notes meeting such requirements.

For the purpose of this paragraph, the term ''promissory note'', when used in connection with a manufactured home, shall also include a loan, advance, or credit sale as evidence[3] by a retail installment sales contract or other instrument.

(42) The term ''government securities'' means—

(A) securities which are direct obligations of, or obligations guaranteed as to principal or interest by, the United States;

(B) securities which are issued or guaranteed by the Tennessee Valley Authority or by corporations in which the United States has a direct or indirect interest and which are designated by the Secretary of the Treasury for exemption as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors;

(C) securities issued or guaranteed as to principal or interest by any corporation the securities of which are designated, by statute specifically naming such corporation, to constitute exempt securities within the meaning of the laws administered by the Commission;

(D) for purposes of sections 78*o*–5 and 78q–1 of this title, any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on a security described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C) other than a put, call, straddle, option, or privilege—

(i) that is traded on one or more national securities exchanges; or

(ii) for which quotations are disseminated through an automated quotation system operated by a registered securities association; or

(E) for purposes of sections 78*o*, 78*o*–5, and 78q–1 of this title as applied to a bank, a qualified Canadian government obligation as defined in section 24 of title 12.

(43) The term ''government securities broker'' means any person regularly engaged in the business of effecting transactions in government securities for the account of others, but does not include—

(A) any corporation the securities of which are government securities under subparagraph (B) or (C) of paragraph (42) of this subsection; or

(B) any person registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, any contract market designated by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, such contract market's affiliated clearing organization, or any floor trader on such contract market, solely because such person effects transactions in government securities that the Commission, after consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, has determined by rule or order to be incidental to such person's futures-related business.

(44) The term ''government securities dealer'' means any person engaged in the business

[3] So in original. Probably should be ''evidenced''.

of buying and selling government securities for his own account, through a broker or otherwise, but does not include—

(A) any person insofar as he buys or sells such securities for his own account, either individually or in some fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business;

(B) any corporation the securities of which are government securities under subparagraph (B) or (C) of paragraph (42) of this subsection;

(C) any bank, unless the bank is engaged in the business of buying and selling government securities for its own account other than in a fiduciary capacity, through a broker or otherwise; or

(D) any person registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, any contract market designated by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, such contract market's affiliated clearing organization, or any floor trader on such contract market, solely because such person effects transactions in government securities that the Commission, after consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, has determined by rule or order to be incidental to such person's futures-related business.

(45) The term ''person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer'' means any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such government securities broker or government securities dealer (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), and any other employee of such government securities broker or government securities dealer who is engaged in the management, direction, supervision, or performance of any activities relating to government securities, and any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such government securities broker or government securities dealer.

(46) The term ''financial institution'' means—

(A) a bank (as defined in paragraph (6) of this subsection);

(B) a foreign bank (as such term is used in the International Banking Act of 1978); and

(C) a savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1813(b)]) the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

(47) The term ''securities laws'' means the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.), the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 [15 U.S.C. 7201 et seq.], the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935,[4] the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S.C. 77aaa et seq.), the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.), the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b et seq.) [15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.], and the Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970 (15 U.S.C. 78aaa et seq.).

(48) The term ''registered broker or dealer'' means a broker or dealer registered or required to register pursuant to section 78*o* or 78*o*–4 of this title, except that in paragraph (3) of this subsection and sections 78f and 78*o*–3 of this title the term means such a broker or dealer and a government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or required to register pursuant to section 78*o*–5(a)(1)(A) of this title.

(49) The term ''person associated with a transfer agent'' and ''associated person of a transfer agent'' mean any person (except an employee whose functions are solely clerical or ministerial) directly engaged in the management, direction, supervision, or performance of any of the transfer agent's activities with respect to transfer agent functions, and any person directly or indirectly controlling such activities or controlled by the transfer agent in connection with such activities.

(50) The term ''foreign securities authority'' means any foreign government, or any governmental body or regulatory organization empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws as they relate to securities matters.

(51)(A) The term ''penny stock'' means any equity security other than a security that is—

(i) registered or approved for registration and traded on a national securities exchange that meets such criteria as the Commission shall prescribe by rule or regulation for purposes of this paragraph;

(ii) authorized for quotation on an automated quotation system sponsored by a registered securities association, if such system (I) was established and in operation before January 1, 1990, and (II) meets such criteria as the Commission shall prescribe by rule or regulation for purposes of this paragraph;

(iii) issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.];

(iv) excluded, on the basis of exceeding a minimum price, net tangible assets of the issuer, or other relevant criteria, from the definition of such term by rule or regulation which the Commission shall prescribe for purposes of this paragraph; or

(v) exempted, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, from the definition of such term by rule, regulation, or order prescribed by the Commission.

(B) The Commission may, by rule, regulation, or order, designate any equity security or class of equity securities described in clause (i) or (ii) of subparagraph (A) as within the meaning of the term ''penny stock'' if such security or class of securities is traded other than on a national securities exchange or through an automated quotation system described in clause (ii) of subparagraph (A).

(C) In exercising its authority under this paragraph to prescribe rules, regulations, and orders, the Commission shall determine that such rule, regulation, or order is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

[4] See References in Text note below.

(52) The term ''foreign financial regulatory authority'' means any (A) foreign securities authority, (B) other governmental body or foreign equivalent of a self-regulatory organization empowered by a foreign government to administer or enforce its laws relating to the regulation of fiduciaries, trusts, commercial lending, insurance, trading in contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery, or other instruments traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market, board of trade, or foreign equivalent, or other financial activities, or (C) membership organization a function of which is to regulate participation of its members in activities listed above.

(53)(A) The term ''small business related security'' means a security that is rated in 1 of the 4 highest rating categories by at least 1 nationally recognized statistical rating organization, and either—

(i) represents an interest in 1 or more promissory notes or leases of personal property evidencing the obligation of a small business concern and originated by an insured depository institution, insured credit union, insurance company, or similar institution which is supervised and examined by a Federal or State authority, or a finance company or leasing company; or

(ii) is secured by an interest in 1 or more promissory notes or leases of personal property (with or without recourse to the issuer or lessee) and provides for payments of principal in relation to payments, or reasonable projections of payments, on notes or leases described in clause (i).

(B) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) an ''interest in a promissory note or a lease of personal property'' includes ownership rights, certificates of interest or participation in such notes or leases, and rights designed to assure servicing of such notes or leases, or the receipt or timely receipt of amounts payable under such notes or leases;

(ii) the term ''small business concern'' means a business that meets the criteria for a small business concern established by the Small Business Administration under section 632(a) of this title;

(iii) the term ''insured depository institution'' has the same meaning as in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1813]; and

(iv) the term ''insured credit union'' has the same meaning as in section 1752 of title 12.

(54) QUALIFIED INVESTOR.—

(A) DEFINITION.—Except as provided in subparagraph (B), for purposes of this chapter, the term ''qualified investor'' means—

(i) any investment company registered with the Commission under section 8 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–8];

(ii) any issuer eligible for an exclusion from the definition of investment company pursuant to section 3(c)(7) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(7)];

(iii) any bank (as defined in paragraph (6) of this subsection), savings association (as defined in section 3(b) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1813(b)]), broker, dealer, insurance company (as defined in section 2(a)(13) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(13)]), or business development company (as defined in section 2(a)(48) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–2(a)(48)]);

(iv) any small business investment company licensed by the United States Small Business Administration under section 301(c) [15 U.S.C. 681(c)] or (d)[5] of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958;

(v) any State sponsored employee benefit plan, or any other employee benefit plan, within the meaning of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 [29 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.], other than an individual retirement account, if the investment decisions are made by a plan fiduciary, as defined in section 3(21) of that Act [29 U.S.C. 1002(21)], which is either a bank, savings and loan association, insurance company, or registered investment adviser;

(vi) any trust whose purchases of securities are directed by a person described in clauses (i) through (v) of this subparagraph;

(vii) any market intermediary exempt under section 3(c)(2) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(2)];

(viii) any associated person of a broker or dealer other than a natural person;

(ix) any foreign bank (as defined in section 1(b)(7) of the International Banking Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3101(7)]);

(x) the government of any foreign country;

(xi) any corporation, company, or partnership that owns and invests on a discretionary basis, not less than $25,000,000 in investments;

(xii) any natural person who owns and invests on a discretionary basis, not less than $25,000,000 in investments;

(xiii) any government or political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality of a government who owns and invests on a discretionary basis not less than $50,000,000 in investments; or

(xiv) any multinational or supranational entity or any agency or instrumentality thereof.

(B) ALTERED THRESHOLDS FOR ASSET-BACKED SECURITIES AND LOAN PARTICIPATIONS.—For purposes of subsection (a)(5)(C)(iii) of this section and section 206(a)(5) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, the term ''qualified investor'' has the meaning given such term by subparagraph (A) of this paragraph except that clauses (xi) and (xii) shall be applied by substituting ''$10,000,000'' for ''$25,000,000''.

(C) ADDITIONAL AUTHORITY.—The Commission may, by rule or order, define a ''qualified investor'' as any other person, taking into consideration such factors as the finan-

[5] See References in Text note below.

cial sophistication of the person, net worth, and knowledge and experience in financial matters.

(55)(A) The term ''security future'' means a contract of sale for future delivery of a single security or of a narrow-based security index, including any interest therein or based on the value thereof, except an exempted security under paragraph (12) of this subsection as in effect on January 11, 1983 (other than any municipal security as defined in paragraph (29) of this subsection as in effect on January 11, 1983). The term ''security future'' does not include any agreement, contract, or transaction excluded from the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.] under section 2(c), 2(d), 2(f), or 2(g) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 2(c), (d), (f), (g)] (as in effect on December 21, 2000) or sections 27 to 27f of title 7.

(B) The term ''narrow-based security index'' means an index—

(i) that has 9 or fewer component securities;

(ii) in which a component security comprises more than 30 percent of the index's weighting;

(iii) in which the five highest weighted component securities in the aggregate comprise more than 60 percent of the index's weighting; or

(iv) in which the lowest weighted component securities comprising, in the aggregate, 25 percent of the index's weighting have an aggregate dollar value of average daily trading volume of less than $50,000,000 (or in the case of an index with 15 or more component securities, $30,000,000), except that if there are two or more securities with equal weighting that could be included in the calculation of the lowest weighted component securities comprising, in the aggregate, 25 percent of the index's weighting, such securities shall be ranked from lowest to highest dollar value of average daily trading volume and shall be included in the calculation based on their ranking starting with the lowest ranked security.

(C) Notwithstanding subparagraph (B), an index is not a narrow-based security index if—

(i)(I) it has at least nine component securities;

(II) no component security comprises more than 30 percent of the index's weighting; and

(III) each component security is—

(aa) registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title;

(bb) one of 750 securities with the largest market capitalization; and

(cc) one of 675 securities with the largest dollar value of average daily trading volume;

(ii) a board of trade was designated as a contract market by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission with respect to a contract of sale for future delivery on the index, before December 21, 2000;

(iii)(I) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index traded on a designated contract market or registered derivatives transaction execution facility for at least 30 days as a contract of sale for future delivery on an index that was not a narrow-based security index; and

(II) it has been a narrow-based security index for no more than 45 business days over 3 consecutive calendar months;

(iv) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index is traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade and meets such requirements as are jointly established by rule or regulation by the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission;

(v) no more than 18 months have passed since December 21, 2000, and—

(I) it is traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade;

(II) the offer and sale in the United States of a contract of sale for future delivery on the index was authorized before December 21, 2000; and

(III) the conditions of such authorization continue to be met; or

(vi) a contract of sale for future delivery on the index is traded on or subject to the rules of a board of trade and meets such requirements as are jointly established by rule, regulation, or order by the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(D) Within 1 year after December 21, 2000, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly shall adopt rules or regulations that set forth the requirements under clause (iv) of subparagraph (C).

(E) An index that is a narrow-based security index solely because it was a narrow-based security index for more than 45 business days over 3 consecutive calendar months pursuant to clause (iii) of subparagraph (C) shall not be a narrow-based security index for the 3 following calendar months.

(F) For purposes of subparagraphs (B) and (C) of this paragraph—

(i) the dollar value of average daily trading volume and the market capitalization shall be calculated as of the preceding 6 full calendar months; and

(ii) the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall, by rule or regulation, jointly specify the method to be used to determine market capitalization and dollar value of average daily trading volume.

(56) The term ''security futures product'' means a security future or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security future.

(57)(A) The term ''margin'', when used with respect to a security futures product, means the amount, type, and form of collateral required to secure any extension or maintenance of credit, or the amount, type, and form of collateral required as a performance bond related to the purchase, sale, or carrying of a security futures product.

(B) The terms ''margin level'' and ''level of margin'', when used with respect to a security futures product, mean the amount of margin required to secure any extension or mainte-

nance of credit, or the amount of margin required as a performance bond related to the purchase, sale, or carrying of a security futures product.

(C) The terms ''higher margin level'' and ''higher level of margin'', when used with respect to a security futures product, mean a margin level established by a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title that is higher than the minimum amount established and in effect pursuant to section 78g(c)(2)(B) of this title.

(58) AUDIT COMMITTEE.—The term ''audit committee'' means—

(A) a committee (or equivalent body) established by and amongst the board of directors of an issuer for the purpose of overseeing the accounting and financial reporting processes of the issuer and audits of the financial statements of the issuer; and

(B) if no such committee exists with respect to an issuer, the entire board of directors of the issuer.

(59) REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM.—The term ''registered public accounting firm'' has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 [15 U.S.C. 7201].

**(b) Power to define technical, trade, accounting, and other terms**

The Commission and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, as to matters within their respective jurisdictions, shall have power by rules and regulations to define technical, trade, accounting, and other terms used in this chapter, consistently with the provisions and purposes of this chapter.

**(c) Application to governmental departments or agencies**

No provision of this chapter shall apply to, or be deemed to include, any executive department or independent establishment of the United States, or any lending agency which is wholly owned, directly or indirectly, by the United States, or any officer, agent, or employee of any such department, establishment, or agency, acting in the course of his official duty as such, unless such provision makes specific reference to such department, establishment, or agency.

**(d) Issuers of municipal securities**

No issuer of municipal securities or officer or employee thereof acting in the course of his official duties as such shall be deemed to be a ''broker'', ''dealer'', or ''municipal securities dealer'' solely by reason of buying, selling, or effecting transactions in the issuer's securities.

**(e) Charitable organizations**

**(1) Exemption**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, but subject to paragraph (2) of this subsection, a charitable organization, as defined in section 3(c)(10)(D) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(10)(D)], or any trustee, director, officer, employee, or volunteer of such a charitable organization acting within the scope of such person's employment or duties with such organization, shall not be deemed to be a ''broker'', ''dealer'', ''municipal securities broker'', ''municipal securities dealer'', ''government securities broker'', or ''government securities dealer'' for purposes of this chapter solely because such organization or person buys, holds, sells, or trades in securities for its own account in its capacity as trustee or administrator of, or otherwise on behalf of or for the account of—

(A) such a charitable organization;

(B) a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(10)(B)]; or

(C) a trust or other donative instrument described in section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(10)(B)], or the settlors (or potential settlors) or beneficiaries of any such trust or other instrument.

**(2) Limitation on compensation**

The exemption provided under paragraph (1) shall not be available to any charitable organization, or any trustee, director, officer, employee, or volunteer of such a charitable organization, unless each person who, on or after 90 days after December 8, 1995, solicits donations on behalf of such charitable organization from any donor to a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(10)(B) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(10)(B)], is either a volunteer or is engaged in the overall fund raising activities of a charitable organization and receives no commission or other special compensation based on the number or the value of donations collected for the fund.

**(f) Consideration of promotion of efficiency, competition, and capital formation**

Whenever pursuant to this chapter the Commission is engaged in rulemaking, or in the review of a rule of a self-regulatory organization, and is required to consider or determine whether an action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, the Commission shall also consider, in addition to the protection of investors, whether the action will promote efficiency, competition, and capital formation.

**(g) Church plans**

No church plan described in section 414(e) of title 26, no person or entity eligible to establish and maintain such a plan under title 26, no company or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(14)], and no trustee, director, officer or employee of or volunteer for such plan, company, account person, or entity, acting within the scope of that person's employment or activities with respect to such plan, shall be deemed to be a ''broker'', ''dealer'', ''municipal securities broker'', ''municipal securities dealer'', ''government securities broker'', ''government securities dealer'', ''clearing agency'', or ''transfer agent'' for purposes of this chapter—

(1) solely because such plan, company, person, or entity buys, holds, sells, trades in, or transfers securities or acts as an intermediary in making payments in connection with transactions in securities for its own account in its capacity as trustee or administrator of, or

otherwise on behalf of, or for the account of, any church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 3(c)(14) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–3(c)(14)]; and

(2) if no such person or entity receives a commission or other transaction-related sales compensation in connection with any activities conducted in reliance on the exemption provided by this subsection.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §3, 48 Stat. 882; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, §203(a), 49 Stat. 704; Proc. No. 2695, eff. July 4, 1946, 11 F.R. 7517, 60 Stat. 1352; Pub. L. 86–70, §12(b), June 25, 1959, 73 Stat. 143; Pub. L. 86–624, §7(b), July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 412; Pub. L. 88–467, §2, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 91–373, title IV, §401(b), Aug. 10, 1970, 84 Stat. 718; Pub. L. 91–547, §28(a), (b), Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1435; Pub. L. 91–567, §6(b), Dec. 22, 1970, 84 Stat. 1499; Pub. L. 94–29, §3, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 97; Pub. L. 95–283, §16, May 21, 1978, 92 Stat. 274; Pub. L. 96–477, title VII, §702, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2295; Pub. L. 97–303, §2, Oct. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1409; Pub. L. 98–376, §6(a), Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 98–440, title I, §101, Oct. 3, 1984, 98 Stat. 1689; Pub. L. 99–514, §2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, §102(a)–(d), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3214–3216; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§301–306, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1253, 1254; Pub. L. 100–704, §6(a), Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4681; Pub. L. 101–73, title VII, §744(u)(1), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 441; Pub. L. 101–429, title V, §503, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 952; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §§203(b), 204, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2717, 2718; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, §§106(b)(2)(A), 109(a), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2350, 2352; Pub. L. 103–325, title II, §202, title III, §347(a), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2198, 2241; Pub. L. 104–62, §4(a), (b), Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 684; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, §106(b), title V, §508(c), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3424, 3447; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(1)–(4), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3235, 3236; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §§201, 202, 207, 208, 221(b), 231(b)(1), Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1385, 1390, 1394, 1395, 1401, 1406; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §201], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–413; Pub. L. 107–204, §2(b), title II, §205(a), title VI, §604(c)(1)(A), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 749, 773, 796; Pub. L. 108–359, §1(c)(1), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1666; Pub. L. 108–386, §8(f)(1)–(3), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2232; Pub. L. 108–447, div. H, title V, §520(1), Dec. 8, 2004, 118 Stat. 3267.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), (c), (e)(1), (f), and (g), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(B)(v), (19), (47), (51)(A)(iii), is title I of act Aug. 20, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(B)(vii)(II), was in the original "this Act". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Section 206 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(4)(B)(ix), (5)(C)(iv), (54)(B), is section 206 of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out as a note below.

The Investment Advisers Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(20), (47), is title II of act Aug. 20, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 847, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§80b–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80b–20 of this title and Tables.

Section 78w(b) of this title, referred to in subsec. (a)(26), was omitted from the Code.

Section 103 of title 26, referred to in subsec. (a)(29), which related to interest on certain governmental obligations, was amended generally by Pub. L. 99–514, title XIII, §1301(a), Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2602, and, as so amended, relates to interest on State and local bonds. Section 103(b)(2) (formerly section 103(c)(2)), which prior to the general amendment defined industrial development bond, relates to the applicability of the interest exclusion to arbitrage bonds.

The Federal Deposit Insurance Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(34)(D), (F)(iii), (H)(iii), is act Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 967, §2, 64 Stat. 873, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§1811 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1811 of Title 12 and Tables.

The International Banking Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (a)(34)(G)(i) to (iii), (46)(B), is Pub. L. 95–369, Sept. 17, 1978, 92 Stat. 607, which enacted sections 347d, 611a, and 3101 to 3111 of Title 12, amended sections 72, 378, 614, 615, 618, 619, 1813, 1815, 1817, 1818, 1820, 1821, 1822, 1823, 1828, 1829b, 1831b, and 1841 of Title 12, and enacted provisions set out as notes under sections 36, 247, 601, 611a, and 3101 of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3101 of Title 12 and Tables.

Section 25 of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(34)(G)(ii), is classified to subchapter I (§601 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12, Banks and Banking. Section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(34)(G)(ii), (H)(ii), is classified to subchapter II (§611 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(39)(B)(ii), (C), (55)(A), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, as amended, which is classified generally to this chapter (§78a et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is Pub. L. 107–204, July 30, 2002, 1974, 116 Stat. 745, which is classified principally to chapter 98 (§7201 et seq.) of this title. Section 2 of the Act enacted section 7201 of this title and amended this section. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

The Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is title I of act Aug. 26, 1935, ch. 687, 49 Stat. 803, as amended, which was classified generally to chapter 2C (§79 et seq.) of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, §1263, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 974. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

The Trust Indenture Act of 1939, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is title III of act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, as added Aug. 3, 1939, ch. 411, 53 Stat. 1149, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§77aaa et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77aaa of this title and Tables.

The Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970, referred to in subsec. (a)(47), is Pub. L. 91–598, Dec. 30,

1970, 84 Stat. 1636, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 2B–1 (§ 78aaa et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78aaa of this title and Tables.

Section 301(d) of the Small Business Investment Act of 1958, referred to in subsec. (a)(54)(A)(iv), was classified to section 681(d) of this title and was repealed by Pub. L. 104–208, div. D, title II, § 208(b)(3)(A), Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009–742.

The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (a)(54)(A)(v), is Pub. L. 93–406, Sept. 2, 1974, 88 Stat. 832, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 18 (§ 1001 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 29 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Words ''Philippine Islands'' deleted from definition of term ''State'' in subsec. (a)(16) under authority of Proc. No. 2695, which granted independence to the Philippine Islands. Proc. No. 2695 was issued pursuant to section 1394 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, and is set out as a note under that section.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (a)(12)(C)(iv). Pub. L. 108–359 added cl. (iv).

Subsec. (a)(34)(A)(i), (B)(i), (C)(i), (D)(i), (F)(i). Pub. L. 108–386, § 8(f)(1), struck out ''or a bank operating under the Code of Law for the District of Columbia'' after ''national bank''.

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(i). Pub. L. 108–386, § 8(f)(2), struck out '', a bank in the District of Columbia examined by the Comptroller of the Currency,'' after ''national bank''.

Subsec. (a)(34)(H)(i). Pub. L. 108–386, § 8(f)(3), struck out ''or a bank in the District of Columbia examined by the Comptroller of the Currency'' after ''national bank''.

Subsec. (a)(42)(B). Pub. L. 108–447 inserted ''by the Tennessee Valley Authority or'' after ''issued or guaranteed''.

2002—Subsec. (a)(39)(F). Pub. L. 107–204, § 604(c)(1)(A), inserted '', or is subject to an order or finding,'' before ''enumerated'' and substituted ''(H), or (G)'' for ''or (G)''.

Subsec. (a)(47). Pub. L. 107–204, § 2(b), inserted ''the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002,'' before ''the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935''.

Subsec. (a)(58), (59). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(a), added pars. (58) and (59).

2000—Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 201(1)], inserted ''security future,'' after ''treasury stock,''.

Subsec. (a)(11). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 201(2)], added par. (11) and struck out former par. (11) which read as follows: ''The term 'equity security' means any stock or similar security; or any security convertible, with or without consideration, into such a security, or carrying any warrant or right to subscribe to or purchase such a security; or any such warrant or right; or any other security which the Commission shall deem to be of similar nature and consider necessary or appropriate, by such rules and regulations as it may prescribe in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to treat as an equity security.''

Subsec. (a)(13), (14). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 201(3), (4)], inserted at end ''For security futures products, such term includes any contract, agreement, or transaction for future delivery.''

Subsec. (a)(55) to (57). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 201(5)], added pars. (55) to (57).

1999—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 106–102, § 201, inserted heading and amended text of par. (4) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: ''The term 'broker' means any person engaged in the business of effecting transactions in securities for the account of others, but does not include a bank.''

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 106–102, § 202, inserted heading and amended text of par. (5) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: ''The term 'dealer' means any person engaged in the business of buying and selling securities for his own account, through a broker or otherwise, but does not include a bank, or any person insofar as he buys or sells securities for his own account, either individually or in some fiduciary capacity, but not as a part of a regular business.''

Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 106–102, § 221(b), amended cl. (iii) generally. Prior to amendment, cl. (iii) read as follows: ''any interest or participation in any common trust fund or similar fund maintained by a bank exclusively for the collective investment and reinvestment of assets contributed thereto by such bank in its capacity as trustee, executor, administrator, or guardian;''.

Subsec. (a)(34)(H). Pub. L. 106–102, § 231(b)(1), which directed insertion of subpar. (H) at end of par. (34), was executed by inserting subpar. (H) after subpar. (G) and before concluding provisions to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (a)(42)(E). Pub. L. 106–102, § 208, added subpar. (E).

Subsec. (a)(54). Pub. L. 106–102, § 207, added par. (54).

1998—Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(1), substituted ''deposit for'' for ''deposit, for''.

Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(vi). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(2), realigned margins.

Subsec. (a)(22)(A). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(3), substituted ''section 153'' for ''section 153(h)'' and for ''section 153(t)''.

Subsec. (a)(39)(B)(i). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(4), substituted ''of the Commission'' for ''to the Commission'' in introductory provisions.

1996—Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(vi), (vii). Pub. L. 104–290, § 508(c)(1), added cl. (vi) and redesignated former cl. (vi) as (vii).

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 104–290, §§ 106(b), 508(c)(2), added subsecs. (f) and (g), respectively.

1995—Subsec. (a)(12)(A)(iv) to (vi). Pub. L. 104–62, § 4(a), struck out ''and'' at end of cl. (iv), added cl. (v), and redesignated former cl. (v) as (vi).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–62, § 4(b), added subsec. (e).

1994—Subsec. (a)(41)(A)(i). Pub. L. 103–325, § 347(a), substituted ''on a residential'' for ''or on a residential'' and inserted before semicolon '', or on one or more parcels of real estate upon which is located one or more commercial structures''.

Subsec. (a)(53). Pub. L. 103–325, § 202, added par. (53).

1993—Subsec. (a)(12)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 103–202, § 106(b)(2)(A), substituted ''sections 78*o* and 78q–1'' for ''sections 78*o*, 78*o*–3 (other than subsection (g)(3)), and 78q–1''.

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(ii) to (iv). Pub. L. 103–202, § 109(a)(1), amended cls. (ii) to (iv) generally. Prior to amendment, cls. (ii) to (iv) read as follows:

''(ii) the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the case of a State member bank of the Federal Reserve System, a foreign bank, a State branch or a State agency of a foreign bank, or a commercial lending company owned or controlled by a foreign bank (as such terms are used in the International Banking Act of 1978);

''(iii) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, in the case of a bank insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than a member of the Federal Reserve System or a Federal savings bank);

''(iv) the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;''.

Subsec. (a)(46). Pub. L. 103–202, § 109(a)(2), amended par. (46) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (46) read as follows: ''The term 'financial institution' means (A) a bank (as such term is defined in paragraph (6) of this subsection), (B) a foreign bank, and (C) an insured institution (as such term is defined in section 1724 of title 12).''

Subsec. (a)(52). Pub. L. 103–202, § 109(a)(3), redesignated par. (51) defining ''foreign financial regulatory authority'' as (52).

1990—Subsec. (a)(39)(A). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(b)(1), inserted ''foreign equivalent of a self-regulatory organization, foreign or international securities exchange,'' after ''self-regulatory organization,'', ''or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation,'' after ''(7 U.S.C. 7),'' and ''(7 U.S.C. 21),'', and ''or foreign equivalent'' after ''contract market''.

Subsec. (a)(39)(B). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(b)(2), added subpar. (B) and struck out former subpar. (B) which read as follows: ''is subject to an order of the Commission or other appropriate regulatory agency denying, suspending for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoking his registration as a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer, or barring or suspending for a period not exceeding 12 months his being associated with a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer, or is subject to an order of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission denying, suspending, or revoking his registration under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.);''.

Subsec. (a)(39)(D). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(b)(4), added subpar. (D). Former subpar. (D) redesignated (E).

Subsec. (a)(39)(E). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(b)(3), (5), redesignated subpar. (D) as (E) and substituted ''(A), (B), (C), or (D)'' for ''(A), (B), or (C)''. Former subpar. (E) redesignated (F).

Subsec. (a)(39)(F). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(b)(3), (6), redesignated subpar. (E) as (F), substituted ''(D), (E), or (G)'' for ''(D) or (E)'', and inserted ''or any other felony'' before ''within ten years''.

Subsec. (a)(51). Pub. L. 101–550, §204, added par. (51) defining ''foreign financial regulatory authority''.

Pub. L. 101–429 added par. (51) defining ''penny stock''.

1989—Subsec. (a)(34). Pub. L. 101–73, §744(u)(1)(B), substituted ''Office of Thrift Supervision'' for ''Federal Home Loan Bank Board'' in concluding provisions.

Subsec. (a)(34)(G)(iv) to (vi). Pub. L. 101–73, §744(u)(1)(A), added cl. (iv), redesignated cl. (vi) as (v), and struck out former cls. (iv) and (v) which read as follows:

''(iv) the Federal Home Loan Bank Board, in the case of a Federal savings and loan association, Federal savings bank, or District of Columbia savings and loan association;

''(v) the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation, in the case of an institution insured by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation (other than a Federal savings and loan association, Federal savings bank, or District of Columbia savings and loan association);''.

1988—Subsec. (a)(50). Pub. L. 100–704 added par. (50).

1987—Subsec. (a)(6)(C). Pub. L. 100–181, §301, substituted ''under the authority of the Comptroller of the Currency pursuant to section 92a of title 12'' for ''under section 11(k) of the Federal Reserve Act, as amended''.

Subsec. (a)(16). Pub. L. 100–181, §302, struck out reference to Canal Zone.

Subsec. (a)(22)(B). Pub. L. 100–181, §303, substituted ''association, or any'' and ''own behalf, in'' for ''association or any'' and ''own behalf in'', respectively.

Subsec. (a)(34)(C)(ii). Pub. L. 100–181, §304, substituted ''State'' for ''state''.

Subsec. (a)(39)(B). Pub. L. 100–181, §305, substituted ''months, or revoking'' for ''months, revoking'' and ''barring or suspending for a period not exceeding 12 months his'' for ''barring his''.

Subsec. (a)(47). Pub. L. 100–181, §306(1), added par. (47).

Subsec. (a)(49). Pub. L. 100–181, §306(2), added par. (49).

1986—Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(a), in amending par. (12) generally, expanded definition of ''exempted security'' or ''exempted securities'' to include government securities as defined in par. (42) of this subsection, provided that such securities not be deemed exempt for purposes of section 78q–1 of this title, substituted section 78*o*–3(g)(3) of this title for section 78*o*–3(b)(6), (11), and (g)(2) of this title in provision relating to municipal securities as not being ''exempted securities'' and defined ''qualified plan'' to mean qualified stock bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plan, qualified annuity plan, or governmental plan.

Pub. L. 99–514 substituted ''Internal Revenue Code of 1986'' for ''Internal Revenue Code of 1954'', which for purposes of codification was translated as ''title 26'' thus requiring no change in text.

Subsec. (a)(29). Pub. L. 99–514 substituted ''Internal Revenue Code of 1986'' for ''Internal Revenue Code of 1954'', which for purposes of codification was translated as ''title 26'' thus requiring no change in text.

Subsec. (a)(34). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(b)(2), inserted '', and the term 'District of Columbia savings and loan association' means any association subject to examination and supervision by the Federal Home Loan Bank Board under section 1466a of title 12'' in concluding provisions.

Subsec. (a)(34)(G). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(b)(1), added subpar. (G).

Subsec. (a)(39)(B). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(c)(1)(A), which directed insertion of ''or other appropriate regulatory agency'' after ''Commission'' was executed by making the insertion after ''Commission'' the first place appearing as the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 99–571, §102(c)(1)(B), substituted ''municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer'' for ''or municipal securities dealer'' in two places.

Subsec. (a)(39)(C). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(c)(2), substituted ''municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer'' for ''or municipal securities dealer'' and inserted '', an appropriate regulatory agency,'' after ''the Commission''.

Subsec. (a)(42) to (46), (48). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(d), added pars. (42) to (46) and (48).

1984—Subsec. (a)(39)(A). Pub. L. 98–376, §6(a)(1), inserted '', contract market designated pursuant to section 5 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 7), or futures association registered under section 17 of such Act (7 U.S.C. 21), or has been and is denied trading privileges on any such contract market''.

Subsec. (a)(39)(B). Pub. L. 98–376, §6(a)(2), inserted '', or is subject to an order of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission denying, suspending, or revoking his registration under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.)''.

Subsec. (a)(39)(C). Pub. L. 98–376, §6(a)(3), inserted ''or while associated with an entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act,''.

Subsec. (a)(41). Pub. L. 98–440 added par. (41).

1982—Subsec. (a)(10). Pub. L. 97–303 inserted ''any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency,'' after ''for a security,''.

1980—Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 96–477 included within definition of ''exempted security'' interests or participation in single trust funds, provided that qualifying interests, participation, or securities could be issued in connection with certain governmental plans as defined in section 414(d) of title 26, substituted provisions relating to securities arising out of contracts issued by insurance companies for provisions relating to separate accounts maintained by insurance companies, and excluded from definition of ''exempted security'' any plans described in cls. (A), (B), or (C) of par. (12) which were funded by annuity contracts described in section 403(b) of title 26.

1978—Subsec. (a)(40). Pub. L. 95–283 added par. (40).

1975—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 94–29, §3(1), redefined term ''member'' to recognize the elimination of fixed commission rates in the case of exchanges, inserted definition of term when used in the case of registered securities associations, expanded definition of term when used with respect to an exchange to include any natural person permitted to effect transactions on the floor of an exchange without the services of another person acting as broker, any registered broker or dealer

with which such natural person is associated, any registered broker or dealer permitted to designate a natural person as its representative on the floor of an exchange, and any other registered broker or dealer which agrees to be regulated by an exchange and with respect to whom the exchange has undertaken to enforce compliance with its rules, this chapter, and the rules and regulations thereunder, introduced the concept of including among members any person required to comply with the rules of an exchange to the extent specified by the Commission in accordance with section 78f(f) of this title, and expanded definition of term when used with respect to a registered securities association to include any broker or dealer who has agreed to be regulated and with respect to whom the association undertakes to enforce compliance with its own rules, this chapter, and the rules and regulations thereunder.

Subsec. (a)(9). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(2), substituted ''a natural person, company, government, or political subdivision, agency, or instrumentality of a government'' for ''an individual, a corporation, a partnership, an association, a joint-stock company, a business trust, or an unincorporated organization''.

Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(3), brought brokers and dealers engaged exclusively in municipal securities business within the registration provisions of this chapter by transferring the existing description of municipal securities to subsec. (a)(29) and by inserting in its place provisions revoking the exempt status of municipal securities for purposes of sections 78o, 78o–3 (except subsections (b)(6), (b)(11), and (g)(2) thereof) and 78q–1 of this title.

Subsec. (a)(17). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(4), expanded definition of ''interstate commerce'' to establish that the intrastate use of any facility of an exchange, any telephones or other interstate means of communication, or any other interstate instrumentality constitutes a use of the jurisdictional means for purposes of this chapter.

Subsec. (a)(18). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(4), expanded definition to include persons under common control with the broker or dealer and struck out references to the classification of the persons, including employees, controlled by a broker or a dealer.

Subsec. (a)(19). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(4), substituted '' 'separate account', and 'company' '' for ''and 'separate account'.''

Subsec. (a)(21). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(5), broadened definition of term ''person associated with a member'' to encompass a person associated with a broker or dealer which is a member of an exchange by restating directly the definition of a ''person associated with a broker or dealer'' in subsec. (a)(18).

Subsec. (a)(22) to (39). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(6), added pars. (22) to (39).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(7), substituted ''accounting, and other terms used in this chapter, consistently with the provisions and purposes of this chapter'' for ''and accounting terms used in this chapter insofar as such definitions are not inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter''.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94–29, § 3(8), added subsec. (d).

1970—Subsec. (a)(12). Pub. L. 91–567 inserted provisions which brought within definition of ''exempted security'' any security which is an industrial development bond the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1) of title 26 if, by reason of the application of section 103(c)(4) or (6) of title 26, section 103(c)(1) does not apply to such security. Such amendment was also made by Pub. L. 91–373.

Pub. L. 91–547, § 28(a), struck out reference to industrial development bonds the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1) of title 26; and included as exempted securities interests or participations in common trust funds maintained by a bank for collective investment of assets held by it in a fiduciary capacity; interests or participations in bank collective trust funds maintained for funding of employees' stock-bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plans; interests or participations in separate accounts maintained by insurance companies for funding certain stock-bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plans which meet the requirements for qualification under section 401 of title 26; and such other securities as the Commission by rules and regulations deems necessary in the public interest.

Pub. L. 91–373 inserted provisions which brought within definition of ''exempted security'' any security which is an industrial development bond the interest on which is excludable from gross income under section 103(a)(1) of title 26 if, by reason of the application of section 103(c)(4) or (6) of title 26, section 103(c)(1) does not apply to such security. Such amendment was also made by Pub. L. 91–567.

Subsec. (a)(19). Pub. L. 91–547, § 28(b), provided for term ''separate account'' the same meaning as in the Investment Company Act of 1940.

1964—Subsec. (a)(18) to (21). Pub. L. 88–467 added pars. (18) to (21).

1960—Subsec. (a)(16). Pub. L. 86–624 struck out reference to Hawaii.

1959—Subsec. (a)(16). Pub. L. 86–70 struck out reference to Alaska.

CHANGE OF NAME

Act Aug. 23, 1935, substituted ''Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System'' for ''Federal Reserve Board''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 108–386 effective Oct. 30, 2004, and, except as otherwise provided, applicable with respect to fiscal year 2005 and each succeeding fiscal year, see sections 8(i) and 9 of Pub. L. 108–386, set out as notes under section 321 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1999 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 201, 202, 207, and 208 of Pub. L. 106–102 effective at the end of the 18-month period beginning on Nov. 12, 1999, see section 209 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 1828 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 221(b) of Pub. L. 106–102 effective 18 months after Nov. 12, 1999, see section 225 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–62 applicable as defense to any claim in administrative and judicial actions pending on or commenced after Dec. 8, 1995, that any person, security, interest, or participation of type described in Pub. L. 104–62 is subject to the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, or any State statute or regulation preempted as provided in section 80a–3a of this title, except as specifically provided in such statutes, see section 7 of Pub. L. 104–62, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 347(a) of Pub. L. 103–325 effective upon date of promulgation of final regulations under section 347(c) of Pub. L. 103–325, see section 347(d) of Pub. L. 103–325, set out as an Effective Date of 1994 Amendment note under section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective 12 months after Oct. 15, 1990, or upon issuance of final regulations initially implementing such amendment, whichever is earlier, with provision to commence rulemaking proceedings to implement such amendment note later than 180 days after Oct. 15, 1990, and with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and dis-

gorgement, see section 1(c)(2), (3)(A), (C) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–704, except for amendment by section 6, not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704, set out as a note under section 78*o* of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Section 7 of Pub. L. 98–376 provided that: ''The amendments made by this Act [amending this section and sections 78*o*, 78t, 78u, and 78ff of this title] shall become effective immediately upon enactment of this Act [Aug. 10, 1984].''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, except for amendment of subsec. (a)(12) by Pub. L. 94–29 to be effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, with provisions of subsec. (a)(3), as amended by Pub. L. 94–29, or rules or regulations thereunder, not to apply in a way so as to deprive any person of membership in any national securities exchange (or its successor) of which such person was, on June 4, 1975, a member or a member firm as defined in the constitution of such exchange, or so as to deny membership in any such exchange (or its successor) to any natural person who is or becomes associated with such member or member firm, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENTS

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 91–567, see section 6(d) of Pub. L. 91–567, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 91–373, see section 401(c) of Pub. L. 91–373, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467 provided that: ''The amendments made by this Act shall take effect as follows:

''(1) The effective date of section 12(g)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as added by section 3(c) of this Act [section 78*l*(g)(1) of this title], shall be July 1, 1964.

''(2) The effective date of the amendments to sections 12(b) and 15(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [sections 78*l*(b) and 78*o*(a) of this title], contained in sections 3(a) and 6(a), respectively, of this Act shall be July 1, 1964.

''(3) All other amendments contained in this Act [amending this section and sections 77d, 78*l*, 78m, 78n, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78p, 78t, 78w, and 78ff of this title] shall take effect on the date of its enactment [Aug. 20, 1964].''

CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

STATE OPT OUT

Section 347(e) of Pub. L. 103–325 provided that: ''Notwithstanding the amendments made by this section [amending this section and section 24 of Title 12, Banks and Banking], a note that is directly secured by a first lien on one or more parcels of real estate upon which is located one or more commercial structures shall not be considered to be a mortgage related security under section 3(a)(41) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(41)] in any State that, prior to the expiration of 7 years after the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 23, 1994], enacts a statute that specifically refers to this section and either prohibits or provides for a more limited authority to purchase, hold, or invest in such securities by any person, trust, corporation, partnership, association, business trust, or business entity or class thereof than is provided by the amendments made by this subsection. The enactment by any State of any statute of the type described in the preceding sentence shall not affect the validity of any contractual commitment to purchase, hold, or invest that was made prior thereto, and shall not require the sale or other disposition of any securities acquired prior thereto.''

DEFINITIONS

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §301(b)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–451, provided that: ''As used in the amendment made by subsection (a) [enacting sections 206A to 206C of Pub. L. 106—102, set out below], the term 'security' has the same meaning as in section 2(a)(1) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(1)] or section 3(a)(10) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(10)].''

Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §206, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1393, provided that:

''(a) DEFINITION OF IDENTIFIED BANKING PRODUCT.—For purposes of paragraphs (4) and (5) of section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(4), (5)), the term 'identified banking product' means—

''(1) a deposit account, savings account, certificate of deposit, or other deposit instrument issued by a bank;

''(2) a banker's acceptance;

''(3) a letter of credit issued or loan made by a bank;

''(4) a debit account at a bank arising from a credit card or similar arrangement;

''(5) a participation in a loan which the bank or an affiliate of the bank (other than a broker or dealer) funds, participates in, or owns that is sold—

''(A) to qualified investors; or

''(B) to other persons that—

''(i) have the opportunity to review and assess any material information, including information regarding the borrower's creditworthiness; and

''(ii) based on such factors as financial sophistication, net worth, and knowledge and experience in financial matters, have the capability to evaluate the information available, as determined under generally applicable banking standards or guidelines; or

''(6) any swap agreement, including credit and equity swaps, except that an equity swap that is sold directly to any person other than a qualified investor (as defined in section 3(a)(54) of the Securities Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(54)]) shall not be treated as an identified banking product.

''(b) DEFINITION OF SWAP AGREEMENT.—For purposes of subsection (a)(6), the term 'swap agreement' means any individually negotiated contract, agreement, warrant, note, or option that is based, in whole or in part,

on the value of, any interest in, or any quantitative measure or the occurrence of any event relating to, one or more commodities, securities, currencies, interest or other rates, indices, or other assets, but does not include any other identified banking product, as defined in paragraphs (1) through (5) of subsection (a).

''(c) CLASSIFICATION LIMITED.—Classification of a particular product as an identified banking product pursuant to this section shall not be construed as finding or implying that such product is or is not a security for any purpose under the securities laws, or is or is not an account, agreement, contract, or transaction for any purpose under the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.].

''(d) INCORPORATED DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section, the terms 'bank' and 'qualified investor' have the same meanings as given in section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)], as amended by this Act.''

Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §§206A—206C, as added by Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §301(a)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–449, provided that:

''SEC. 206A. SWAP AGREEMENT.

''(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection (b), as used in this section, the term 'swap agreement' means any agreement, contract, or transaction between eligible contract participants (as defined in section 1a(12) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1a(12)] as in effect on the date of the enactment of this section [Dec. 21, 2000]), other than a person that is an eligible contract participant under section 1a(12)(C) of the Commodity Exchange Act, the material terms of which (other than price and quantity) are subject to individual negotiation, and that—

''(1) is a put, call, cap, floor, collar, or similar option of any kind for the purchase or sale of, or based on the value of, one or more interest or other rates, currencies, commodities, indices, quantitative measures, or other financial or economic interests or property of any kind;

''(2) provides for any purchase, sale, payment or delivery (other than a dividend on an equity security) that is dependent on the occurrence, non-occurrence, or the extent of the occurrence of an event or contingency associated with a potential financial, economic, or commercial consequence;

''(3) provides on an executory basis for the exchange, on a fixed or contingent basis, of one or more payments based on the value or level of one or more interest or other rates, currencies, commodities, securities, instruments of indebtedness, indices, quantitative measures, or other financial or economic interests or property of any kind, or any interest therein or based on the value thereof, and that transfers, as between the parties to the transaction, in whole or in part, the financial risk associated with a future change in any such value or level without also conveying a current or future direct or indirect ownership interest in an asset (including any enterprise or investment pool) or liability that incorporates the financial risk so transferred, including any such agreement, contract, or transaction commonly known as an interest rate swap, including a rate floor, rate cap, rate collar, cross-currency rate swap, basis swap, currency swap, equity index swap, equity swap, debt index swap, debt swap, credit spread, credit default swap, credit swap, weather swap, or commodity swap;

''(4) provides for the purchase or sale, on a fixed or contingent basis, of any commodity, currency, instrument, interest, right, service, good, article, or property of any kind; or

''(5) is any combination or permutation of, or option on, any agreement, contract, or transaction described in any of paragraphs (1) through (4).

''(b) EXCLUSIONS.—The term 'swap agreement' does not include—

''(1) any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities, including any interest therein or based on the value thereof;

''(2) any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 6(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78f(a)] relating to foreign currency;

''(3) any agreement, contract, or transaction providing for the purchase or sale of one or more securities on a fixed basis;

''(4) any agreement, contract, or transaction providing for the purchase or sale of one or more securities on a contingent basis, unless such agreement, contract, or transaction predicates such purchase or sale on the occurrence of a bona fide contingency that might reasonably be expected to affect or be affected by the creditworthiness of a party other than a party to the agreement, contract, or transaction;

''(5) any note, bond, or evidence of indebtedness that is a security as defined in section 2(a)(1) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(1)] or section 3(a)(10) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(10)]; or

''(6) any agreement, contract, or transaction that is—

''(A) based on a security; and

''(B) entered into directly or through an underwriter (as defined in section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77b(a)]) by the issuer of such security for the purposes of raising capital, unless such agreement, contract, or transaction is entered into to manage a risk associated with capital raising.

''(c) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION REGARDING MASTER AGREEMENTS.—As used in this section, the term 'swap agreement' shall be construed to include a master agreement that provides for an agreement, contract, or transaction that is a swap agreement pursuant to subsections (a) and (b), together with all supplements to any such master agreement, without regard to whether the master agreement contains an agreement, contract, or transaction that is not a swap agreement pursuant to subsections (a) and (b), except that the master agreement shall be considered to be a swap agreement only with respect to each agreement, contract, or transaction under the master agreement that is a swap agreement pursuant to subsections (a) and (b).

''SEC. 206B. SECURITY-BASED SWAP AGREEMENT.

''As used in this section, the term 'security-based swap agreement' means a swap agreement (as defined in section 206A) of which a material term is based on the price, yield, value, or volatility of any security or any group or index of securities, or any interest therein.

''SEC. 206C. NON-SECURITY-BASED SWAP AGREEMENT.

''As used in this section, the term 'non-security-based swap agreement' means any swap agreement (as defined in section 206A) that is not a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B).''

## § 78c–1. Swap agreements

### (a) Non-security-based swap agreements

The definition of ''security'' in section 78c(a)(10) of this title does not include any non-security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206C of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act).

### (b) Security-based swap agreements

(1) The definition of ''security'' in section 78c(a)(10) of this title does not include any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act).

(2) The Commission is prohibited from registering, or requiring, recommending, or suggesting, the registration under this chapter of any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act).

If the Commission becomes aware that a registrant has filed a registration application with respect to such a swap agreement, the Commission shall promptly so notify the registrant. Any such registration with respect to such a swap agreement shall be void and of no force or effect.

(3) Except as provided in section 78p(a) of this title with respect to reporting requirements, the Commission is prohibited from—

(A) promulgating, interpreting, or enforcing rules; or

(B) issuing orders of general applicability;

under this chapter in a manner that imposes or specifies reporting or recordkeeping requirements, procedures, or standards as prophylactic measures against fraud, manipulation, or insider trading with respect to any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act).

(4) References in this chapter to the ''purchase'' or ''sale'' of a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) shall be deemed to mean the execution, termination (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing of rights or obligations under, a security-based swap agreement, as the context may require.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 3A, as added Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title III, § 303(a)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–452.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Sections 206B and 206C of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in text, are sections 206B and 206C of Pub. L. 106–102, which are set out in a note under section 78c of this title.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(2) to (4), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

## § 78d. Securities and Exchange Commission

### (a) Establishment; composition; limitations on commissioners; terms of office

There is hereby established a Securities and Exchange Commission (hereinafter referred to as the ''Commission'') to be composed of five commissioners to be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. Not more than three of such commissioners shall be members of the same political party, and in making appointments members of different political parties shall be appointed alternately as nearly as may be practicable. No commissioner shall engage in any other business, vocation, or employment than that of serving as commissioner, nor shall any commissioner participate, directly or indirectly, in any stock-market operations or transactions of a character subject to regulation by the Commission pursuant to this chapter. Each commissioner shall hold office for a term of five years and until his successor is appointed and has qualified, except that he shall not so continue to serve beyond the expiration of the next session of Congress subsequent to the expiration of said fixed term of office, and except (1) any commissioner appointed to fill a vacancy occurring prior to the expiration of the term for which his predecessor was appointed shall be appointed for the remainder of such term, and (2) the terms of office of the commissioners first taking office after June 6, 1934, shall expire as designated by the President at the time of nomination, one at the end of one year, one at the end of two years, one at the end of three years, one at the end of four years, and one at the end of five years, after June 6, 1934.

### (b) Appointment and compensation of staff and leasing authority

#### (1) Appointment and compensation

The Commission shall appoint and compensate officers, attorneys, economists, examiners, and other employees in accordance with section 4802 of title 5.

#### (2) Reporting of information

In establishing and adjusting schedules of compensation and benefits for officers, attorneys, economists, examiners, and other employees of the Commission under applicable provisions of law, the Commission shall inform the heads of the agencies referred to under section 1833b of title 12 and Congress of such compensation and benefits and shall seek to maintain comparability with such agencies regarding compensation and benefits.

#### (3) Leasing authority

Nothwithstanding[1] any other provision of law, the Commission is authorized to enter directly into leases for real property for office, meeting, storage, and such other space as is necessary to carry out its functions, and shall be exempt from any General Services Administration space management regulations or directives.

### (c) Acceptance of travel support for Commission activities from non-Federal sources; regulations

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in accordance with regulations which the Commission shall prescribe to prevent conflicts of interest, the Commission may accept payment and reimbursement, in cash or in kind, from non-Federal agencies, organizations, and individuals for travel, subsistence, and other necessary expenses incurred by Commission members and employees in attending meetings and conferences concerning the functions or activities of the Commission. Any payment or reimbursement accepted shall be credited to the appropriated funds of the Commission. The amount of travel, subsistence, and other necessary expenses for members and employees paid or reimbursed under this subsection may exceed per diem amounts established in official travel regulations, but the Commission may include in its regulations under this subsection a limitation on such amounts.

### (d) Acceptance of relocation expenses from former employers by professional fellows program participants

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, former employers of participants in the Commission's professional fellows programs may pay

[1] So in original. Probably should be ''Notwithstanding''.

such participants their actual expenses for relocation to Washington, District of Columbia, to facilitate their participation in such programs, and program participants may accept such payments.

**(e) Fee payments**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, whenever any fee is required to be paid to the Commission pursuant to any provision of the securities laws or any other law, the Commission may provide by rule that such fee shall be paid in a manner other than in cash and the Commission may also specify the time that such fee shall be determined and paid relative to the filing of any statement or document with the Commission.

**(f) Reimbursement of expenses for assisting foreign securities authorities**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission may accept payment and reimbursement, in cash or in kind, from a foreign securities authority, or made on behalf of such authority, for necessary expenses incurred by the Commission, its members, and employees in carrying out any investigation pursuant to section 78u(a)(2) of this title or in providing any other assistance to a foreign securities authority. Any payment or reimbursement accepted shall be considered a reimbursement to the appropriated funds of the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 4, 48 Stat. 885; Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, title XI, § 1106(a), 63 Stat. 972; Pub. L. 86–619, § 3, July 12, 1960, 74 Stat. 408; Pub. L. 86–771, Sept. 13, 1960, 74 Stat. 913; Pub. L. 88–426, title III, § 305(20), Aug. 14, 1964, 78 Stat. 425; Pub. L. 98–38, § 1, June 6, 1983, 97 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, § 307, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1254; Pub. L. 101–550, title I, § 103, title II, § 207, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2713, 2721; Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, § 406, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3444; Pub. L. 105–353, title II, § 203, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3234; Pub. L. 107–123, § 8(d)(2), Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2399.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original ''this title'' and ''this Act'', respectively. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (b)(1), (2). Pub. L. 107–123 added pars. (1) and (2) and struck out former pars. (1) and (2), which authorized the Commission to appoint and compensate officers, attorneys, examiners, and other experts as needed, and to select, appoint, and compensate professional economists.

1998—Subsec. (b)(2), (3). Pub. L. 105–353 added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

1996—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104–290 inserted before period at end ''and the Commission may also specify the time that such fee shall be determined and paid relative to the filing of any statement or document with the Commission''.

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–550, § 103, inserted heading, designated existing provision as par. (1) and inserted heading, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101–550, § 207, added subsec. (f).

1987—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–181 added subsec. (e).

1983—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 98–38 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88–426 repealed provisions which prescribed the compensation of the Chairman and the Commissioners.

1960—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 86–771 authorized the chairman to receive an additional $500 a year.

Pub. L. 86–619 increased the salary of each commissioner from $15,000 to $20,000 a year, and provided for continuation in office of a commissioner upon termination of his term until a successor is appointed and has qualified, not beyond expiration of next session of Congress subsequent to the expiration of said fixed term of office.

1949—Subsec. (b). Act Oct. 28, 1949, substituted ''Classification Act of 1949'' for ''Classification Act of 1923''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–123 effective Oct. 1, 2001, see section 11 of Pub. L. 107–123, set out as a note under section 78ee of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 88–426, see section 501 of Pub. L. 88–426.

REPEALS

Act Oct. 28, 1949, ch. 782, set out in the credit of this section, was repealed (subject to a savings clause) by Pub. L. 89–554, Sept. 6, 1966, § 8, 80 Stat. 632, 655.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out below.

COMPENSATION OF CHAIRMAN AND COMMISSIONERS

Compensation of Chairman and Commissioners, see sections 5314 and 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**1950 REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 10**

15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265

Prepared by the President and transmitted to the Senate and the House of Representatives in Congress assembled, March 13, 1950, pursuant to the provisions of the Reorganization Act of 1949, approved June 20, 1949 [see 5 U.S.C. 901 et seq.].

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

SECTION 1. TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS TO THE CHAIRMAN

(a) Subject to the provisions of subsection (b) of this section there are hereby transferred from the Securities and Exchange Commission, hereinafter referred to as the Commission, to the Chairman of the Commission, hereinafter referred to as the Chairman, the executive and administrative functions of the Commission, including functions of the Commission with respect to (1) the appointment and supervision of personnel employed under the Commission, (2) the distribution of business among such personnel and among administrative units of the Commission, and (3) the use and expenditure of funds.

(b)(1) In carrying out any of his functions under the provisions of this section the Chairman shall be governed by general policies of the Commission and by such regulatory decisions, findings, and determinations as the Commission may by law be authorized to make.

(2) The appointment by the Chairman of the heads of major administrative units under the Commission shall be subject to the approval of the Commission.

(3) Personnel employed regularly and full time in the immediate offices of Commissioners other than the Chairman shall not be affected by the provisions of this reorganization plan.

(4) There are hereby reserved to the Commission its functions with respect to revising budget estimates and with respect to determining upon the distribution of appropriated funds according to major programs and purposes.

SEC. 2. PERFORMANCE OF TRANSFERRED FUNCTIONS

The Chairman may from time to time make such provisions as he shall deem appropriate authorizing the performance by any officer, employee, or administrative unit under his jurisdiction of any function transferred to the Chairman by the provisions of section 1 of this reorganization plan.

SEC. 3. DESIGNATION OF CHAIRMAN

The functions of the Commission with respect to choosing a Chairman from among the Commissioners composing the Commission are hereby transferred to the President.

MESSAGE OF THE PRESIDENT

To the Congress of the United States:

I transmit herewith Reorganization Plan No. 10 of 1950, prepared in accordance with the Reorganization Act of 1949 and providing for reorganizations in the Securities and Exchange Commission. My reasons for transmitting this plan are stated in an accompanying general message.

After investigation I have found and hereby declare that each reorganization included in Reorganization Plan No. 10 of 1950 is necessary to accomplish one or more of the purposes set forth in section 2(a) of the Reorganization Act of 1949.

The taking effect of the reorganizations included in this plan may not in itself result in substantial immediate savings. However, many benefits in improved operations are probable during the next years which will result in a reduction in expenditures as compared with those that would be otherwise necessary. An itemization of these reductions in advance of actual experience under this plan is not practicable.

HARRY S. TRUMAN.

### § 78d–1. Delegation of functions by Commission

#### (a) Authorization; functions delegable; eligible persons; application of other laws

In addition to its existing authority, the Securities and Exchange Commission shall have the authority to delegate, by published order or rule, any of its functions to a division of the Commission, an individual Commissioner, an administrative law judge, or an employee or employee board, including functions with respect to hearing, determining, ordering, certifying, reporting, or otherwise acting as to any work, business, or matter. Nothing in this section shall be deemed to supersede the provisions of section 556(b) of title 5, or to authorize the delegation of the function of rulemaking as defined in subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5, with reference to general rules as distinguished from rules of particular applicability, or of the making of any rule pursuant to section 78s(c) of this title.

#### (b) Right of review; procedure

With respect to the delegation of any of its functions, as provided in subsection (a) of this section, the Commission shall retain a discretionary right to review the action of any such division of the Commission, individual Commissioner, administrative law judge, employee, or employee board, upon its own initiative or upon petition of a party to or intervenor in such action, within such time and in such manner as the Commission by rule shall prescribe. The vote of one member of the Commission shall be sufficient to bring any such action before the Commission for review. A person or party shall be entitled to review by the Commission if he or it is adversely affected by action at a delegated level which (1) denies any request for action pursuant to section 77h(a) or section 77h(c) of this title or the first sentence of section 78*l*(d) of this title; (2) suspends trading in a security pursuant to section 78*l*(k) of this title; or (3) is pursuant to any provision of this chapter in a case of adjudication, as defined in section 551 of title 5, not required by this chapter to be determined on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing (except to the extent there is involved a matter described in section 554(a)(1) through (6) of such title 5).

#### (c) Finality of delegated action

If the right to exercise such review is declined, or if no such review is sought within the time stated in the rules promulgated by the Commission, then the action of any such division of the Commission, individual Commissioner, administrative law judge, employee, or employee board, shall, for all purposes, including appeal or review thereof, be deemed the action of the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 4A, as added Pub. L. 100–181, title III, § 308(a), Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1254.)

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 78d–1, Pub. L. 87–592, § 1, Aug. 20, 1962, 76 Stat. 394; Pub. L. 94–29, § 25, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 163; Pub. L. 95–251, § 2(a)(4), Mar. 27, 1978, 92 Stat. 183, provided for subject matter similar to the provisions comprising this section, prior to repeal by section 308(b) of Pub. L. 100–181.

### § 78d–2. Transfer of functions with respect to assignment of personnel to chairman

In addition to the functions transferred by the provisions of Reorganization Plan Numbered 10 of 1950 (64 Stat. 1265), there are hereby transferred from the Commission to the Chairman of the Commission the functions of the Commission with respect to the assignment of Commission personnel, including Commissioners, to perform such functions as may have been delegated by the Commission to the Commission personnel, including Commissioners, pursuant to section 78d–1 of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 4B, as added Pub. L. 100–181, title III, § 308(a), Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1255.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan Numbered 10 of 1950 (64 Stat. 1265), referred to in text, is set out as a note under section 78d of this title.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 78d–2, Pub. L. 87–592, § 2, Aug. 20, 1962, 76 Stat. 395, provided for subject matter similar to the provisions comprising this section, prior to repeal by section 308(b) of Pub. L. 100–181.

### § 78d–3. Appearance and practice before the Commission

#### (a) Authority to censure

The Commission may censure any person, or deny, temporarily or permanently, to any person the privilege of appearing or practicing before the Commission in any way, if that person

is found by the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing in the matter—

(1) not to possess the requisite qualifications to represent others;

(2) to be lacking in character or integrity, or to have engaged in unethical or improper professional conduct; or

(3) to have willfully violated, or willfully aided and abetted the violation of, any provision of the securities laws or the rules and regulations issued thereunder.

**(b) Definition**

With respect to any registered public accounting firm or associated person, for purposes of this section, the term ''improper professional conduct'' means—

(1) intentional or knowing conduct, including reckless conduct, that results in a violation of applicable professional standards; and

(2) negligent conduct in the form of—

(A) a single instance of highly unreasonable conduct that results in a violation of applicable professional standards in circumstances in which the registered public accounting firm or associated person knows, or should know, that heightened scrutiny is warranted; or

(B) repeated instances of unreasonable conduct, each resulting in a violation of applicable professional standards, that indicate a lack of competence to practice before the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 4C, as added Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, § 602, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 794.)

### § 78e. Transactions on unregistered exchanges

It shall be unlawful for any broker, dealer, or exchange, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce for the purpose of using any facility of an exchange within or subject to the jurisdiction of the United States to effect any transaction in a security, or to report any such transaction, unless such exchange (1) is registered as national securities exchange under section 78f of this title, or (2) is exempted from such registration upon application by the exchange because, in the opinion of the Commission, by reason of the limited volume of transactions effected on such exchange, it is not practicable and not necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to require such registration.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 5, 48 Stat. 885.)

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### § 78f. National securities exchanges

**(a) Registration; application**

An exchange may be registered as a national securities exchange under the terms and conditions hereinafter provided in this section and in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(a) of this title, by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the rules of the exchange and such other information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(b) Determination by Commission requisite to registration of applicant as a national securities exchange**

An exchange shall not be registered as a national securities exchange unless the Commission determines that—

(1) Such exchange is so organized and has the capacity to be able to carry out the purposes of this chapter and to comply, and (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) to enforce compliance by its members and persons associated with its members, with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and the rules of the exchange.

(2) Subject to the provisions of subsection (c) of this section, the rules of the exchange provide that any registered broker or dealer or natural person associated with a registered broker or dealer may become a member of such exchange and any person may become associated with a member thereof.

(3) The rules of the exchange assure a fair representation of its members in the selection of its directors and administration of its affairs and provide that one or more directors shall be representative of issuers and investors and not be associated with a member of the exchange, broker, or dealer.

(4) The rules of the exchange provide for the equitable allocation of reasonable dues, fees, and other charges among its members and issuers and other persons using its facilities.

(5) The rules of the exchange are designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices, to promote just and equitable principles of trade, to foster cooperation and coordination with persons engaged in regulating, clearing, settling, processing information with respect to, and facilitating transactions in securities, to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a free and open market and a national market system, and, in general, to protect investors and the public interest; and are not designed to permit unfair discrimination between customers, issuers, brokers, or dealers, or to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this chapter or the administration of the exchange.

(6) The rules of the exchange provide that (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) its members and persons associated with its members shall be appropriately disciplined for violation of the provisions of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the exchange, by expulsion, suspension, limitation of activities, functions, and operations, fine, censure, being suspended or barred from being associated with a member, or any other fitting sanction.

(7) The rules of the exchange are in accordance with the provisions of subsection (d) of this section, and in general, provide a fair procedure for the disciplining of members and persons associated with members, the denial of membership to any person seeking membership therein, the barring of any person from becoming associated with a member thereof, and the prohibition or limitation by the exchange of any person with respect to access to services offered by the exchange or a member thereof.

(8) The rules of the exchange do not impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(9) The rules of the exchange prohibit the listing of any security issued in a limited partnership rollup transaction (as such term is defined in paragraphs (4) and (5) of section 78n(h) of this title), unless such transaction was conducted in accordance with procedures designed to protect the rights of limited partners, including—

(A) the right of dissenting limited partners to one of the following:

(i) an appraisal and compensation;

(ii) retention of a security under substantially the same terms and conditions as the original issue;

(iii) approval of the limited partnership rollup transaction by not less than 75 percent of the outstanding securities of each of the participating limited partnerships;

(iv) the use of a committee of limited partners that is independent, as determined in accordance with rules prescribed by the exchange, of the general partner or sponsor, that has been approved by a majority of the outstanding units of each of the participating limited partnerships, and that has such authority as is necessary to protect the interest of limited partners, including the authority to hire independent advisors, to negotiate with the general partner or sponsor on behalf of the limited partners, and to make a recommendation to the limited partners with respect to the proposed transaction; or

(v) other comparable rights that are prescribed by rule by the exchange and that are designed to protect dissenting limited partners;

(B) the right not to have their voting power unfairly reduced or abridged;

(C) the right not to bear an unfair portion of the costs of a proposed limited partnership rollup transaction that is rejected; and

(D) restrictions on the conversion of contingent interests or fees into non-contingent interests or fees and restrictions on the receipt of a non-contingent equity interest in exchange for fees for services which have not yet been provided.

As used in this paragraph, the term ''dissenting limited partner'' means a person who, on the date on which soliciting material is mailed to investors, is a holder of a beneficial interest in a limited partnership that is the subject of a limited partnership rollup transaction, and who casts a vote against the transaction and complies with procedures established by the exchange, except that for purposes of an exchange or tender offer, such person shall file an objection in writing under the rules of the exchange during the period during which the offer is outstanding.

**(c) Denial of membership in national exchanges; denial of association with member; conditions; limitation of membership**

(1) A national securities exchange shall deny membership to (A) any person, other than a natural person, which is not a registered broker or dealer or (B) any natural person who is not, or is not associated with, a registered broker or dealer.

(2) A national securities exchange may, and in cases in which the Commission, by order, directs as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors shall, deny membership to any registered broker or dealer or natural person associated with a registered broker or dealer, and bar from becoming associated with a member any person, who is subject to a statutory disqualification. A national securities exchange shall file notice with the Commission not less than thirty days prior to admitting any person to membership or permitting any person to become associated with a member, if the exchange knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, that such person was subject to a statutory disqualification. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3)(A) A national securities exchange may deny membership to, or condition the membership of, a registered broker or dealer if (i) such broker or dealer does not meet such standards of financial responsibility or operational capability or such broker or dealer or any natural person associated with such broker or dealer does not meet such standards of training, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the exchange or (ii) such broker or dealer or person associated with such broker or dealer has engaged and there is a reasonable likelihood he may again engage in acts or practices inconsistent with just and equitable principles of trade. A national securities exchange may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to become a member and the natural persons associated with such an applicant in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the exchange.

(B) A national securities exchange may bar a natural person from becoming a member or associated with a member, or condition the membership of a natural person or association of a natural person with a member, if such natural person (i) does not meet such standards of training, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the exchange or (ii) has engaged and there is a reasonable likelihood he may again engage in acts or practices inconsistent with just and equitable principles of trade. A national securities exchange may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to become a person associated with a member in ac-

cordance with procedures established by the rules of the exchange and require any person associated with a member, or any class of such persons, to be registered with the exchange in accordance with procedures so established.

(C) A national securities exchange may bar any person from becoming associated with a member if such person does not agree (i) to supply the exchange with such information with respect to its relationship and dealings with the member as may be specified in the rules of the exchange and (ii) to permit the examination of its books and records to verify the accuracy of any information so supplied.

(4) A national securities exchange may limit (A) the number of members of the exchange and (B) the number of members and designated representatives of members permitted to effect transactions on the floor of the exchange without the services of another person acting as broker: *Provided, however*, That no national securities exchange shall have the authority to decrease the number of memberships in such exchange, or the number of members and designated representatives of members permitted to effect transactions on the floor of such exchange without the services of another person acting as broker, below such number in effect on May 1, 1975, or the date such exchange was registered with the Commission, whichever is later: *And provided further*, That the Commission, in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(c) of this title, may amend the rules of any national securities exchange to increase (but not to decrease) or to remove any limitation on the number of memberships in such exchange or the number of members or designated representatives of members permitted to effect transactions on the floor of the exchange without the services of another person acting as broker, if the Commission finds that such limitation imposes a burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

**(d) Discipline of national securities exchange members and persons associated with members; summary proceedings**

(1) In any proceeding by a national securities exchange to determine whether a member or person associated with a member should be disciplined (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection), the exchange shall bring specific charges, notify such member or person of, and give him an opportunity to defend against, such charges, and keep a record. A determination by the exchange to impose a disciplinary sanction shall be supported by a statement setting forth—

(A) any act or practice in which such member or person associated with a member has been found to have engaged, or which such member or person has been found to have omitted;

(B) the specific provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the exchange which any such act or practice, or omission to act, is deemed to violate; and

(C) the sanction imposed and the reasons therefor.

(2) In any proceeding by a national securities exchange to determine whether a person shall be denied membership, barred from becoming associated with a member, or prohibited or limited with respect to access to services offered by the exchange or a member thereof (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection), the exchange shall notify such person of, and give him an opportunity to be heard upon, the specific grounds for denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation under consideration and keep a record. A determination by the exchange to deny membership, bar a person from becoming associated with a member, or prohibit or limit a person with respect to access to services offered by the exchange or a member thereof shall be supported by a statement setting forth the specific grounds on which the denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation is based.

(3) A national securities exchange may summarily (A) suspend a member or person associated with a member who has been and is expelled or suspended from any self-regulatory organization or barred or suspended from being associated with a member of any self-regulatory organization, (B) suspend a member who is in such financial or operating difficulty that the exchange determines and so notifies the Commission that the member cannot be permitted to continue to do business as a member with safety to investors, creditors, other members, or the exchange, or (C) limit or prohibit any person with respect to access to services offered by the exchange if subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph is applicable to such person or, in the case of a person who is not a member, if the exchange determines that such person does not meet the qualification requirements or other prerequisites for such access and such person cannot be permitted to continue to have such access with safety to investors, creditors, members, or the exchange. Any person aggrieved by any such summary action shall be promptly afforded an opportunity for a hearing by the exchange in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection. The Commission, by order, may stay any such summary action on its own motion or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby, if the Commission determines summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments) that such stay is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

**(e) Commissions, allowances, discounts, and other fees**

(1) On and after June 4, 1975, no national securities exchange may impose any schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members: *Provided, however*, That until May 1, 1976, the preceding provisions of this paragraph shall not prohibit any such exchange from imposing or fixing any schedule of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for acting as broker on the floor of the exchange or as odd-lot dealer: *And provided further*, That the Commission, in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(b) of this title as modified by the provisions of paragraph (3) of this subsection, may—

(A) permit a national securities exchange, by rule, to impose a reasonable schedule or fix reasonable rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for effecting transactions on such exchange prior to November 1, 1976, if the Commission finds that such schedule or fixed rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees are in the public interest; and

(B) permit a national securities exchange, by rule, to impose a schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for effecting transactions on such exchange after November 1, 1976, if the Commission finds that such schedule or fixed rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees (i) are reasonable in relation to the costs of providing the service for which such fees are charged (and the Commission publishes the standards employed in adjudging reasonableness) and (ii) do not impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, taking into consideration the competitive effects of permitting such schedule or fixed rates weighed against the competitive effects of other lawful actions which the Commission is authorized to take under this chapter.

(2) Notwithstanding the provisions of section 78s(c) of this title, the Commission, by rule, may abrogate any exchange rule which imposes a schedule or fixes rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees, if the Commission determines that such schedule or fixed rates are no longer reasonable, in the public interest, or necessary to accomplish the purposes of this chapter.

(3)(A) Before approving or disapproving any proposed rule change submitted by a national securities exchange which would impose a schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for effecting transactions on such exchange, the Commission shall afford interested persons (i) an opportunity for oral presentation of data, views, and arguments and (ii) with respect to any such rule concerning transactions effected after November 1, 1976, if the Commission determines there are disputed issues of material fact, to present such rebuttal submissions and to conduct (or have conducted under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph) such cross-examination as the Commission determines to be appropriate and required for full disclosure and proper resolution of such disputed issues of material fact.

(B) The Commission shall prescribe rules and make rulings concerning any proceeding in accordance with subparagraph (A) of this paragraph designed to avoid unnecessary costs or delay. Such rules or rulings may (i) impose reasonable time limits on each interested person's oral presentations, and (ii) require any cross-examination to which a person may be entitled under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph to be conducted by the Commission on behalf of that person in such manner as the Commission determines to be appropriate and required for full disclosure and proper resolution of disputed issues of material fact.

(C)(i) If any class of persons, the members of which are entitled to conduct (or have conducted) cross-examination under subparagraphs (A) and (B) of this paragraph and which have, in the view of the Commission, the same or similar interests in the proceeding, cannot agree upon a single representative of such interests for purposes of cross-examination, the Commission may make rules and rulings specifying the manner in which such interests shall be represented and such cross-examination conducted.

(ii) No member of any class of persons with respect to which the Commission has specified the manner in which its interests shall be represented pursuant to clause (i) of this subparagraph shall be denied, pursuant to such clause (i), the opportunity to conduct (or have conducted) cross-examination as to issues affecting his particular interests if he satisfies the Commission that he has made a reasonable and good faith effort to reach agreement upon group representation and there are substantial and relevant issues which would not be presented adequately by group representation.

(D) A transcript shall be kept of any oral presentation and cross-examination.

(E) In addition to the bases specified in section 78y(a) of this title, a reviewing Court may set aside an order of the Commission under section 78s(b) of this title approving an exchange rule imposing a schedule or fixing rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees, if the Court finds—

(1) a Commission determination under subparagraph (A) of this paragraph that an interested person is not entitled to conduct cross-examination or make rebuttal submissions, or

(2) a Commission rule or ruling under subparagraph (B) of this paragraph limiting the petitioner's cross-examination or rebuttal submissions,

has precluded full disclosure and proper resolution of disputed issues of material fact which were necessary for fair determination by the Commission.

**(f) Compliance of non-members with exchange rules**

The Commission, by rule or order, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to maintain fair and orderly markets, or to assure equal regulation, may require—

(1) any person not a member or a designated representative of a member of a national securities exchange effecting transactions on such exchange without the services of another person acting as a broker, or

(2) any broker or dealer not a member of a national securities exchange effecting transactions on such exchange on a regular basis,

to comply with such rules of such exchange as the Commission may specify.

**(g) Notice registration of security futures product exchanges**

**(1) Registration required**

An exchange that lists or trades security futures products may register as a national securities exchange solely for the purposes of trading security futures products if—

(A) the exchange is a board of trade, as that term is defined by the Commodity Ex-

change Act (7 U.S.C. 1a(2)) [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], that—

(i) has been designated a contract market by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission and such designation is not suspended by order of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission; or

(ii) is registered as a derivative transaction execution facility under section 5a of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 7a] and such registration is not suspended by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission; and

(B) such exchange does not serve as a market place for transactions in securities other than—

(i) security futures products; or

(ii) futures on exempted securities or groups or indexes of securities or options thereon that have been authorized under section 2(a)(1)(C) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 2(a)(1)(C)].

**(2) Registration by notice filing**

**(A) Form and content**

An exchange required to register only because such exchange lists or trades security futures products may register for purposes of this section by filing with the Commission a written notice in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the rules of the exchange and such other information and documents concerning such exchange, comparable to the information and documents required for national securities exchanges under subsection (a) of this section, as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. If such exchange has filed documents with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, to the extent that such documents contain information satisfying the Commission's informational requirements, copies of such documents may be filed with the Commission in lieu of the required written notice.

**(B) Immediate effectiveness**

Such registration shall be effective contemporaneously with the submission of notice, in written or electronic form, to the Commission, except that such registration shall not be effective if such registration would be subject to suspension or revocation.

**(C) Termination**

Such registration shall be terminated immediately if any of the conditions for registration set forth in this subsection are no longer satisfied.

**(3) Public availability**

The Commission shall promptly publish in the Federal Register an acknowledgment of receipt of all notices the Commission receives under this subsection and shall make all such notices available to the public.

**(4) Exemption of exchanges from specified provisions**

**(A) Transaction exemptions**

An exchange that is registered under paragraph (1) of this subsection shall be exempt from, and shall not be required to enforce compliance by its members with, and its members shall not, solely with respect to those transactions effected on such exchange in security futures products, be required to comply with, the following provisions of this chapter and the rules thereunder:

(i) Subsections (b)(2), (b)(3), (b)(4), (b)(7), (b)(9), (c), (d), and (e) of this section.

(ii) Section 78h of this title.

(iii) Section 78k of this title.

(iv) Subsections (d), (f), and (k) of section 78q of this title.

(v) Subsections (a), (f), and (h) of section 78s of this title.

**(B) Rule change exemptions**

An exchange that registered under paragraph (1) of this subsection shall also be exempt from submitting proposed rule changes pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title, except that—

(i) such exchange shall file proposed rule changes related to higher margin levels, fraud or manipulation, recordkeeping, reporting, listing standards, or decimal pricing for security futures products, sales practices for security futures products for persons who effect transactions in security futures products, or rules effectuating such exchange's obligation to enforce the securities laws pursuant to section 78s(b)(7) of this title;

(ii) such exchange shall file pursuant to sections 78s(b)(1) and 78s(b)(2) of this title proposed rule changes related to margin, except for changes resulting in higher margin levels; and

(iii) such exchange shall file pursuant to section 78s(b)(1) of this title proposed rule changes that have been abrogated by the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b)(7)(C) of this title.

**(5) Trading in security futures products**

**(A) In general**

Subject to subparagraph (B), it shall be unlawful for any person to execute or trade a security futures product until the later of—

(i) 1 year after December 21, 2000; or

(ii) such date that a futures association registered under section 17 of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 21] has met the requirements set forth in section 78*o*–3(k)(2) of this title.

**(B) Principal-to-principal transactions**

Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), a person may execute or trade a security futures product transaction if—

(i) the transaction is entered into—

(I) on a principal-to-principal basis between parties trading for their own accounts or as described in section 1a(12)(B)(ii) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1a(12)(B)(ii)]; and

(II) only between eligible contract participants (as defined in subparagraphs (A), (B)(ii), and (C) of such section 1a(12) [7 U.S.C. 1a(12)(A), (B)(ii), (C)]) at the time at which the persons enter into the agreement, contract, or transaction; and

(ii) the transaction is entered into on or after the later of—

(I) 8 months after December 21, 2000; or

(II) such date that a futures association registered under section 17 of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 21] has met the requirements set forth in section 78*o*–3(k)(2) of this title.

**(h) Trading in security futures products**

**(1) Trading on exchange or association required**

It shall be unlawful for any person to effect transactions in security futures products that are not listed on a national securities exchange or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title.

**(2) Listing standards required**

Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (7), a national securities exchange or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title may trade only security futures products that (A) conform with listing standards that such exchange or association files with the Commission under section 78s(b) of this title and (B) meet the criteria specified in section 2(a)(1)(D)(i) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 2(a)(1)(D)(i)].

**(3) Requirements for listing standards and conditions for trading**

Such listing standards shall—

(A) except as otherwise provided in a rule, regulation, or order issued pursuant to paragraph (4), require that any security underlying the security future, including each component security of a narrow-based security index, be registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title;

(B) require that if the security futures product is not cash settled, the market on which the security futures product is traded have arrangements in place with a registered clearing agency for the payment and delivery of the securities underlying the security futures product;

(C) be no less restrictive than comparable listing standards for options traded on a national securities exchange or national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title;

(D) except as otherwise provided in a rule, regulation, or order issued pursuant to paragraph (4), require that the security future be based upon common stock and such other equity securities as the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly determine appropriate;

(E) require that the security futures product is cleared by a clearing agency that has in place provisions for linked and coordinated clearing with other clearing agencies that clear security futures products, which permits the security futures product to be purchased on one market and offset on another market that trades such product;

(F) require that only a broker or dealer subject to suitability rules comparable to those of a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title effect transactions in the security futures product;

(G) require that the security futures product be subject to the prohibition against dual trading in section 4j of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 6j) and the rules and regulations thereunder or the provisions of section 78k(a) of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, except to the extent otherwise permitted under this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder;

(H) require that trading in the security futures product not be readily susceptible to manipulation of the price of such security futures product, nor to causing or being used in the manipulation of the price of any underlying security, option on such security, or option on a group or index including such securities;

(I) require that procedures be in place for coordinated surveillance among the market on which the security futures product is traded, any market on which any security underlying the security futures product is traded, and other markets on which any related security is traded to detect manipulation and insider trading;

(J) require that the market on which the security futures product is traded has in place audit trails necessary or appropriate to facilitate the coordinated surveillance required in subparagraph (I);

(K) require that the market on which the security futures product is traded has in place procedures to coordinate trading halts between such market and any market on which any security underlying the security futures product is traded and other markets on which any related security is traded; and

(L) require that the margin requirements for a security futures product comply with the regulations prescribed pursuant to section 78g(c)(2)(B) of this title, except that nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to prevent a national securities exchange or national securities association from requiring higher margin levels for a security futures product when it deems such action to be necessary or appropriate.

**(4) Authority to modify certain listing standard requirements**

**(A) Authority to modify**

The Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, may jointly modify the listing standard requirements specified in subparagraph (A) or (D) of paragraph (3) to the extent such modification fosters the development of fair and orderly markets in security futures products, is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and is consistent with the protection of investors.

**(B) Authority to grant exemptions**

The Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, by order, may jointly exempt any person from compliance with the listing standard requirement specified in subparagraph (E) of paragraph (3) to the extent such exemption fosters the development of fair and orderly markets in security futures products, is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and is consistent with the protection of investors.

**(5) Requirements for other persons trading security future products**

It shall be unlawful for any person (other than a national securities exchange or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title) to constitute, maintain, or provide a marketplace or facilities for bringing together purchasers and sellers of security future products or to otherwise perform with respect to security future products the functions commonly performed by a stock exchange as that term is generally understood, unless a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title or a national securities exchange of which such person is a member—

(A) has in place procedures for coordinated surveillance among such person, the market trading the securities underlying the security future products, and other markets trading related securities to detect manipulation and insider trading;

(B) has rules to require audit trails necessary or appropriate to facilitate the coordinated surveillance required in subparagraph (A); and

(C) has rules to require such person to coordinate trading halts with markets trading the securities underlying the security future products and other markets trading related securities.

**(6) Deferral of options on security futures trading**

No person shall offer to enter into, enter into, or confirm the execution of any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on a security future, except that, after 3 years after December 21, 2000, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission may by order jointly determine to permit trading of puts, calls, straddles, options, or privileges on any security future authorized to be traded under the provisions of this chapter and the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.].

**(7) Deferral of linked and coordinated clearing**

(A) Notwithstanding paragraph (2), until the compliance date, a national securities exchange or national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title may trade a security futures product that does not—

(i) conform with any listing standard promulgated to meet the requirement specified in subparagraph (E) of paragraph (3); or

(ii) meet the criterion specified in section 2(a)(1)(D)(i)(IV) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 2(a)(1)(D)(i)(IV)].

(B) The Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall jointly publish in the Federal Register a notice of the compliance date no later than 165 days before the compliance date.

(C) For purposes of this paragraph, the term ''compliance date'' means the later of—

(i) 180 days after the end of the first full calendar month period in which the average aggregate comparable share volume for all security futures products based on single equity securities traded on all national securities exchanges, any national securities associations registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title, and all other persons equals or exceeds 10 percent of the average aggregate comparable share volume of options on single equity securities traded on all national securities exchanges and any national securities associations registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title; or

(ii) 2 years after the date on which trading in any security futures product commences under this chapter.

**(i) Rules to avoid duplicative regulation of dual registrants**

Consistent with this chapter, each national securities exchange registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall issue such rules as are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting rules applicable to any broker or dealer registered with the Commission pursuant to section 78*o*(b) of this title (except paragraph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 6f(a)] (except paragraph (2) thereof), with respect to the application of—

(1) rules of such national securities exchange of the type specified in section 78*o*(c)(3)(B) of this title involving security futures products; and

(2) similar rules of national securities exchanges registered pursuant to subsection (g) of this section and national securities associations registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title involving security futures products.

**(j) Procedures and rules for security future products**

A national securities exchange registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall implement the procedures specified in subsection (h)(5)(A) of this section and adopt the rules specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of subsection (h)(5) of this section not later than 8 months after the date of receipt of a request from an alternative trading system for such implementation and rules.

**(k) Rules relating to security futures products traded on foreign boards of trade**

(1) To the extent necessary or appropriate in the public interest, to promote fair competition, and consistent with the promotion of market efficiency, innovation, and expansion of investment opportunities, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall jointly issue such rules, regulations, or orders as are necessary and appropriate to permit the offer and sale of a security futures product traded on or

subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade to United States persons.

(2) The rules, regulations, or orders adopted under paragraph (1) shall take into account, as appropriate, the nature and size of the markets that the securities underlying the security futures product reflect.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 6, 48 Stat. 885; Pub. L. 94–29, § 4, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 104; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§ 309–312, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1255; Pub. L. 103–202, title III, § 303(b), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2365; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, §§ 202(a), 206(a), (i), (k)(2), (*l*)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–416, 2763A–426, 2763A–433, 2763A–434.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b) to (e), (g)(4)(A), (h)(3)(G), (7)(C)(ii), and (i), was in the original ''this title''. This chapter, referred to in subsec. (h)(6), was in the original ''this Act''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsecs. (g)(1)(A) and (h)(6), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§ 1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 202(a)], added subsec. (g).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(a)], added subsec. (h).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(i)], added subsec. (i).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(k)(2)], added subsec. (j).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(*l*)], added subsec. (k).

1993—Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 103–202 added par. (9).

1987—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, § 309, substituted ''protection of investors shall'' for ''protection shall''.

Subsec. (c)(3)(A). Pub. L. 100–181, § 310, substituted ''associated'' for ''association''.

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 100–181, § 311, substituted ''may limit (A)'' for ''may (A) limit''.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 100–181, § 312(1), substituted ''paragraph (3) of this subsection'' for ''paragraph (4) of this section''.

Subsec. (e)(3), (4). Pub. L. 100–181, § 312(2), (3), redesignated par. (4) as (3) and, in subpar. (E), substituted ''fixing'' for ''fixes'' in introductory provisions, ''subparagraph (A) of this paragraph'' for ''paragraph (4)(A) of this subsection'' in cl. (1), and ''subparagraph (B) of this paragraph'' for ''paragraph (4)(B) of this subsection'' in cl. (2), and struck out former par. (3) which read as follows: ''Until December 31, 1976, the Commission, on a regular basis, shall file with the Speaker of the House and the President of the Senate information concerning the effect on the public interest, protection of investors, and maintenance of fair and orderly markets of the absence of any schedule or fixed rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by members of any national securities exchange for effecting transactions on such exchange.''

1975—Pub. L. 94–29 restructured the entire section and, in addition, authorized the Commission to require an exchange to file such documents and information as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors and to prescribe the form and substance of an exchange's application for registration, expanded to eight the number of explicit statutory requirements that must be satisfied before an exchange may be registered as a national securities exchange, set forth the authority of a national securities exchange to admit or deny persons membership or association with members, prescribed exchange procedures for instituting disciplinary actions, denying membership, and summarily suspending members or persons associated with members, specified the authority of national securities exchanges to impose schedules or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members for transacting business on the exchange, and empowered the Commission to regulate any broker or dealer who effects transactions on an exchange on a regular basis but who is not a member of that exchange and any person who effects transactions on an exchange without the services of another person acting as broker.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Section 304 of title III of Pub. L. 103–202 provided that:

''(a) EFFECTIVE DATE.—

''(1) IN GENERAL.—The amendments made by section 303 [amending this section and section 78*o*–3 of this title] shall become effective 12 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 17, 1993].

''(2) RULEMAKING AUTHORITY.—Notwithstanding paragraph (1), the authority of the Securities and Exchange Commission, a registered securities association, and a national securities exchange to commence rulemaking proceedings for the purpose of issuing rules pursuant to the amendments made by section 303 is effective on the date of enactment of this Act.

''(3) REVIEW OF FILINGS PRIOR TO EFFECTIVE DATE.—Prior to the effective date of regulations promulgated pursuant to this title [amending this section and sections 78n and 78*o*–3 of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78a and 78n of this title], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall continue to review and declare effective registration statements and amendments thereto relating to limited partnership rollup transactions in accordance with applicable regulations then in effect.

''(b) EFFECT ON EXISTING AUTHORITY.—The amendments made by this title [amending this section and sections 78n and 78*o*–3 of this title] shall not limit the authority of the Securities and Exchange Commission, a registered securities association, or a national securities exchange under any provision of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], or preclude the Commission or such association or exchange from imposing, under any other such provision, a remedy or procedure required to be imposed under such amendments.''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, except for amendment of subsecs. (a) through (d) by Pub. L. 94–29 to be effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, with provisions of subsecs. (b)(2) and (c)(6), as amended by Pub. L. 94–29, or rules or regulations thereunder, not to apply in a way so as to deprive any person of membership in any national securities exchange (or its successor) of which such person was, on June 4, 1975, a member or a member firm as defined in the constitution of such exchange, or so as to deny membership in any such exchange (or its successor) to a natural person who is or becomes associated with such member or member firm, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

CHANGES IN ORGANIZATION AND RULES OF NATIONAL SECURITIES EXCHANGES AND REGISTERED SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS

Section 31(b) of Pub. L. 94–29 provided that: ''If it appears to the Commission at any time within one year

of the effective date of any amendment made by this Act [see Short Title of 1975 Amendment note under section 78a of this title] to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that the organization or rules of any national securities exchange or registered securities association registered with the Commission on the date of enactment of this Act [June 4, 1975] do not comply with such Act as amended, the Commission shall so notify such exchange or association in writing, specifying the respects in which the exchange or association is not in compliance with such Act. On and after the one hundred eightieth day following the date of receipt of such notice by a national securities exchange or registered securities association, the Commission, without regard to the provisions of section 19(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [section 78s(h) of this title], as amended by this Act, is authorized by order, to suspend the registration of any such exchange or association or impose limitations on the activities, functions, and operations of any such exchange or association, if the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the organization or rules of such exchange or association do not comply with such Act. Any such suspension or limitation shall continue in effect until the Commission, by order, declares that such exchange or association is in compliance with such requirements.''

### § 78g. Margin requirements

#### (a) Rules and regulations for extension of credit; standard for initial extension; undermargined accounts

For the purpose of preventing the excessive use of credit for the purchase or carrying of securities, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall, prior to October 1, 1934, and from time to time thereafter, prescribe rules and regulations with respect to the amount of credit that may be initially extended and subsequently maintained on any security (other than an exempted security or a security futures product). For the initial extension of credit, such rules and regulations shall be based upon the following standard: An amount not greater than whichever is the higher of—

(1) 55 per centum of the current market price of the security, or

(2) 100 per centum of the lowest market price of the security during the preceding thirty-six calendar months, but not more than 75 per centum of the current market price.

Such rules and regulations may make appropriate provision with respect to the carrying of undermargined accounts for limited periods and under specified conditions; the withdrawal of funds or securities; the substitution or additional purchases of securities; the transfer of accounts from one lender to another; special or different margin requirements for delayed deliveries, short sales, arbitrage transactions, and securities to which paragraph (2) of this subsection does not apply; the bases and the methods to be used in calculating loans, and margins and market prices; and similar administrative adjustments and details. For the purposes of paragraph (2) of this subsection, until July 1, 1936, the lowest price at which a security has sold on or after July 1, 1933, shall be considered as the lowest price at which such security has sold during the preceding thirty-six calendar months.

#### (b) Lower and higher margin requirements

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (a) of this section, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, may, from time to time, with respect to all or specified securities or transactions, or classes of securities, or classes of transactions, by such rules and regulations (1) prescribe such lower margin requirements for the initial extension or maintenance of credit as it deems necessary or appropriate for the accommodation of commerce and industry, having due regard to the general credit situation of the country, and (2) prescribe such higher margin requirements for the initial extension or maintenance of credit as it may deem necessary or appropriate to prevent the excessive use of credit to finance transactions in securities.

#### (c) Unlawful credit extension to customers

##### (1) Prohibition

It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange or any broker or dealer, directly or indirectly, to extend or maintain credit or arrange for the extension or maintenance of credit to or for any customer—

(A) on any security (other than an exempted security), except as provided in paragraph (2), in contravention of the rules and regulations which the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (hereafter in this section referred to as the ''Board'') shall prescribe under subsections (a) and (b) of this section; and

(B) without collateral or on any collateral other than securities, except in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Board may prescribe—

(i) to permit under specified conditions and for a limited period any such member, broker, or dealer to maintain a credit initially extended in conformity with the rules and regulations of the Board; and

(ii) to permit the extension or maintenance of credit in cases where the extension or maintenance of credit is not for the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities or of evading or circumventing the provisions of subparagraph (A).

##### (2) Margin regulations

###### (A) Compliance with margin rules required

It shall be unlawful for any broker, dealer, or member of a national securities exchange to, directly or indirectly, extend or maintain credit to or for, or collect margin from any customer on, any security futures product unless such activities comply with the regulations—

(i) which the Board shall prescribe pursuant to subparagraph (B); or

(ii) if the Board determines to delegate the authority to prescribe such regulations, which the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall jointly prescribe pursuant to subparagraph (B).

If the Board delegates the authority to prescribe such regulations under clause (ii) and the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission have not jointly prescribed such regulations within a reasonable period of time after the date of such delegation, the Board shall prescribe such regulations pursuant to subparagraph (B).

**(B) Criteria for issuance of rules**

The Board shall prescribe, or, if the authority is delegated pursuant to subparagraph (A)(ii), the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall jointly prescribe, such regulations to establish margin requirements, including the establishment of levels of margin (initial and maintenance) for security futures products under such terms, and at such levels, as the Board deems appropriate, or as the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly deem appropriate—

(i) to preserve the financial integrity of markets trading security futures products;

(ii) to prevent systemic risk;

(iii) to require that—

(I) the margin requirements for a security future product be consistent with the margin requirements for comparable option contracts traded on any exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(a) of this title; and

(II) initial and maintenance margin levels for a security future product not be lower than the lowest level of margin, exclusive of premium, required for any comparable option contract traded on any exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(a) of this title, other than an option on a security future;

except that nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to prevent a national securities exchange or national securities association from requiring higher margin levels for a security future product when it deems such action to be necessary or appropriate; and

(iv) to ensure that the margin requirements (other than levels of margin), including the type, form, and use of collateral for security futures products, are and remain consistent with the requirements established by the Board, pursuant to subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (1).

**(3) Exception**

This subsection and the rules and regulations issued under this subsection shall not apply to any credit extended, maintained, or arranged by a member of a national securities exchange or a broker or dealer to or for a member of a national securities exchange or a registered broker or dealer—

(A) a substantial portion of whose business consists of transactions with persons other than brokers or dealers; or

(B) to finance its activities as a market maker or an underwriter;

except that the Board may impose such rules and regulations, in whole or in part, on any credit otherwise exempted by this paragraph if the Board determines that such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(d) Unlawful credit extension in violation of rules and regulations; exceptions to application of rules, etc.**

**(1) Prohibition**

It shall be unlawful for any person not subject to subsection (c) of this section to extend or maintain credit or to arrange for the extension or maintenance of credit for the purpose of purchasing or carrying any security, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Board shall prescribe to prevent the excessive use of credit for the purchasing or carrying of or trading in securities in circumvention of the other provisions of this section. Such rules and regulations may impose upon all loans made for the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities limitations similar to those imposed upon members, brokers, or dealers by subsection (c) of this section and the rules and regulations thereunder.

**(2) Exceptions**

This subsection and the rules and regulations issued under this subsection shall not apply to any credit extended, maintained, or arranged—

(A) by a person not in the ordinary course of business;

(B) on an exempted security;

(C) to or for a member of a national securities exchange or a registered broker or dealer—

(i) a substantial portion of whose business consists of transactions with persons other than brokers or dealers; or

(ii) to finance its activities as a market maker or an underwriter;

(D) by a bank on a security other than an equity security; or

(E) as the Board shall, by such rules, regulations, or orders as it may deem necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, exempt, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions or for stated periods, from the operation of this subsection and the rules and regulations thereunder.

**(3) Board authority**

The Board may impose such rules and regulations, in whole or in part, on any credit otherwise exempted by subparagraph (C) if it determines that such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(e) Effective date of this section and rules and regulations**

The provisions of this section or the rules and regulations thereunder shall not apply on or before July 1, 1937, to any loan or extension of credit made prior to June 6, 1934, or to the maintenance, renewal, or extension of any such loan or credit, except to the extent that the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may by rules and regulations prescribe as necessary to prevent the circumvention of the provisions of this section or the rules and regulations thereunder by means of withdrawals of funds or securities, substitutions of securities, or additional purchases or by any other device.

**(f) Unlawful receipt of credit; exemptions**

(1) It is unlawful for any United States person, or any foreign person controlled by a United States person or acting on behalf of or in conjunction with such person, to obtain, receive, or enjoy the beneficial use of a loan or other exten-

sion of credit from any lender (without regard to whether the lender's office or place of business is in a State or the transaction occurred in whole or in part within a State) for the purpose of (A) purchasing or carrying United States securities, or (B) purchasing or carrying within the United States of any other securities, if, under this section or rules and regulations prescribed thereunder, the loan or other credit transaction is prohibited or would be prohibited if it had been made or the transaction had otherwise occurred in a lender's office or other place of business in a State.

(2) For the purposes of this subsection—

(A) The term ''United States person'' includes a person which is organized or exists under the laws of any State or, in the case of a natural person, a citizen or resident of the United States; a domestic estate; or a trust in which one or more of the foregoing persons has a cumulative direct or indirect beneficial interest in excess of 50 per centum of the value of the trust.

(B) The term ''United States security'' means a security (other than an exempted security) issued by a person incorporated under the laws of any State, or whose principal place of business is within a State.

(C) The term ''foreign person controlled by a United States person'' includes any noncorporate entity in which United States persons directly or indirectly have more than a 50 per centum beneficial interest, and any corporation in which one or more United States persons, directly or indirectly, own stock possessing more than 50 per centum of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock entitled to vote, or more than 50 per centum of the total value of shares of all classes of stock.

(3) The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may, in its discretion and with due regard for the purposes of this section, by rule or regulation exempt any class of United States persons or foreign persons controlled by a United States person from the application of this subsection.

**(g) Effect of bona fide agreement for delayed delivery of mortgage related security**

Subject to such rules and regulations as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may adopt in the public interest and for the protection of investors, no member of a national securities exchange or broker or dealer shall be deemed to have extended or maintained credit or arranged for the extension or maintenance of credit for the purpose of purchasing a security, within the meaning of this section, by reason of a bona fide agreement for delayed delivery of a mortgage related security or a small business related security against full payment of the purchase price thereof upon such delivery within one hundred and eighty days after the purchase, or within such shorter period as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may prescribe by rule or regulation.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 7, 48 Stat. 886; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, § 203(a), 49 Stat. 704; Pub. L. 90–437, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 452; Pub. L. 91–508, title III, § 301(a), Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1124; Pub. L. 98–440, title I, § 102, Oct. 3, 1984, 98 Stat. 1690; Pub. L. 103–325, title II, § 203, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2199; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, § 104(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3422; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, § 301(b)(5), (6), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(b)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–429.)

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(b)(1)], inserted ''or a security futures product'' after ''exempted security'' in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(1)(A). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(b)(2)], inserted ''except as provided in paragraph (2),'' after ''security),''.

Subsec. (c)(2), (3). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(b)(3), (4)], added par. (2) and redesignated former par. (2) as (3).

1998—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(5), substituted ''Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System'' for ''Federal Reserve Board''.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(6), substituted ''exceptions'' for ''exception'' in heading.

1996—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104–290, § 104(a)(1), amended heading and text of subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: ''It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange or any broker or dealer, directly or indirectly, to extend or maintain credit or arrange for the extension or maintenance of credit to or for any customer—

''(1) on any security (other than an exempted security), in contravention of the rules and regulations which the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall prescribe under subsections (a) and (b) of this section;

''(2) without collateral or on any collateral other than securities, except in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may prescribe (A) to permit under specified conditions and for a limited period any such member, broker, or dealer to maintain a credit initially extended in conformity with the rules and regulations of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and (B) to permit the extension or maintenance of credit in cases where the extension or maintenance of credit is not for the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities or of evading or circumventing the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection.''

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 104–290, § 104(a)(2), amended heading and text of subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: ''It shall be unlawful for any person not subject to subsection (c) of this section to extend or maintain credit or to arrange for the extension or maintenance of credit for the purpose of purchasing or carrying any security, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall prescribe to prevent the excessive use of credit for the purchasing or carrying of or trading in securities in circumvention of the other provisions of this section. Such rules and regulations may impose upon all loans made for the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities limitations similar to those imposed upon members, brokers, or dealers by subsection (c) of this section and the rules and regulations thereunder. This subsection and the rules and regulations thereunder shall not apply (A) to a loan made by a person not in the ordinary course of his business, (B) to a loan on an exempted security, (C) to a loan to a dealer to aid in the financing of the distribution of securities to customers not through the medium of a national securities exchange, (D) to a loan by a bank on a security other than an equity security, or (E) to such other loans as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall, by such rules and regulations as it may deem necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, exempt, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions or for stated periods, from the operation

of this subsection and the rules and regulations thereunder.''

1994—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103–325 inserted ''or a small business related security'' after ''mortgage related security''.

1984—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 98–440 added subsec. (g).

1970—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 91–508 added subsec. (f).

1968—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 90–437, § 1(1), struck out ''registered on a national securities exchange'' after ''(other than an exempted security)''.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 90–437, § 1(2), struck out ''who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any such member'' after ''any broker or dealer'', in par. (1) struck out ''registered on a national securities exchange'' after ''(other than an exempted security)'', and in par. (2) substituted ''other than securities'' for ''other than exempted securities and/or securities registered upon a national securities exchange''.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 90–437, § 1(3), struck out ''registered on a national securities exchange'' after ''the purpose of purchasing or carrying any security'', and ''registered on national securities exchanges'' after ''the purpose of purchasing or carrying securities''.

CHANGE OF NAME

Act Aug. 23, 1935, in subsec. (e), substituted ''Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System'' for ''Federal Reserve Board''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–508 effective on first day of seventh calendar month which begins after Oct. 26, 1970, except as otherwise provided in section 401(c) of Pub. L. 91–508, see section 401(a) of Pub. L. 91–508, set out as a note under section 1951 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Section 401(c) of Pub. L. 91–508 provided that: ''The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System may by regulation provide that the amendment made by title III [amending this section] shall be effective on any date not earlier than the publication of the regulation in the Federal Register and not later than the first day of the thirteenth calendar month which begins after the date of enactment [Oct. 26, 1970].''

VALIDITY OF RULES AND REGULATIONS

Section 301(b) of Pub. L. 91–508 provided that: ''The amendment made by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section] does not affect the continuing validity of any rule or regulation under section 7 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [this section] in effect prior to the effective date of the amendment.''

## § 78h. Restrictions on borrowing and lending by members, brokers, and dealers

It shall be unlawful for any registered broker or dealer, member of a national securities exchange, or broker or dealer who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any member of a national securities exchange, directly or indirectly—

(a) In contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe for the protection of investors to hypothecate or arrange for the hypothecation of any securities carried for the account of any customer under circumstances (1) that will permit the commingling of his securities without his written consent with the securities of any other customer, (2) that will permit such securities to be commingled with the securities of any person other than a bona fide customer, or (3) that will permit such securities to be hypothecated, or subjected to any lien or claim of the pledgee, for a sum in excess of the aggregate indebtedness of such customers in respect of such securities.

(b) To lend or arrange for the lending of any securities carried for the account of any customer without the written consent of such customer or in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe for the protection of investors.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 8, 48 Stat. 888; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, § 203(a), 49 Stat. 704; Pub. L. 94–29, § 5, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 109; Pub. L. 98–440, title I, § 103, Oct. 3, 1984, 98 Stat. 1690; Pub. L. 103–325, title II, § 204, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2199; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, § 104(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3423.)

AMENDMENTS

1996—Pub. L. 104–290 redesignated subsecs. (b) and (c) as (a) and (b), respectively, and struck out former subsec. (a) which related to borrowing in ordinary course of business as broker or dealer on any security, except exempted security, registered on national securities exchange.

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103–325 inserted ''or a small business related security'' after ''mortgage related security'' in last sentence.

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–440 inserted provision that no person shall be deemed to have borrowed within the ordinary course of business, within the meaning of this subsection, by reason of a bona fide agreement for delayed delivery of a mortgage related security under certain conditions.

1975—Pub. L. 94–29, § 5(1), substituted ''any registered broker or dealer, member of a national securities exchange, or broker or dealer who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any member of a national securities exchange'' for ''any member of a national securities exchange, or any broker or dealer who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any such member'' in provisions preceding subsec. (a).

Subsecs. (b) to (d). Pub. L. 94–29, § 5(2), redesignated subsecs. (c) and (d) as (b) and (c), respectively, and in subsec. (c) as so redesignated inserted ''or in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commissioner shall prescribe for the protection of investors'' after ''written consent of such customer''. Former subsec. (b), which covered the maximum allowable aggregate indebtedness of brokers, was struck out.

CHANGE OF NAME

Act Aug. 23, 1935, substituted ''Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System'' for ''Federal Reserve Board''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78i. Manipulation of security prices

### (a) Transactions relating to purchase or sale of security

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, by the use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or of any facility of any national securities exchange, or for any member of a national securities exchange—

(1) For the purpose of creating a false or misleading appearance of active trading in any

security registered on a national securities exchange, or a false or misleading appearance with respect to the market for any such security, (A) to effect any transaction in such security which involves no change in the beneficial ownership thereof, or (B) to enter an order or orders for the purchase of such security with the knowledge that an order or orders of substantially the same size, at substantially the same time, and at substantially the same price, for the sale of any such security, has been or will be entered by or for the same or different parties, or (C) to enter any order or orders for the sale of any such security with the knowledge that an order or orders of substantially the same size, at substantially the same time, and at substantially the same price, for the purchase of such security, has been or will be entered by or for the same or different parties.

(2) To effect, alone or with one or more other persons, a series of transactions in any security registered on a national securities exchange or in connection with any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security creating actual or apparent active trading in such security, or raising or depressing the price of such security, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of such security by others.

(3) If a dealer or broker, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security or a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security, to induce the purchase or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security by the circulation or dissemination in the ordinary course of business of information to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of market operations of any one or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the price of such security.

(4) If a dealer or broker, or the person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security or a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security, to make, regarding any security registered on a national securities exchange or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of such security or such security-based swap agreement, any statement which was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, and which he knew or had reasonable ground to believe was so false or misleading.

(5) For a consideration, received directly or indirectly from a dealer or broker, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security or a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security, to induce the purchase of any security registered on a national securities exchange or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security by the circulation or dissemination of information to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of the market operations of any one or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the price of such security.

(6) To effect either alone or with one or more other persons any series of transactions for the purchase and/or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange for the purpose of pegging, fixing, or stabilizing the price of such security in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(b) Transactions relating to puts, calls, straddles, or options**

It shall be unlawful for any person to effect, by use of any facility of a national securities exchange, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors—

(1) any transaction in connection with any security whereby any party to such transaction acquires (A) any put, call, straddle, or other option or privilege of buying the security from or selling the security to another without being bound to do so; or (B) any security futures product on the security; or

(2) any transaction in connection with any security with relation to which he has, directly or indirectly, any interest in any (A) such put, call, straddle, option, or privilege; or (B) such security futures product; or

(3) any transaction in any security for the account of any person who he has reason to believe has, and who actually has, directly or indirectly, any interest in any (A) such put, call, straddle, option, or privilege; or (B) such security futures product with relation to such security.

**(c) Endorsement or guarantee of puts, calls, straddles, or options**

It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange directly or indirectly to endorse or guarantee the performance of any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege in relation to any security registered on a national securities exchange, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(d) Registered warrant, right, or convertible security not included in "put", "call", "straddle", or "option"**

The terms ''put'', ''call'', ''straddle'', ''option'', or ''privilege'' as used in this section shall not include any registered warrant, right, or convertible security.

**(e) Persons liable; suits at law or in equity**

Any person who willfully participates in any act or transaction in violation of subsections (a), (b), or (c) of this section, shall be liable to any person who shall purchase or sell any security at a price which was affected by such act or transaction, and the person so injured may sue in law or in equity in any court of competent jurisdiction to recover the damages sustained as a result of any such act or transaction. In any such suit the court may, in its discretion, require an undertaking for the payment of the costs of such suit, and assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against either party litigant. Every person who becomes liable to make any payment under this subsection may recover contribution as in cases of contract from any person who, if joined in the original suit, would have been liable to make the same payment. No action shall be maintained to enforce any liability created under this section, unless brought within one year after the discovery of the facts constituting the violation and within three years after such violation.

**(f) Subsection (a) not applicable to exempted securities**

The provisions of subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to an exempted security.

**(g) Foreign currencies and security futures products**

(1) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall have the authority to regulate the trading of any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or index of securities (including any interest therein or based on the value thereof), or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege entered into on a national securities exchange relating to foreign currency (but not, with respect to any of the foregoing, an option on a contract for future delivery other than a security futures product).

(2) Notwithstanding the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], the Commission shall have the authority to regulate the trading of any security futures product to the extent provided in the securities laws.

**(h) Limitations on practices that affect market volatility**

It shall be unlawful for any person, by the use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of any facility of any national securities exchange, to use or employ any act or practice in connection with the purchase or sale of any equity security in contravention of such rules or regulations as the Commission may adopt, consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets—

(1) to prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent manipulation of price levels of the equity securities market or a substantial segment thereof; and

(2) to prohibit or constrain, during periods of extraordinary market volatility, any trading practice in connection with the purchase or sale of equity securities that the Commission determines (A) has previously contributed significantly to extraordinary levels of volatility that have threatened the maintenance of fair and orderly markets; and (B) is reasonably certain to engender such levels of volatility if not prohibited or constrained.

In adopting rules under paragraph (2), the Commission shall, consistent with the purposes of this subsection, minimize the impact on the normal operations of the market and a natural person's freedom to buy or sell any equity security.

**(i) Limitation on Commission authority**

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c–1(b) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 9, 48 Stat. 889; Pub. L. 97–303, § 3, Oct. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1409; Pub. L. 101–432, § 6(a), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 975; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 205(a)(1), (2), title III, § 303(b), (c)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–425, 2763A–426, 2763A–453, 2763A–454.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2) to (5) and (i), is section 206B of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out in a note under section 78c of this title.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsec. (g)(2), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§ 1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a)(2) to (5). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title III, § 303(b)], amended pars. (2) to (5) generally. Prior to amendment, pars. (2) to (5) read as follows:

''(2) To effect, alone or with one or more other persons, a series of transactions in any security registered on a national securities exchange creating actual or apparent active trading in such security or raising or depressing the price of such security, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of such security by others.

''(3) If a dealer or broker, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, to induce the purchase or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange by the circulation or dissemination in the ordinary course of business of information to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of market operations of any one or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the prices of such security.

''(4) If a dealer or broker, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, to make, regarding any security registered on a national securities exchange, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of such security, any statement which was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, and which he knew or had reasonable ground to believe was so false or misleading.

''(5) For a consideration, received directly or indirectly from a dealer or broker, or other person selling or offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security, to induce the purchase or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange by the circulation or dissemination of information to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of the market op-

erations of any one or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the price of such security.''

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(1)(A)], inserted ''(A)'' after ''acquires'' and substituted ''; or (B) any security futures product on the security; or'' for ''; or''.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(1)(B)], inserted ''(A)'' after ''interest in any'' and substituted ''; or (B) such security futures product; or'' for ''; or''.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(1)(C)], inserted ''(A)'' after ''interest in any'' and ''; or (B) such security futures product'' after ''privilege''.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(2)], designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted ''other than a security futures product'' after ''future delivery'', and added par. (2).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(c)], added subsec. (i).

1990—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101–432 added subsec. (h).

1982—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 97–303, §3(1), substituted ''The provisions of subsection (a) of this section shall not apply'' for ''The provisions of this section shall not apply''.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 97–303, §3(2), added subsec. (g).

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### § 78j. Manipulative and deceptive devices

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, by the use of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of the mails, or of any facility of any national securities exchange—

(a)(1) To effect a short sale, or to use or employ any stop-loss order in connection with the purchase or sale, of any security registered on a national securities exchange, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(2) Paragraph (1) of this subsection shall not apply to security futures products.

(b) To use or employ, in connection with the purchase or sale of any security registered on a national securities exchange or any security not so registered, or any securities-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act), any manipulative or deceptive device or contrivance in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

Rules promulgated under subsection (b) of this section that prohibit fraud, manipulation, or insider trading (but not rules imposing or specifying reporting or recordkeeping requirements, procedures, or standards as prophylactic measures against fraud, manipulation, or insider trading), and judicial precedents decided under subsection (b) of this section and rules promulgated thereunder that prohibit fraud, manipulation, or insider trading, shall apply to security-based swap agreements (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) to the same extent as they apply to securities. Judicial precedents decided under section 77q(a) of this title and sections 78i, 78*o*, 78p, 78t, and 78u–1 of this title, and judicial precedents decided under applicable rules promulgated under such sections, shall apply to security-based swap agreements (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) to the same extent as they apply to securities.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §10, 48 Stat. 891; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(g), title III, §303(d)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–432, 2763A–454.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in text, is section 206B of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out in a note under section 78c of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(d)(2)], inserted concluding provisions at end.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(g)], designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(d)(1)], inserted ''or any securities-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act),'' before ''any manipulative or deceptive device''.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### § 78j–1. Audit requirements

#### (a) In general

Each audit required pursuant to this chapter of the financial statements of an issuer by a registered public accounting firm shall include, in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, as may be modified or supplemented from time to time by the Commission—

(1) procedures designed to provide reasonable assurance of detecting illegal acts that would have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts;

(2) procedures designed to identify related party transactions that are material to the financial statements or otherwise require disclosure therein; and

(3) an evaluation of whether there is substantial doubt about the ability of the issuer to continue as a going concern during the ensuing fiscal year.

#### (b) Required response to audit discoveries

##### (1) Investigation and report to management

If, in the course of conducting an audit pursuant to this chapter to which subsection (a) of this section applies, the registered public accounting firm detects or otherwise becomes aware of information indicating that an illegal act (whether or not perceived to have a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer) has or may have occurred, the firm shall, in accordance with generally accepted auditing standards, as may be modified or supplemented from time to time by the Commission—

(A)(i) determine whether it is likely that an illegal act has occurred; and

(ii) if so, determine and consider the possible effect of the illegal act on the financial statements of the issuer, including any contingent monetary effects, such as fines, penalties, and damages; and

(B) as soon as practicable, inform the appropriate level of the management of the issuer and assure that the audit committee of the issuer, or the board of directors of the issuer in the absence of such a committee, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that have been detected or have otherwise come to the attention of such firm in the course of the audit, unless the illegal act is clearly inconsequential.

**(2) Response to failure to take remedial action**

If, after determining that the audit committee of the board of directors of the issuer, or the board of directors of the issuer in the absence of an audit committee, is adequately informed with respect to illegal acts that have been detected or have otherwise come to the attention of the firm in the course of the audit of such firm, the registered public accounting firm concludes that—

(A) the illegal act has a material effect on the financial statements of the issuer;

(B) the senior management has not taken, and the board of directors has not caused senior management to take, timely and appropriate remedial actions with respect to the illegal act; and

(C) the failure to take remedial action is reasonably expected to warrant departure from a standard report of the auditor, when made, or warrant resignation from the audit engagement;

the registered public accounting firm shall, as soon as practicable, directly report its conclusions to the board of directors.

**(3) Notice to Commission; response to failure to notify**

An issuer whose board of directors receives a report under paragraph (2) shall inform the Commission by notice not later than 1 business day after the receipt of such report and shall furnish the registered public accounting firm making such report with a copy of the notice furnished to the Commission. If the registered public accounting firm fails to receive a copy of the notice before the expiration of the required 1-business-day period, the registered public accounting firm shall—

(A) resign from the engagement; or

(B) furnish to the Commission a copy of its report (or the documentation of any oral report given) not later than 1 business day following such failure to receive notice.

**(4) Report after resignation**

If a registered public accounting firm resigns from an engagement under paragraph (3)(A), the firm shall, not later than 1 business day following the failure by the issuer to notify the Commission under paragraph (3), furnish to the Commission a copy of the report of the firm (or the documentation of any oral report given).

**(c) Auditor liability limitation**

No registered public accounting firm shall be liable in a private action for any finding, conclusion, or statement expressed in a report made pursuant to paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (b) of this section, including any rule promulgated pursuant thereto.

**(d) Civil penalties in cease-and-desist proceedings**

If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing in a proceeding instituted pursuant to section 78u–3 of this title, that a registered public accounting firm has willfully violated paragraph (3) or (4) of subsection (b) of this section, the Commission may, in addition to entering an order under section 78u–3 of this title, impose a civil penalty against the registered public accounting firm and any other person that the Commission finds was a cause of such violation. The determination to impose a civil penalty and the amount of the penalty shall be governed by the standards set forth in section 78u–2 of this title.

**(e) Preservation of existing authority**

Except as provided in subsection (d) of this section, nothing in this section shall be held to limit or otherwise affect the authority of the Commission under this chapter.

**(f) Definitions**

As used in this section, the term ''illegal act'' means an act or omission that violates any law, or any rule or regulation having the force of law. As used in this section, the term ''issuer'' means an issuer (as defined in section 78c of this title), the securities of which are registered under section 78*l* of this title, or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78*o*(d) of this title, or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), and that it has not withdrawn.

**(g) Prohibited activities**

Except as provided in subsection (h) of this section, it shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm (and any associated person of that firm, to the extent determined appropriate by the Commission) that performs for any issuer any audit required by this chapter or the rules of the Commission under this chapter or, beginning 180 days after the date of commencement of the operations of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board established under section 7211 of this title (in this section referred to as the ''Board''), the rules of the Board, to provide to that issuer, contemporaneously with the audit, any non-audit service, including—

(1) bookkeeping or other services related to the accounting records or financial statements of the audit client;

(2) financial information systems design and implementation;

(3) appraisal or valuation services, fairness opinions, or contribution-in-kind reports;

(4) actuarial services;

(5) internal audit outsourcing services;

(6) management functions or human resources;

(7) broker or dealer, investment adviser, or investment banking services;

(8) legal services and expert services unrelated to the audit; and

(9) any other service that the Board determines, by regulation, is impermissible.

**(h) Preapproval required for non-audit services**

A registered public accounting firm may engage in any non-audit service, including tax services, that is not described in any of paragraphs (1) through (9) of subsection (g) of this section for an audit client, only if the activity is approved in advance by the audit committee of the issuer, in accordance with subsection (i) of this section.

**(i) Preapproval requirements**

**(1) In general**

**(A) Audit committee action**

All auditing services (which may entail providing comfort letters in connection with securities underwritings or statutory audits required for insurance companies for purposes of State law) and non-audit services, other than as provided in subparagraph (B), provided to an issuer by the auditor of the issuer shall be preapproved by the audit committee of the issuer.

**(B) De minimus [1] exception**

The preapproval requirement under subparagraph (A) is waived with respect to the provision of non-audit services for an issuer, if—

(i) the aggregate amount of all such non-audit services provided to the issuer constitutes not more than 5 percent of the total amount of revenues paid by the issuer to its auditor during the fiscal year in which the nonaudit services are provided;

(ii) such services were not recognized by the issuer at the time of the engagement to be non-audit services; and

(iii) such services are promptly brought to the attention of the audit committee of the issuer and approved prior to the completion of the audit by the audit committee or by 1 or more members of the audit committee who are members of the board of directors to whom authority to grant such approvals has been delegated by the audit committee.

**(2) Disclosure to investors**

Approval by an audit committee of an issuer under this subsection of a non-audit service to be performed by the auditor of the issuer shall be disclosed to investors in periodic reports required by section 78m(a) of this title.

**(3) Delegation authority**

The audit committee of an issuer may delegate to 1 or more designated members of the audit committee who are independent directors of the board of directors, the authority to grant preapprovals required by this subsection. The decisions of any member to whom authority is delegated under this paragraph to preapprove an activity under this subsection shall be presented to the full audit committee at each of its scheduled meetings.

**(4) Approval of audit services for other purposes**

In carrying out its duties under subsection (m)(2) of this section, if the audit committee of an issuer approves an audit service within the scope of the engagement of the auditor, such audit service shall be deemed to have been preapproved for purposes of this subsection.

**(j) Audit partner rotation**

It shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm to provide audit services to an issuer if the lead (or coordinating) audit partner (having primary responsibility for the audit), or the audit partner responsible for reviewing the audit, has performed audit services for that issuer in each of the 5 previous fiscal years of that issuer.

**(k) Reports to audit committees**

Each registered public accounting firm that performs for any issuer any audit required by this chapter shall timely report to the audit committee of the issuer—

(1) all critical accounting policies and practices to be used;

(2) all alternative treatments of financial information within generally accepted accounting principles that have been discussed with management officials of the issuer, ramifications of the use of such alternative disclosures and treatments, and the treatment preferred by the registered public accounting firm; and

(3) other material written communications between the registered public accounting firm and the management of the issuer, such as any management letter or schedule of unadjusted differences.

**(*l*) Conflicts of interest**

It shall be unlawful for a registered public accounting firm to perform for an issuer any audit service required by this chapter, if a chief executive officer, controller, chief financial officer, chief accounting officer, or any person serving in an equivalent position for the issuer, was employed by that registered independent public accounting firm and participated in any capacity in the audit of that issuer during the 1-year period preceding the date of the initiation of the audit.

**(m) Standards relating to audit committees**

**(1) Commission rules**

**(A) In general**

Effective not later than 270 days after July 30, 2002, the Commission shall, by rule, direct the national securities exchanges and national securities associations to prohibit the listing of any security of an issuer that is not in compliance with the requirements of any portion of paragraphs (2) through (6).

**(B) Opportunity to cure defects**

The rules of the Commission under subparagraph (A) shall provide for appropriate procedures for an issuer to have an opportunity to cure any defects that would be the basis for a prohibition under subparagraph (A), before the imposition of such prohibition.

[1] So in original. Probably should be ''De minimis''.

**(2) Responsibilities relating to registered public accounting firms**

The audit committee of each issuer, in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, shall be directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, and oversight of the work of any registered public accounting firm employed by that issuer (including resolution of disagreements between management and the auditor regarding financial reporting) for the purpose of preparing or issuing an audit report or related work, and each such registered public accounting firm shall report directly to the audit committee.

**(3) Independence**

**(A) In general**

Each member of the audit committee of the issuer shall be a member of the board of directors of the issuer, and shall otherwise be independent.

**(B) Criteria**

In order to be considered to be independent for purposes of this paragraph, a member of an audit committee of an issuer may not, other than in his or her capacity as a member of the audit committee, the board of directors, or any other board committee—

(i) accept any consulting, advisory, or other compensatory fee from the issuer; or

(ii) be an affiliated person of the issuer or any subsidiary thereof.

**(C) Exemption authority**

The Commission may exempt from the requirements of subparagraph (B) a particular relationship with respect to audit committee members, as the Commission determines appropriate in light of the circumstances.

**(4) Complaints**

Each audit committee shall establish procedures for—

(A) the receipt, retention, and treatment of complaints received by the issuer regarding accounting, internal accounting controls, or auditing matters; and

(B) the confidential, anonymous submission by employees of the issuer of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters.

**(5) Authority to engage advisers**

Each audit committee shall have the authority to engage independent counsel and other advisers, as it determines necessary to carry out its duties.

**(6) Funding**

Each issuer shall provide for appropriate funding, as determined by the audit committee, in its capacity as a committee of the board of directors, for payment of compensation—

(A) to the registered public accounting firm employed by the issuer for the purpose of rendering or issuing an audit report; and

(B) to any advisers employed by the audit committee under paragraph (5).

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 10A, as added Pub. L. 104–67, title III, § 301(a), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 762; amended Pub. L. 107–204, title II, §§ 201(a), 202–204, 205(b), (d), 206, title III, § 301, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 771–775.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b)(1), (e), (g), (k), and (*l*), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (f), is title I of act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(b)(1), substituted ''a registered public accounting firm'' for ''an independent public accountant'' in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(b)(2), (4)(A), in introductory provisions, substituted ''the registered public accounting firm'' for ''the independent public accountant'' and ''the firm'' for ''the accountant''.

Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(b)(4)(B), substituted ''such firm'' for ''such accountant''.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(b)(2), (4)(A), (B), in introductory provisions, substituted ''the firm'' for ''the accountant'', ''such firm'' for ''such accountant'', and ''the registered public accounting firm'' for ''the independent public accountant'' and, in concluding provisions, substituted ''the registered public accounting firm'' for ''the independent public accountant''.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(b)(2), substituted ''the registered public accounting firm'' for ''the independent public accountant'' wherever appearing in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(b)(1), (4)(A), (C), substituted ''a registered public accounting firm'' for ''an independent public accountant'', ''the firm'' for ''the accountant'', and ''the report of the firm'' for ''the accountant's report''.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(b)(3), substituted ''No registered public accounting firm'' for ''No independent public accountant''.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(b)(1), (2), substituted ''a registered public accounting firm'' for ''an independent public accountant'' and ''the registered public accounting firm'' for ''the independent public accountant''.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(d), substituted ''Definitions'' for ''Definition'' in heading and inserted at end ''As used in this section, the term 'issuer' means an issuer (as defined in section 78c of this title), the securities of which are registered under section 78*l* of this title, or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78*o*(d) of this title, or that files or has filed a registration statement that has not yet become effective under the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), and that it has not withdrawn.''

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 107–204, § 201(a), added subsecs. (g) and (h).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 107–204, § 202, added subsec. (i).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 107–204, § 203, added subsec. (j).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 107–204, § 204, added subsec. (k).

Subsec. (*l*). Pub. L. 107–204, § 206, added subsec. (*l*).

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 107–204, § 301, added subsec. (m).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 301(b) of Pub. L. 104–67 provided that: ''The amendment made by subsection (a) [enacting this section] shall apply to each annual report—

''(1) for any period beginning on or after January 1, 1996, with respect to any registrant that is required to file selected quarterly financial data pursuant to the rules or regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission; and

''(2) for any period beginning on or after January 1, 1997, with respect to any other registrant.''

CONSTRUCTION

Section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67 provided that: ''Nothing in this Act [see Short Title of 1995 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] or the amendments made by this Act shall be deemed to create or ratify any implied private right of action, or to prevent the Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.].''

## § 78k. Trading by members of exchanges, brokers, and dealers

### (a) Trading for own account or account of associated person; exceptions

(1) It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange to effect any transaction on such exchange for its own account, the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which it or an associated person thereof exercises investment discretion: *Provided, however*, That this paragraph shall not make unlawful—

(A) any transaction by a dealer acting in the capacity of market maker;

(B) any transaction for the account of an odd-lot dealer in a security in which he is so registered;

(C) any stabilizing transaction effected in compliance with rules under section 78j(b) of this title to facilitate a distribution of a security in which the member effecting such transaction is participating;

(D) any bona fide arbitrage transaction, any bona fide hedge transaction involving a long or short position in an equity security and a long or short position in a security entitling the holder to acquire or sell such equity security, or any risk arbitrage transaction in connection with a merger, acquisition, tender offer, or similar transaction involving a recapitalization;

(E) any transaction for the account of a natural person, the estate of a natural person, or a trust created by a natural person for himself or another natural person;

(F) any transaction to offset a transaction made in error;

(G) any other transaction for a member's own account provided that (i) such member is primarily engaged in the business of underwriting and distributing securities issued by other persons, selling securities to customers, and acting as broker, or any one or more of such activities, and whose gross income normally is derived principally from such business and related activities and (ii) such transaction is effected in compliance with rules of the Commission which, as a minimum, assure that the transaction is not inconsistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets and yields priority, parity, and precedence in execution to orders for the account of persons who are not members or associated with members of the exchange;

(H) any transaction for an account with respect to which such member or an associated person thereof exercises investment discretion if such member—

(i) has obtained, from the person or persons authorized to transact business for the account, express authorization for such member or associated person to effect such transactions prior to engaging in the practice of effecting such transactions;

(ii) furnishes the person or persons authorized to transact business for the account with a statement at least annually disclosing the aggregate compensation received by the exchange member in effecting such transactions; and

(iii) complies with any rules the Commission has prescribed with respect to the requirements of clauses (i) and (ii); and

(I) any other transaction of a kind which the Commission, by rule, determines is consistent with the purposes of this paragraph, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets.

(2) The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to maintain fair and orderly markets, or to assure equal regulation of exchange markets and markets occurring otherwise than on an exchange, may regulate or prohibit:

(A) transactions on a national securities exchange not unlawful under paragraph (1) of this subsection effected by any member thereof for its own account (unless such member is acting in the capacity of market maker or odd-lot dealer), the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which such member or an associated person thereof exercises investment discretion;

(B) transactions otherwise than on a national securities exchange effected by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce by any member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer for the account of such member, broker, or dealer (unless such member, broker, or dealer is acting in the capacity of a market maker)[1] the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which such member, broker, or dealer or associated person thereof exercises investment discretion; and

(C) transactions on a national securities exchange effected by any broker or dealer not a member thereof for the account of such broker or dealer (unless such broker or dealer is acting in the capacity of market maker), the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which such broker or dealer or associated person thereof exercises investment discretion.

(3) The provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection insofar as they apply to transactions on a national securities exchange effected by a member thereof who was a member on February 1, 1978 shall not become effective until February 1, 1979. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to impair or limit the authority of the Commission to regulate or prohibit such transactions prior to February 1, 1979, pursuant to paragraph (2) of this subsection.

### (b) Registration of members as odd-lot dealers and specialists

When not in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as

[1] So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to maintain fair and orderly markets, or to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a national market system, the rules of a national securities exchange may permit (1) a member to be registered as an odd-lot dealer and as such to buy and sell for his own account so far as may be reasonably necessary to carry on such odd-lot transactions, and (2) a member to be registered as a specialist. Under the rules and regulations of the Commission a specialist may be permitted to act as a broker and dealer or limited to acting as a broker or dealer. It shall be unlawful for a specialist or an official of the exchange to disclose information in regard to orders placed with such specialist which is not available to all members of the exchange, to any person other than an official of the exchange, a representative of the Commission, or a specialist who may be acting for such specialist: *Provided, however*, That the Commission, by rule, may require disclosure to all members of the exchange of all orders placed with specialists, under such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. It shall also be unlawful for a specialist permitted to act as a broker and dealer to effect on the exchange as broker any transaction except upon a market or limited price order.

**(c) Exemptions from provisions of section and rules and regulations**

If because of the limited volume of transactions effected on an exchange, it is in the opinion of the Commission impracticable and not necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to apply any of the foregoing provisions of this section or the rules and regulations thereunder, the Commission shall have power, upon application of the exchange and on a showing that the rules of such exchange are otherwise adequate for the protection of investors, to exempt such exchange and its members from any such provision or rules and regulations.

**(d) Prohibition on extension of credit by broker-dealer**

It shall be unlawful for a member of a national securities exchange who is both a dealer and a broker, or for any person who both as a broker and a dealer transacts a business in securities through the medium of a member or otherwise, to effect through the use of any facility of a national securities exchange or of the mails or of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or otherwise in the case of a member, (1) any transaction in connection with which, directly or indirectly, he extends or maintains or arranges for the extension or maintenance of credit to or for a customer on any security (other than an exempted security) which was a part of a new issue in the distribution of which he participated as a member of a selling syndicate or group within thirty days prior to such transaction: *Provided*, That credit shall not be deemed extended by reason of a bona fide delayed delivery of (i) any such security against full payment of the entire purchase price thereof upon such delivery within thirty-five days after such purchase or (ii) any mortgage related security or any small business related security against full payment of the entire purchase price thereof upon such delivery within one hundred and eighty days after such purchase, or within such shorter period as the Commission may prescribe by rule or regulation, or (2) any transaction with respect to any security (other than an exempted security) unless, if the transaction is with a customer, he discloses to such customer in writing at or before the completion of the transaction whether he is acting as a dealer for his own account, as a broker for such customer, or as a broker for some other person.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §11, 48 Stat. 891; Aug. 10, 1954, ch. 667, title II, §201, 68 Stat. 686; Pub. L. 94–29, §6, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 110; Pub. L. 95–283, §18(a), May 21, 1978, 92 Stat. 275; Pub. L. 98–440, title I, §104, Oct. 3, 1984, 98 Stat. 1690; Pub. L. 103–68, §1, Aug. 11, 1993, 107 Stat. 691; Pub. L. 103–325, title II, §205, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2199.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (d)(1)(ii). Pub. L. 103–325 inserted ''or any small business related security'' after ''mortgage related security''.

1993—Subsec. (a)(1)(E). Pub. L. 103–68, §1(1), struck out ''(other than an investment company)'' after ''trust''.

Subsec. (a)(1)(H), (I). Pub. L. 103–68, §1(2)–(4), added subpar. (H) and redesignated former subpar. (H) as (I).

1984—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 98–440 designated existing provisions of par. (1) as cl. (i) and added cl. (ii).

1978—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 95–283 substituted ''February 1, 1978'' for ''May 1, 1975'', and ''February 1, 1979'' for ''May 1, 1978'' in two places.

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29, §6(2), prohibited stock exchange members from effecting any transaction on the exchange for its own account, the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which the member or an associated person exercises investment discretion, exempted from that prohibition 8 types of transactions, and authorized the Commission, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to regulate or prohibit the specifically exempted transactions, certain transactions otherwise that on a national securities exchange, and transactions on a national securities exchange effected by a broker or dealer not a member thereof for the account of such broker or dealer, the account of an associated person, or an account with respect to which such broker, dealer, or associated person exercises investment discretion.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29, §6(2), struck out requirement that specialist's dealings be limited to those transactions reasonably necessary to permit him to maintain a fair and orderly market, expanded the Commission's rulemaking authority in the area of specialist's dealings so that the Commission may define responsibilities and restrict activities of specialists in response to changing conditions in the market, expanded the standards to be followed by the Commission in exercising its rulemaking power to include the maintenance of fair and orderly markets and the removal of impediments to and the perfection of the mechanism of a national market system, and inserted specific reference to the Commission's power to limit the activity of a specialist to that of a broker or dealer.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94–29, §6(3), struck out subsec. (e) which directed the Commission to make a study, to be submitted on or before Jan. 3, 1936, of the feasibility of segregating the functions of dealer and broker.

1954—Subsec. (d). Act Aug. 10, 1954, reduced from 6 months to 30 days the prohibition period against extending credit to purchasers of a new issue by dealers.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Section 18(b) of Pub. L. 95–283 provided that: ''The amendment made by subsection (a) of this section [amending this section] shall be effective as of May 1, 1978.''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1954 AMENDMENT

Amendment by act Aug. 10, 1954, effective 60 days after Aug. 10, 1954, see note under section 77b of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78k–1. National market system for securities; securities information processors

### (a) Congressional findings; facilitating establishment of national market system for securities; designation of qualified securities

(1) The Congress finds that—

(A) The securities markets are an important national asset which must be preserved and strengthened.

(B) New data processing and communications techniques create the opportunity for more efficient and effective market operations.

(C) It is in the public interest and appropriate for the protection of investors and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets to assure—

(i) economically efficient execution of securities transactions;

(ii) fair competition among brokers and dealers, among exchange markets, and between exchange markets and markets other than exchange markets;

(iii) the availability to brokers, dealers, and investors of information with respect to quotations for and transactions in securities;

(iv) the practicability of brokers executing investors' orders in the best market; and

(v) an opportunity, consistent with the provisions of clauses (i) and (iv) of this subparagraph, for investors' orders to be executed without the participation of a dealer.

(D) The linking of all markets for qualified securities through communication and data processing facilities will foster efficiency, enhance competition, increase the information available to brokers, dealers, and investors, facilitate the offsetting of investors' orders, and contribute to best execution of such orders.

(2) The Commission is directed, therefore, having due regard for the public interest, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, to use its authority under this chapter to facilitate the establishment of a national market system for securities (which may include subsystems for particular types of securities with unique trading characteristics) in accordance with the findings and to carry out the objectives set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection. The Commission, by rule, shall designate the securities or classes of securities qualified for trading in the national market system from among securities other than exempted securities. (Securities or classes of securities so designated hereinafter[1] in this section referred to as ''qualified securities''.)

(3) The Commission is authorized in furtherance of the directive in paragraph (2) of this subsection—

(A) to create one or more advisory committees pursuant to the Federal Advisory Committee Act (which shall be in addition to the National Market Advisory Board established pursuant to subsection (d) of this section) and to employ one or more outside experts;

(B) by rule or order, to authorize or require self-regulatory organizations to act jointly with respect to matters as to which they share authority under this chapter in planning, developing, operating, or regulating a national market system (or a subsystem thereof) or one or more facilities thereof; and

(C) to conduct studies and make recommendations to the Congress from time to time as to the possible need for modifications of the scheme of self-regulation provided for in this chapter so as to adapt it to a national market system.

### (b) Securities information processors; registration; withdrawal of registration; access to services; censure; suspension or revocation of registration

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, it shall be unlawful for any securities information processor unless registered in accordance with this subsection, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to perform the functions of a securities information processor. The Commission, by rule or order, upon its own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any securities information processor or class of securities information processors or security or class of securities from any provision of this section or the rules or regulations thereunder, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this section, including the maintenance of fair and orderly markets in securities and the removal of impediments to and perfection of the mechanism of a national market system: *Provided, however*, That a securities information processor not acting as the exclusive processor of any information with respect to quotations for or transactions in securities is exempt from the requirement to register in accordance with this subsection unless the Commission, by rule or order, finds that the registration of such securities information processor is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or for the achievement of the purposes of this section.

(2) A securities information processor may be registered by filing with the Commission an ap-

[1] So in original. Probably should be ''are hereinafter''.

plication for registration in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the address of its principal office, or offices, the names of the securities and markets for which it is then acting and for which it proposes to act as a securities information processor, and such other information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe with regard to performance capability, standards and procedures for the collection, processing, distribution, and publication of information with respect to quotations for and transactions in securities, personnel qualifications, financial condition, and such other matters as the Commission determines to be germane to the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, or necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section.

(3) The Commission shall, upon the filing of an application for registration pursuant to paragraph (2) of this subsection, publish notice of the filing and afford interested persons an opportunity to submit written data, views, and arguments concerning such application. Within ninety days of the date of the publication of such notice (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents) the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant such registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred eighty days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for the conclusion of such proceedings for up to sixty days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer periods as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant the registration of a securities information processor if the Commission finds that such securities information processor is so organized, and has the capacity, to be able to assure the prompt, accurate, and reliable performance of its functions as a securities information processor, comply with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, carry out its functions in a manner consistent with the purposes of this section, and, insofar as it is acting as an exclusive processor, operate fairly and efficiently. The Commission shall deny the registration of a securities information processor if the Commission does not make any such finding.

(4) A registered securities information processor may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any registered securities information processor is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business in the capacity specified in its application for registration, the Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration.

(5)(A) If any registered securities information processor prohibits or limits any person in respect of access to services offered, directly or indirectly, by such securities information processor, the registered securities information processor shall promptly file notice thereof with the Commission. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Any prohibition or limitation on access to services with respect to which a registered securities information processor is required by this paragraph to file notice shall be subject to review by the Commission on its own motion, or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby filed within thirty days after such notice has been filed with the Commission and received by such aggrieved person, or within such longer period as the Commission may determine. Application to the Commission for review, or the institution of review by the Commission on its own motion, shall not operate as a stay of such prohibition or limitation, unless the Commission otherwise orders, summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing on the question of a stay (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments). The Commission shall establish for appropriate cases an expedited procedure for consideration and determination of the question of a stay.

(B) In any proceeding to review the prohibition or limitation of any person in respect of access to services offered by a registered securities information processor, if the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such prohibition or limitation is consistent with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder and that such person has not been discriminated against unfairly, the Commission, by order, shall dismiss the proceeding. If the Commission does not make any such finding or if it finds that such prohibition or limitation imposes any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, the Commission, by order, shall set aside the prohibition or limitation and require the registered securities information processor to permit such person access to services offered by the registered securities information processor.

(6) The Commission, by order, may censure or place limitations upon the activities, functions, or operations of any registered securities information processor or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or revoke the registration of any such processor, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest, necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors or to assure the prompt, accurate, or reliable performance of the functions of such securities information processor, and that such securities information processor has violated or is unable to comply with any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder.

**(c) Rules and regulations covering use of mails or other means or instrumentalities of interstate commerce; reports of purchase or sale of qualified securities; limiting registered securities transactions to national securities exchanges**

(1) No self-regulatory organization, member thereof, securities information processor, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to collect, process, distribute, publish, or prepare for distribution or publication any information with respect to quotations for or transactions in any security other than an exempted security, to assist, participate in, or coordinate the distribution or publication of such information, or to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any such security in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter to—

(A) prevent the use, distribution, or publication of fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative information with respect to quotations for and transactions in such securities;

(B) assure the prompt, accurate, reliable, and fair collection, processing, distribution, and publication of information with respect to quotations for and transactions in such securities and the fairness and usefulness of the form and content of such information;

(C) assure that all securities information processors may, for purposes of distribution and publication, obtain on fair and reasonable terms such information with respect to quotations for and transactions in such securities as is collected, processed, or prepared for distribution or publication by any exclusive processor of such information acting in such capacity;

(D) assure that all exchange members, brokers, dealers, securities information processors, and, subject to such limitations as the Commission, by rule, may impose as necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors or maintenance of fair and orderly markets, all other persons may obtain on terms which are not unreasonably discriminatory such information with respect to quotations for and transactions in such securities as is published or distributed by any self-regulatory organization or securities information processor;

(E) assure that all exchange members, brokers, and dealers transmit and direct orders for the purchase or sale of qualified securities in a manner consistent with the establishment and operation of a national market system; and

(F) assure equal regulation of all markets for qualified securities and all exchange members, brokers, and dealers effecting transactions in such securities.

(2) The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may require any person who has effected the purchase or sale of any qualified security by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to report such purchase or sale to a registered securities information processor, national securities exchange, or registered securities association and require such processor, exchange, or association to make appropriate distribution and publication of information with respect to such purchase or sale.

(3)(A) The Commission, by rule, is authorized to prohibit brokers and dealers from effecting transactions in securities registered pursuant to section 78*l*(b) of this title otherwise than on a national securities exchange, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that—

(i) as a result of transactions in such securities effected otherwise than on a national securities exchange the fairness or orderliness of the markets for such securities has been affected in a manner contrary to the public interest or the protection of investors;

(ii) no rule of any national securities exchange unreasonably impairs the ability of any dealer to solicit or effect transactions in such securities for his own account or unreasonably restricts competition among dealers in such securities or between dealers acting in the capacity of market makers who are specialists in such securities and such dealers who are not specialists in such securities, and

(iii) the maintenance or restoration of fair and orderly markets in such securities may not be assured through other lawful means under this chapter.

The Commission may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any security or transaction or any class of securities or transactions from any such prohibition if the Commission deems such exemption consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets.

(B) For the purposes of subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, the ability of a dealer to solicit or effect transactions in securities for his own account shall not be deemed to be unreasonably impaired by any rule of an exchange fairly and reasonably prescribing the sequence in which orders brought to the exchange must be executed or which has been adopted to effect compliance with a rule of the Commission promulgated under this chapter.

(4) The Commission is directed to review any and all rules of national securities exchanges which limit or condition the ability of members to effect transactions in securities otherwise than on such exchanges.

(5) No national securities exchange or registered securities association may limit or condition the participation of any member in any registered clearing agency.

**(d) National Market Advisory Board**

(1) Not later than one hundred eighty days after June 4, 1975, the Commission shall establish a National Market Advisory Board (hereinafter in this section referred to as the ''Advisory Board'') to be composed of fifteen members, not all of whom shall be from the same geographical area of the United States, appointed by the Commission for a term specified by the Commission of not less than two years or more than five

years. The Advisory Board shall consist of persons associated with brokers and dealers (who shall be a majority) and persons not so associated who are representative of the public and, to the extent feasible, have knowledge of the securities markets of the United States.

(2) It shall be the responsibility of the Advisory Board to formulate and furnish to the Commission its views on significant regulatory proposals made by the Commission or any self-regulatory organization concerning the establishment, operation, and regulation of the markets for securities in the United States.

(3)(A) The Advisory Board shall study and make recommendations to the Commission as to the steps it finds appropriate to facilitate the establishment of a national market system. In so doing, the Advisory Board shall assume the responsibilities of any advisory committee appointed to advise the Commission with respect to the national market system which is in existence at the time of the establishment of the Advisory Board.

(B) The Advisory Board shall study the possible need for modifications of the scheme of self-regulation provided for in this chapter so as to adapt it to a national market system, including the need for the establishment of a new self-regulatory organization (hereinafter in this section referred to as a ''National Market Regulatory Board'' or ''Regulatory Board'') to administer the national market system. In the event the Advisory Board determines a National Market Regulatory Board should be established, it shall make recommendations as to:

(i) the point in time at which a Regulatory Board should be established;

(ii) the composition of a Regulatory Board;

(iii) the scope of the authority of a Regulatory Board;

(iv) the relationship of a Regulatory Board to the Commission and to existing self-regulatory organizations; and

(v) the manner in which a Regulatory Board should be funded.

The Advisory Board shall report to the Congress, on or before December 31, 1976, the results of such study and its recommendations, including such recommendations for legislation as it deems appropriate.

(C) In carrying out its responsibilities under this paragraph, the Advisory Board shall consult with self-regulatory organizations, brokers, dealers, securities information processors, issuers, investors, representatives of Government agencies, and other persons interested or likely to participate in the establishment, operation, or regulation of the national market system.

**(e) National markets system for security futures products**

**(1) Consultation and cooperation required**

With respect to security futures products, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall consult and cooperate so that, to the maximum extent practicable, their respective regulatory responsibilities may be fulfilled and the rules and regulations applicable to security futures products may foster a national market system for security futures products if the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly determine that such a system would be consistent with the congressional findings in subsection (a)(1) of this section. In accordance with this objective, the Commission shall, at least 15 days prior to the issuance for public comment of any proposed rule or regulation under this section concerning security futures products, consult and request the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

**(2) Application of rules by order of CFTC**

No rule adopted pursuant to this section shall be applied to any person with respect to the trading of security futures products on an exchange that is registered under section 78f(g) of this title unless the Commodity Futures Trading Commission has issued an order directing that such rule is applicable to such persons.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 11A, as added Pub. L. 94–29, § 7, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 111; amended Pub. L. 98–620, title IV, § 402(14), Nov. 8, 1984, 98 Stat. 3358; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§ 313, 314, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(c)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–430.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3)(A), is Pub. L. 92–436, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 106–554 added subsec. (e).

1987—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, § 313(1), substituted ''transactions'' for ''transaction''.

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 100–181, § 313(2), struck out ''On or before the ninetieth day following June 4, 1975, the Commission shall (i) report to the Congress the results of its review, including the effects on competition of such rules, and (ii) commence a proceeding in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(c) of this title to amend any such rule imposing a burden on competition which does not appear to the Commission to be necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. The Commission shall conclude any such proceeding within ninety days of the date of publication of notice of its commencement.''

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–181, § 314, struck out subsec. (e) which read as follows: ''The Commission is authorized and directed to make a study of the extent to which persons excluded from the definitions of 'broker' and 'dealer' maintain accounts on behalf of public customers for buying and selling securities registered under section 78*l* of this title and whether such exclusions are consistent with the protection of investors and the other purposes of this chapter. The Commission shall report to the Congress, on or before December 31, 1976, the results of its study together with such recommendations for legislation as it deems advisable.''

1984—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 98–620 struck out designation ''(A)'' after ''(4)'', and struck out subpar. (B) which provided that review pursuant to section 78y(b) of this title of any rule promulgated by the Commission in accordance with any proceeding commenced pursuant to this paragraph would, except as to causes the court considers of greater importance, take precedence on the docket over all other causes and had to be assigned for consideration at the earliest practicable date and expedited in every way.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–620 not applicable to cases pending on Nov. 8, 1984, see section 403 of Pub. L. 98–620,

set out as an Effective Date note under section 1657 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective June 4, 1975, except for subsec. (b) which is effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

TERMINATION OF ADVISORY COMMITTEES

Advisory committees established after Jan. 5, 1973, to terminate not later than the expiration of the 2-year period beginning on the date of their establishment, unless, in the case of a committee established by the President or an officer of the Federal Government, such committee is renewed by appropriate action prior to the expiration of such 2-year period, or in the case of a committee established by the Congress, its duration is otherwise provided for by law. See section 14 of Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 776, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## § 78*l*. Registration requirements for securities

### (a) General requirement of registration

It shall be unlawful for any member, broker, or dealer to effect any transaction in any security (other than an exempted security) on a national securities exchange unless a registration is effective as to such security for such exchange in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder. The provisions of this subsection shall not apply in respect of a security futures product traded on a national securities exchange.

### (b) Procedure for registration; information

A security may be registered on a national securities exchange by the issuer filing an application with the exchange (and filing with the Commission such duplicate originals thereof as the Commission may require), which application shall contain—

(1) Such information, in such detail, as to the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer, and any guarantor of the security as to principal or interest or both, as the Commission may by rules and regulations require, as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, in respect of the following:

(A) the organization, financial structure, and nature of the business;

(B) the terms, position, rights, and privileges of the different classes of securities outstanding;

(C) the terms on which their securities are to be, and during the preceding three years have been, offered to the public or otherwise;

(D) the directors, officers, and underwriters, and each security holder of record holding more than 10 per centum of any class of any equity security of the issuer (other than an exempted security), their remuneration and their interests in the securities of, and their material contracts with, the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer;

(E) remuneration to others than directors and officers exceeding $20,000 per annum;

(F) bonus and profit-sharing arrangements;

(G) management and service contracts;

(H) options existing or to be created in respect of their securities;

(I) material contracts, not made in the ordinary course of business, which are to be executed in whole or in part at or after the filing of the application or which were made not more than two years before such filing, and every material patent or contract for a material patent right shall be deemed a material contract;

(J) balance sheets for not more than the three preceding fiscal years, certified if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission by a registered public accounting firm;

(K) profit and loss statements for not more than the three preceding fiscal years, certified if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission by a registered public accounting firm; and

(L) any further financial statements which the Commission may deem necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors.

(2) Such copies of articles of incorporation, bylaws, trust indentures, or corresponding documents by whatever name known, underwriting arrangements, and other similar documents of, and voting trust agreements with respect to, the issuer and any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the issuer as the Commission may require as necessary or appropriate for the proper protection of investors and to insure fair dealing in the security.

(3) Such copies of material contracts, referred to in paragraph (1)(I) above, as the Commission may require as necessary or appropriate for the proper protection of investors and to insure fair dealing in the security.

### (c) Additional or alternative information

If in the judgment of the Commission any information required under subsection (b) of this section is inapplicable to any specified class or classes of issuers, the Commission shall require in lieu thereof the submission of such other information of comparable character as it may deem applicable to such class of issuers.

### (d) Effective date of registration; withdrawal of registration

If the exchange authorities certify to the Commission that the security has been approved by the exchange for listing and registration, the registration shall become effective thirty days after the receipt of such certification by the Commission or within such shorter period of time as the Commission may determine. A security registered with a national securities exchange may be withdrawn or stricken from listing and registration in accordance with the rules of the exchange and, upon such terms as the Commission may deem necessary to impose for the protection of investors, upon application by the issuer or the exchange to the Commission; whereupon the issuer shall be relieved from further compliance with the provisions of this section and section 78m of this title and any

rules or regulations under such sections as to the securities so withdrawn or stricken. An unissued security may be registered only in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(e) Exemption from provisions of section for period ending not later than July 1, 1935**

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this section, the Commission may by such rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, permit securities listed on any exchange at the time the registration of such exchange as a national securities exchange becomes effective, to be registered for a period ending not later than July 1, 1935, without complying with the provisions of this section.

**(f) Unlisted trading privileges for security originally listed on another national exchange**

(1)(A) Notwithstanding the preceding subsections of this section, any national securities exchange, in accordance with the requirements of this subsection and the rules hereunder, may extend unlisted trading privileges to—

(i) any security that is listed and registered on a national securities exchange, subject to subparagraph (B); and

(ii) any security that is otherwise registered pursuant to this section, or that would be required to be so registered except for the exemption from registration provided in subparagraph (B) or (G) of subsection (g)(2) of this section, subject to subparagraph (E) of this paragraph.

(B) A national securities exchange may not extend unlisted trading privileges to a security described in subparagraph (A)(i) during such interval, if any, after the commencement of an initial public offering of such security, as is or may be required pursuant to subparagraph (C).

(C) Not later than 180 days after October 22, 1994, the Commission shall prescribe, by rule or regulation, the duration of the interval referred to in subparagraph (B), if any, as the Commission determines to be necessary or appropriate for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. Until the earlier of the effective date of such rule or regulation or 240 days after October 22, 1994, such interval shall begin at the opening of trading on the day on which such security commences trading on the national securities exchange with which such security is registered and end at the conclusion of the next day of trading.

(D) The Commission may prescribe, by rule or regulation such additional procedures or requirements for extending unlisted trading privileges to any security as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(E) No extension of unlisted trading privileges to securities described in subparagraph (A)(ii) may occur except pursuant to a rule, regulation, or order of the Commission approving such extension or extensions. In promulgating such rule or regulation or in issuing such order, the Commission—

(i) shall find that such extension or extensions of unlisted trading privileges is consistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, and otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter;

(ii) shall take account of the public trading activity in such securities, the character of such trading, the impact of such extension on the existing markets for such securities, and the desirability of removing impediments to and the progress that has been made toward the development of a national market system; and

(iii) shall not permit a national securities exchange to extend unlisted trading privileges to such securities if any rule of such national securities exchange would unreasonably impair the ability of a dealer to solicit or effect transactions in such securities for its own account, or would unreasonably restrict competition among dealers in such securities or between such dealers acting in the capacity of market makers who are specialists and such dealers who are not specialists.

(F) An exchange may continue to extend unlisted trading privileges in accordance with this paragraph only if the exchange and the subject security continue to satisfy the requirements for eligibility under this paragraph, including any rules and regulations issued by the Commission pursuant to this paragraph, except that unlisted trading privileges may continue with regard to securities which had been admitted on such exchange prior to July 1, 1964, notwithstanding the failure to satisfy such requirements. If unlisted trading privileges in a security are discontinued pursuant to this subparagraph, the exchange shall cease trading in that security, unless the exchange and the subject security thereafter satisfy the requirements of this paragraph and the rules issued hereunder.

(G) For purposes of this paragraph—

(i) a security is the subject of an initial public offering if—

(I) the offering of the subject security is registered under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.]; and

(II) the issuer of the security, immediately prior to filing the registration statement with respect to the offering, was not subject to the reporting requirements of section 78m or 78*o*(d) of this title; and

(ii) an initial public offering of such security commences at the opening of trading on the day on which such security commences trading on the national securities exchange with which such security is registered.

(2)(A) At any time within 60 days of commencement of trading on an exchange of a security pursuant to unlisted trading privileges, the Commission may summarily suspend such unlisted trading privileges on the exchange. Such suspension shall not be reviewable under section 78y of this title and shall not be deemed to be a final agency action for purposes of section 704 of title 5. Upon such suspension—

(i) the exchange shall cease trading in the security by the close of business on the date of such suspension, or at such time as the Commission may prescribe by rule or order for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter; and

(ii) if the exchange seeks to extend unlisted trading privileges to the security, the exchange shall file an application to reinstate its ability to do so with the Commission pursuant to such procedures as the Commission may prescribe by rule or order for the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(B) A suspension under subparagraph (A) shall remain in effect until the Commission, by order, grants approval of an application to reinstate, as described in subparagraph (A)(ii).

(C) A suspension under subparagraph (A) shall not affect the validity or force of an extension of unlisted trading privileges in effect prior to such suspension.

(D) The Commission shall not approve an application by a national securities exchange to reinstate its ability to extend unlisted trading privileges to a security unless the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the extension of unlisted trading privileges pursuant to such application is consistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the protection of investors and the public interest, and otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. If the application is made to reinstate unlisted trading privileges to a security described in paragraph (1)(A)(ii), the Commission—

(i) shall take account of the public trading activity in such security, the character of such trading, the impact of such extension on the existing markets for such a security, and the desirability of removing impediments to and the progress that has been made toward the development of a national market system; and

(ii) shall not grant any such application if any rule of the national securities exchange making application under this subsection would unreasonably impair the ability of a dealer to solicit or effect transactions in such security for its own account, or would unreasonably restrict competition among dealers in such security or between such dealers acting in the capacity of marketmakers who are specialists and such dealers who are not specialists.

(3) Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the Commission shall by rules and regulations suspend unlisted trading privileges in whole or in part for any or all classes of securities for a period not exceeding twelve months, if it deems such suspension necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors or to prevent evasion of the purposes of this chapter.

(4) On the application of the issuer of any security for which unlisted trading privileges on any exchange have been continued or extended pursuant to this subsection, or of any broker or dealer who makes or creates a market for such security, or of any other person having a bona fide interest in the question of termination or suspension of such unlisted trading privileges, or on its own motion, the Commission shall by order terminate, or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, such unlisted trading privileges for such security if the Commission finds, after appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing, that such termination or suspension is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(5) In any proceeding under this subsection in which appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing are required, notice of not less than ten days to the applicant in such proceeding, to the issuer of the security involved, to the exchange which is seeking to continue or extend or has continued or extended unlisted trading privileges for such security, and to the exchange, if any, on which such security is listed and registered, shall be deemed adequate notice, and any broker or dealer who makes or creates a market for such security, and any other person having a bona fide interest in such proceeding, shall upon application be entitled to be heard.

(6) Any security for which unlisted trading privileges are continued or extended pursuant to this subsection shall be deemed to be registered on a national securities exchange within the meaning of this chapter. The powers and duties of the Commission under this chapter shall be applicable to the rules of an exchange in respect of any such security. The Commission may, by such rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, either unconditionally or upon specified terms and conditions, or for stated periods, exempt such securities from the operation of any provision of section 78m, 78n, or 78p of this title.

**(g) Registration of securities by issuer; exemptions**

(1) Every issuer which is engaged in interstate commerce, or in a business affecting interstate commerce, or whose securities are traded by use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce shall—

(A) within one hundred and twenty days after the last day of its first fiscal year ended after July 1, 1964, on which the issuer has total assets exceeding $1,000,000 and a class of equity security (other than an exempted security) held of record by seven hundred and fifty or more persons; and

(B) within one hundred and twenty days after the last day of its first fiscal year ended after two years from July 1, 1964, on which the issuer has total assets exceeding $1,000,000 and a class of equity security (other than an exempted security) held of record by five hundred or more but less than seven hundred and fifty persons,

register such security by filing with the Commission a registration statement (and such copies thereof as the Commission may require) with respect to such security containing such information and documents as the Commission may

specify comparable to that which is required in an application to register a security pursuant to subsection (b) of this section. Each such registration statement shall become effective sixty days after filing with the Commission or within such shorter period as the Commission may direct. Until such registration statement becomes effective it shall not be deemed filed for the purposes of section 78r of this title. Any issuer may register any class of equity security not required to be registered by filing a registration statement pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph. The Commission is authorized to extend the date upon which any issuer or class of issuers is required to register a security pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph.

(2) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply in respect of—

(A) any security listed and registered on a national securities exchange.

(B) any security issued by an investment company registered pursuant to section 80a–8 of this title.

(C) any security, other than permanent stock, guaranty stock, permanent reserve stock, or any similar certificate evidencing nonwithdrawable capital, issued by a savings and loan association, building and loan association, cooperative bank, homestead association, or similar institution, which is supervised and examined by State or Federal authority having supervision over any such institution.

(D) any security of an issuer organized and operated exclusively for religious, educational, benevolent, fraternal, charitable, or reformatory purposes and not for pecuniary profit, and no part of the net earnings of which inures to the benefit of any private shareholder or individual; or any security of a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a–3(c)(10)(B) of this title.

(E) any security of an issuer which is a ''cooperative association'' as defined in the Agricultural Marketing Act, approved June 15, 1929, as amended [12 U.S.C. 1141 et seq.], or a federation of such cooperative associations, if such federation possesses no greater powers or purposes than cooperative associations so defined.

(F) any security issued by a mutual or cooperative organization which supplies a commodity or service primarily for the benefit of its members and operates not for pecuniary profit, but only if the security is part of a class issuable only to persons who purchase commodities or services from the issuer, the security is transferable only to a successor in interest or occupancy of premises serviced or to be served by the issuer, and no dividends are payable to the holder of the security.

(G) any security issued by an insurance company if all of the following conditions are met:

(i) Such insurance company is required to and does file an annual statement with the Commissioner of Insurance (or other officer or agency performing a similar function) of its domiciliary State, and such annual statement conforms to that prescribed by the National Association of Insurance Commissioners or in the determination of such State commissioner, officer or agency substantially conforms to that so prescribed.

(ii) Such insurance company is subject to regulation by its domiciliary State of proxies, consents, or authorizations in respect of securities issued by such company and such regulation conforms to that prescribed by the National Association of Insurance Commissioners.

(iii) After July 1, 1966, the purchase and sales of securities issued by such insurance company by beneficial owners, directors, or officers of such company are subject to regulation (including reporting) by its domiciliary State substantially in the manner provided in section 78p of this title.

(H) any interest or participation in any collective trust funds maintained by a bank or in a separate account maintained by an insurance company which interest or participation is issued in connection with (i) a stock-bonus, pension, or profit-sharing plan which meets the requirements for qualification under section 401 of title 26, (ii) an annuity plan which meets the requirements for deduction of the employer's contribution under section 404(a)(2) of title 26, or (iii) a church plan, company, or account that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a–3(c)(14) of this title.

(3) The Commission may by rules or regulations or, on its own motion, after notice and opportunity for hearing, by order, exempt from this subsection any security of a foreign issuer, including any certificate of deposit for such a security, if the Commission finds that such exemption is in the public interest and is consistent with the protection of investors.

(4) Registration of any class of security pursuant to this subsection shall be terminated ninety days, or such shorter period as the Commission may determine, after the issuer files a certification with the Commission that the number of holders of record of such class of security is reduced to less than three hundred persons. The Commission shall after notice and opportunity for hearing deny termination of registration if it finds that the certification is untrue. Termination of registration shall be deferred pending final determination on the question of denial.

(5) For the purposes of this subsection the term ''class'' shall include all securities of an issuer which are of substantially similar character and the holders of which enjoy substantially similar rights and privileges. The Commission may for the purpose of this subsection define by rules and regulations the terms ''total assets'' and ''held of record'' as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors in order to prevent circumvention of the provisions of this subsection. For purposes of this subsection, a security futures product shall not be considered a class of equity security of the issuer of the securities underlying the security futures product.

**(h) Exemption by rules and regulations from certain provisions of section**

The Commission may by rules and regulations, or upon application of an interested per-

son, by order, after notice and opportunity for hearing, exempt in whole or in part any issuer or class of issuers from the provisions of subsection (g) of this section or from section 78m, 78n, or 78*o*(d) of this title or may exempt from section 78p of this title any officer, director, or beneficial owner of securities of any issuer, any security of which is required to be registered pursuant to subsection (g) hereof, upon such terms and conditions and for such period as it deems necessary or appropriate, if the Commission finds, by reason of the number of public investors, amount of trading interest in the securities, the nature and extent of the activities of the issuer, income or assets of the issuer, or otherwise, that such action is not inconsistent with the public interest or the protection of investors. The Commission may, for the purposes of any of the above-mentioned sections or subsections of this chapter, classify issuers and prescribe requirements appropriate for each such class.

**(i) Securities issued by banks**

In respect of any securities issued by banks and savings associations the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1811 et seq.], the powers, functions, and duties vested in the Commission to administer and enforce this section and sections 78j–1(m), 78m, 78n(a), 78n(c), 78n(d), 78n(f), and 78p of this title, and sections 7241, 7242, 7243, 7244, 7261(b), 7262, 7264, and 7265 of this title, (1) with respect to national banks are vested in the Comptroller of the Currency, (2) with respect to all other member banks of the Federal Reserve System are vested in the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, (3) with respect to all other insured banks are vested in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and (4) with respect to savings associations the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation are vested in the Office of Thrift Supervision. The Comptroller of the Currency, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and the Office of Thrift Supervision shall have the power to make such rules and regulations as may be necessary for the execution of the functions vested in them as provided in this subsection. In carrying out their responsibilities under this subsection, the agencies named in the first sentence of this subsection shall issue substantially similar regulations to regulations and rules issued by the Commission under this section and sections 78j–1(m), 78m, 78n(a), 78n(c), 78n(d), 78n(f), and 78p of this title, and sections 7241, 7242, 7243, 7244, 7261(b), 7262, 7264, and 7265 of this title, unless they find that implementation of substantially similar regulations with respect to insured banks and insured institutions are not necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for protection of investors, and publish such findings, and the detailed reasons therefor, in the Federal Register. Such regulations of the above-named agencies, or the reasons for failure to publish such substantially similar regulations to those of the Commission, shall be published in the Federal Register within 120 days of October 28, 1974, and, thereafter, within 60 days of any changes made by the Commission in its relevant regulations and rules.

**(j) Denial, suspension, or revocation of registration; notice and hearing**

The Commission is authorized, by order, as it deems necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors to deny, to suspend the effective date of, to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or to revoke the registration of a security, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the issuer, of such security has failed to comply with any provision of this chapter or the rules and regulations thereunder. No member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security the registration of which has been and is suspended or revoked pursuant to the preceding sentence.

**(k) Trading suspensions; emergency authority**

**(1) Trading suspensions**

If in its opinion the public interest and the protection of investors so require, the Commission is authorized by order—

(A) summarily to suspend trading in any security (other than an exempted security) for a period not exceeding 10 business days, and

(B) summarily to suspend all trading on any national securities exchange or otherwise, in securities other than exempted securities, for a period not exceeding 90 calendar days.

The action described in subparagraph (B) shall not take effect unless the Commission notifies the President of its decision and the President notifies the Commission that the President does not disapprove of such decision. If the actions described in subparagraph (A) or (B) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

**(2) Emergency orders**

**(A) In general**

The Commission, in an emergency, may by order summarily take such action to alter, supplement, suspend, or impose requirements or restrictions with respect to any matter or action subject to regulation by the Commission or a self-regulatory organization under the securities laws, as the Commission determines is necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors—

(i) to maintain or restore fair and orderly securities markets (other than markets in exempted securities);

(ii) to ensure prompt, accurate, and safe clearance and settlement of transactions in securities (other than exempted securities); or

(iii) to reduce, eliminate, or prevent the substantial disruption by the emergency of—

(I) securities markets (other than markets in exempted securities), investment

companies, or any other significant portion or segment of such markets; or

(II) the transmission or processing of securities transactions (other than transactions in exempted securities).

**(B) Effective period**

An order of the Commission under this paragraph shall continue in effect for the period specified by the Commission, and may be extended. Except as provided in subparagraph (C), an order of the Commission under this paragraph may not continue in effect for more than 10 business days, including extensions.

**(C) Extension**

An order of the Commission under this paragraph may be extended to continue in effect for more than 10 business days if, at the time of the extension, the Commission finds that the emergency still exists and determines that the continuation of the order beyond 10 business days is necessary in the public interest and for the protection of investors to attain an objective described in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph (A). In no event shall an order of the Commission under this paragraph continue in effect for more than 30 calendar days.

**(D) Security futures**

If the actions described in subparagraph (A) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

**(E) Exemption**

In exercising its authority under this paragraph, the Commission shall not be required to comply with the provisions of—

(i) section 78s(c) of this title; or

(ii) section 553 of title 5.

**(3) Termination of emergency actions by President**

The President may direct that action taken by the Commission under paragraph (1)(B) or paragraph (2) of this subsection shall not continue in effect.

**(4) Compliance with orders**

No member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security in contravention of an order of the Commission under this subsection unless such order has been stayed, modified, or set aside as provided in paragraph (5) of this subsection or has ceased to be effective upon direction of the President as provided in paragraph (3).

**(5) Limitations on review of orders**

An order of the Commission pursuant to this subsection shall be subject to review only as provided in section 78y(a) of this title. Review shall be based on an examination of all the information before the Commission at the time such order was issued. The reviewing court shall not enter a stay, writ of mandamus, or similar relief unless the court finds, after notice and hearing before a panel of the court, that the Commission's action is arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law.

**(6) Consultation**

Prior to taking any action described in paragraph (1)(B), the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, unless such consultation is impracticable in light of the emergency.

**(7) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection—

(A) the term ''emergency'' means—

(i) a major market disturbance characterized by or constituting—

(I) sudden and excessive fluctuations of securities prices generally, or a substantial threat thereof, that threaten fair and orderly markets; or

(II) a substantial disruption of the safe or efficient operation of the national system for clearance and settlement of transactions in securities, or a substantial threat thereof; or

(ii) a major disturbance that substantially disrupts, or threatens to substantially disrupt—

(I) the functioning of securities markets, investment companies, or any other significant portion or segment of the securities markets; or

(II) the transmission or processing of securities transactions; and

(B) notwithstanding section 78c(a)(47) of this title, the term ''securities laws'' does not include the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935.[1]

**(*l*) Issuance of any security in contravention of rules and regulations; application to annuity contracts and variable life policies**

It shall be unlawful for an issuer, any class of whose securities is registered pursuant to this section or would be required to be so registered except for the exemption from registration provided by subsection (g)(2)(B) or (g)(2)(G) of this section, by the use of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, or of the mails, to issue, either originally or upon transfer, any of such securities in a form or with a format which contravenes such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of transactions in securities. The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to variable annuity contracts or variable life policies issued by an insurance company or its separate accounts.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 12, 48 Stat. 892; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 1, 49 Stat. 1375; Aug. 10, 1954, ch. 667, title II, § 202, 68 Stat. 686; Pub. L. 88–467, § 3, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 565; Pub. L. 90–439, § 1, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 454; Pub. L.

[1] See References in Text note below.

91–547, § 28(c), Dec. 14, 1970, 84 Stat. 1435; Pub. L. 93–495, title I, § 105(b), Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1503; Pub. L. 94–29, §§ 8, 9, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 117, 118; Pub. L. 99–514, § 2, Oct. 22, 1986, 100 Stat. 2095; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, § 314, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256; Pub. L. 101–73, title VII, § 744(u)(2), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 441; Pub. L. 101–432, § 2, Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 963; Pub. L. 103–389, § 2, Oct. 22, 1994, 108 Stat. 4081; Pub. L. 104–62, § 4(d), Dec. 8, 1995, 109 Stat. 685; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, §§ 206(e), 208(b)(1), (2)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–431, 2763A–435; Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(4), title II, § 205(c)(1), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 749, 774; Pub. L. 108–359, § 1(c)(2), Oct. 25, 2004, 118 Stat. 1666; Pub. L. 108–386, § 8(f)(4), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2232; Pub. L. 108–458, title VII, § 7803(b), (c), Dec. 17, 2004, 118 Stat. 3861, 3862.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (f), and (j), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (f)(1)(G)(i)(I), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Agricultural Marketing Act, approved June 15, 1929, as amended, referred to in subsec. (g)(2)(E), is act June 15, 1929, ch. 24, 46 Stat. 11, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 7A (§ 1141 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1141j(f) of Title 12 and Tables.

The Federal Deposit Insurance Act, referred to in subsec. (i), is act Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 967, § 2, 64 Stat. 873, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§ 1811 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1811 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, referred to in subsec. (k)(7)(B), is title I of act Aug. 26, 1935, ch. 687, 49 Stat. 803, as amended, which was classified generally to chapter 2C (§ 79 et seq.) of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, § 1263, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 974. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (g)(2)(H)(iii). Pub. L. 108–359 added cl. (iii).

Subsec. (i)(1). Pub. L. 108–386 struck out ''and banks operating under the Code of Law for the District of Columbia'' after ''national banks''.

Subsec. (k)(2). Pub. L. 108–458, § 7803(b)(1), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) provided Commission authority to make emergency orders.

Subsec. (k)(6), (7). Pub. L. 108–458, § 7803(c), added pars. (6) and (7) and struck out heading and text of former par. (6). Text read as follows: ''For purposes of this subsection, the term 'emergency' means a major market disturbance characterized by or constituting—

''(A) sudden and excessive fluctuations of securities prices generally, or a substantial threat thereof, that threaten fair and orderly markets, or

''(B) a substantial disruption of the safe or efficient operation of the national system for clearance and settlement of securities, or a substantial threat thereof.''

2002—Subsec. (b)(1)(J), (K). Pub. L. 107–204, § 205(c)(1), substituted ''a registered public accounting firm'' for ''independent public accountants''.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(4)(B), substituted ''and 78p of this title, and sections 7241, 7242, 7243, 7244, 7261(b), 7262, 7264, and 7265 of this title,'' for ''and 78p of this title,'' in two places.

Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(4)(A), substituted ''this section and sections 78j–1(m), 78m'' for ''this section and sections 78m'' in two places.

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 208(b)(1)], inserted at end ''The provisions of this subsection shall not apply in respect of a security futures product traded on a national securities exchange.''

Subsec. (g)(5). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 208(b)(2)], inserted at end ''For purposes of this subsection, a security futures product shall not be considered a class of equity security of the issuer of the securities underlying the security futures product.''

Subsec. (k)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(e)(1)], inserted at end ''If the actions described in subparagraph (A) or (B) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.''

Subsec. (k)(2)(B). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(e)(2)], inserted after first sentence ''If the actions described in subparagraph (A) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.''

1995—Subsec. (g)(2)(D). Pub. L. 104–62 inserted before period at end ''; or any security of a fund that is excluded from the definition of an investment company under section 80a–3(c)(10)(B) of this title''.

1994—Subsec. (f)(1), (2). Pub. L. 103–389, § 2(a), added pars. (1) and (2) and struck out former pars. (1) and (2) which related to extension of unlisted trading privileges for securities originally listed on another national exchange and approval process for application for extension of such privileges, respectively.

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 103–389, § 2(b), substituted ''Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the Commission'' for ''The Commission''.

1990—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 101–432 amended subsec. (k) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (k) read as follows: ''If in its opinion the public interest and the protection of investors so require, the Commission is authorized summarily to suspend trading in any security (other than an exempted security) for a period not exceeding ten days, or with the approval of the President, summarily to suspend all trading on any national securities exchange or otherwise, in securities other than exempted securities, for a period not exceeding ninety days. No member of a national securities exchange, broker, or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security in which trading is so suspended.''

1989—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 101–73, in first sentence, inserted ''and savings associations'' after ''securities issued by banks'', struck out ''or institutions the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation'' before '', the powers, functions, and duties'', inserted new cl. (4) and struck out former cl. (4) which read ''with respect to institutions the accounts of which are insured by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation are vested in the Federal Home Loan Bank Board'', and, in second sentence, substituted ''Office of Thrift Supervision'' for ''Federal Home Loan Bank Board''.

1987—Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 100–181 struck out subsec. (m) which read as follows: ''The Commission is authorized and directed to make a study and investigation of the practice of recording the ownership of securities in the records of the issuer in other than the name of the beneficial owner of such securities to determine (1) whether such practice is consistent with the purposes of this chapter, with particular reference to subsection (g) of this section and sections 78m, 78n, 78*o*(d), 78p, and 78q–1 of this title, and (2) whether steps can be taken to facilitate communications between issuers and the beneficial owners of their securities while at the same time retaining the benefits of such practice. The Commission shall report to the Congress its preliminary

findings within six months after June 4, 1975, and its final conclusions and recommendations within one year of such date.''

1986—Subsec. (g)(2)(H). Pub. L. 99–514 substituted ''Internal Revenue Code of 1986'' for ''Internal Revenue Code of 1954'', which for purposes of codification was translated as ''title 26'' thus requiring no change in text.

1975—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 94–29, § 8(1), added subpar. (C) and in provisions following subpar. (C), substituted ''is based'' for ''was originally based'' and ''remains listed and registered on a national securities exchange'' for ''shall remain listed and registered on any other national securities exchange''.

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 94–29, § 8(1), substituted ''after notice and opportunity for hearing'' for ''after appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing'' and ''consistent with the maintenance of fair and orderly markets and the protection of investors'' for ''necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors'' in existing provisions and added the enumeration of matters to be taken into account by the Commission in considering an application for the extension of unlisted trading privileges to a security not listed and registered on a national securities exchange.

Subsec. (f)(6). Pub. L. 94–29, § 8(2), substituted ''this chapter'' for ''section 78s(b) of this title''.

Subsecs. (j) to (m). Pub. L. 94–29, § 9, added subsecs. (j) to (m).

1974—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 93–495 added coverage of institutions insured by the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation, cl. (4), and provisions authorizing the Federal Home Loan Bank Board to promulgate necessary rules and regulations, and substituted provisions relating to issuance of regulations in order to implement agency responsibility under this subsec. for provisions relating to the binding effect of rules, regulations, forms or orders issued or adopted by the Commission pursuant to this chapter.

1970—Subsec. (g)(2)(H). Pub. L. 91–547 added subpar. (H).

1968—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 90–439 inserted ''78n(d), 78n(f),'' after ''78n(c)''.

1964—Subsec. (b)(1)(I) to (L). Pub. L. 88–467, § 3(a)(1), (2), added subpar. (I) and redesignated former subpars. (I) to (K) as (J) to (L), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 88–467, § 3(a)(3), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 88–467, § 3(b), designated first par. as (1), redesignated cl. (1) as cl. (A) and substituted therein ''July 1, 1964'' for ''March 1, 1934'', redesignated cl. (2) as cl. (B) and struck out the provision for continuation of unlisted trading privileges, which is now incorporated in concluding sentence, and struck out cl. (3) which permitted a national security exchange to extend unlisted trading privileges to any security in respect to which there was available information substantially equivalent to that available in respect to a security duly listed and registered on a national securities exchange, so long as the registration statement was effective and the reports and data continued to be filed.

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 88–467, § 3(b), designated first sentence of second par. as (2) and substituted therein ''finds, after appropriate notice and opportunity for hearing, that the extension'' for ''finds that the continuation or extension'', and struck out second through sixth sentences of such second par. which related as follows: the second sentence, to notice and opportunity for hearing, now incorporated in par. (2); the third sentence, to conditions (respecting sufficiently widespread public distribution and sufficient public trading activity) for approval of application to extend unlisted trading privileges to any security pursuant to former clauses (2) and (3) of subsec. (f); the fourth sentence, to terms and conditions (subjecting issuer, officers, and directors of issuer, and beneficial owners of more than 10 per centum of the securities to duties equivalent to duties if the securities were registered on a national security exchange) for approval of application to extend unlisted trading privileges to any security pursuant to former clause (3) of subsec. (f); the fifth sentence, to requirement for differentiation by national security exchanges between quotations or transactions in listed securities and in securities with unlisted trading privileges, now covered by section 78s(b) of this title; the sixth sentence, to grouping under separate headings of quotations or transactions in listed securities and in securities with unlisted trading privileges, in the publication of quotations or transactions.

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 88–467, § 3(b), designated third par. as (3).

Subsec. (f)(4). Pub. L. 88–467, § 3(b), designated second sentence of fourth par. as (4), struck out ''by reason of inadequate public distribution of such security in the vicinity of said exchange, or by reason of inadequate public trading activity or of the character of trading therein on said exchange,'' before ''such termination or suspension is necessary'', and struck out first sentence of fourth par. which provided for the termination under certain conditions of unlisted trading privileges continued for any security pursuant to former cl. (1) of subsec. (f), now incorporated in par. (1)(A) of subsec. (f).

Subsec. (f)(5), (6). Pub. L. 88–467, § 3(b), designated fifth and sixth pars. as (5) and (6).

Subsecs. (g) to (i). Pub. L. 88–467, § 3(c)–(e), added subsecs. (g) to (i).

1954—Subsec. (d). Act Aug. 10, 1954, repealed last sentence requiring that rules and regulations limit the registration of unissued security to specified cases.

1936—Subsec. (f). Act May 27, 1936, amended first par. and added subsequent pars.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 108–386 effective Oct. 30, 2004, and, except as otherwise provided, applicable with respect to fiscal year 2005 and each succeeding fiscal year, see sections 8(i) and 9 of Pub. L. 108–386, set out as notes under section 321 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–62 applicable as defense to any claim in administrative and judicial actions pending on or commenced after Dec. 8, 1995, that any person, security, interest, or participation of type described in Pub. L. 104–62 is subject to the Securities Act of 1933, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, or any State statute or regulation preempted as provided in section 80a–3a of this title, except as specifically provided in such statutes, see section 7 of Pub. L. 104–62, set out as a note under section 77c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–547 effective Dec. 14, 1970, see section 30 of Pub. L. 91–547, set out as a note under section 80a–52 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 3(a), (c) of Pub. L. 88–467 effective July 1, 1964, and amendment by section 3(b), (d), (e) of Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1954 AMENDMENT

Amendment by act Aug. 10, 1954, effective 60 days after Aug. 10, 1954, see note under section 77b of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of

such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### § 78*l*–1. Applications for unlisted trading privileges deemed filed under section 78*l* of this title

Any application to continue unlisted trading privileges for any security heretofore filed by any exchange and approved by the Commission pursuant to clause (1) of subsection (f) of section 78*l* of this title and rules and regulations thereunder shall be deemed to have been filed and approved pursuant to clause (1) of said subsection (f).

(May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 2, 49 Stat. 1377.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

### § 78m. Periodical and other reports

#### (a) Reports by issuer of security; contents

Every issuer of a security registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate for the proper protection of investors and to insure fair dealing in the security—

(1) such information and documents (and such copies thereof) as the Commission shall require to keep reasonably current the information and documents required to be included in or filed with an application or registration statement filed pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, except that the Commission may not require the filing of any material contract wholly executed before July 1, 1962.

(2) such annual reports (and such copies thereof), certified if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission by independent public accountants, and such quarterly reports (and such copies thereof), as the Commission may prescribe.

Every issuer of a security registered on a national securities exchange shall also file a duplicate original of such information, documents, and reports with the exchange.

#### (b) Form of report; books, records, and internal accounting; directives

(1) The Commission may prescribe, in regard to reports made pursuant to this chapter, the form or forms in which the required information shall be set forth, the items or details to be shown in the balance sheet and the earning statement, and the methods to be followed in the preparation of reports, in the appraisal or valuation of assets and liabilities, in the determination of depreciation and depletion, in the differentiation of recurring and nonrecurring income, in the differentiation of investment and operating income, and in the preparation, where the Commission deems it necessary or desirable, of separate and/or consolidated balance sheets or income accounts of any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by the issuer, or any person under direct or indirect common control with the issuer; but in the case of the reports of any person whose methods of accounting are prescribed under the provisions of any law of the United States, or any rule or regulation thereunder, the rules and regulations of the Commission with respect to reports shall not be inconsistent with the requirements imposed by such law or rule or regulation in respect of the same subject matter (except that such rules and regulations of the Commission may be inconsistent with such requirements to the extent that the Commission determines that the public interest or the protection of investors so requires).

(2) Every issuer which has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title and every issuer which is required to file reports pursuant to section 78*o*(d) of this title shall—

(A) make and keep books, records, and accounts, which, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the issuer;

(B) devise and maintain a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurances that—

(i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorization;

(ii) transactions are recorded as necessary (I) to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles or any other criteria applicable to such statements, and (II) to maintain accountability for assets;

(iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization; and

(iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with the existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences; and

(C) notwithstanding any other provision of law, pay the allocable share of such issuer of a reasonable annual accounting support fee or fees, determined in accordance with section 7219 of this title.

(3)(A) With respect to matters concerning the national security of the United States, no duty or liability under paragraph (2) of this subsection shall be imposed upon any person acting in cooperation with the head of any Federal department or agency responsible for such matters if such act in cooperation with such head of a department or agency was done upon the specific, written directive of the head of such department or agency pursuant to Presidential authority to issue such directives. Each directive issued under this paragraph shall set forth the specific facts and circumstances with respect to which the provisions of this paragraph are to be invoked. Each such directive shall, unless renewed in writing, expire one year after the date of issuance.

(B) Each head of a Federal department or agency of the United States who issues a directive pursuant to this paragraph shall maintain a complete file of all such directives and shall, on October 1 of each year, transmit a summary of matters covered by such directives in force at any time during the previous year to the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence of the House of Representatives and the Select Committee on Intelligence of the Senate.

(4) No criminal liability shall be imposed for failing to comply with the requirements of paragraph (2) of this subsection except as provided in paragraph (5) of this subsection.

(5) No person shall knowingly circumvent or knowingly fail to implement a system of internal accounting controls or knowingly falsify any book, record, or account described in paragraph (2).

(6) Where an issuer which has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title or an issuer which is required to file reports pursuant to section 78*o*(d) of this title holds 50 per centum or less of the voting power with respect to a domestic or foreign firm, the provisions of paragraph (2) require only that the issuer proceed in good faith to use its influence, to the extent reasonable under the issuer's circumstances, to cause such domestic or foreign firm to devise and maintain a system of internal accounting controls consistent with paragraph (2). Such circumstances include the relative degree of the issuer's ownership of the domestic or foreign firm and the laws and practices governing the business operations of the country in which such firm is located. An issuer which demonstrates good faith efforts to use such influence shall be conclusively presumed to have complied with the requirements of paragraph (2).

(7) For the purpose of paragraph (2) of this subsection, the terms ''reasonable assurances'' and ''reasonable detail'' mean such level of detail and degree of assurance as would satisfy prudent officials in the conduct of their own affairs.

**(c) Alternative reports**

If in the judgment of the Commission any report required under subsection (a) of this section is inapplicable to any specified class or classes of issuers, the Commission shall require in lieu thereof the submission of such reports of comparable character as it may deem applicable to such class or classes of issuers.

**(d) Reports by persons acquiring more than five per centum of certain classes of securities**

(1) Any person who, after acquiring directly or indirectly the beneficial ownership of any equity security of a class which is registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, or any equity security of an insurance company which would have been required to be so registered except for the exemption contained in section 78*l*(g)(2)(G) of this title, or any equity security issued by a closed-end investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.] or any equity security issued by a Native Corporation pursuant to section 1629c(d)(6) of title 43, is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 5 per centum of such class shall, within ten days after such acquisition, send to the issuer of the security at its principal executive office, by registered or certified mail, send to each exchange where the security is traded, and file with the Commission, a statement containing such of the following information, and such additional information, as the Commission may by rules and regulations, prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors—

(A) the background, and identity, residence, and citizenship of, and the nature of such beneficial ownership by, such person and all other persons by whom or on whose behalf the purchases have been or are to be effected;

(B) the source and amount of the funds or other consideration used or to be used in making the purchases, and if any part of the purchase price is represented or is to be represented by funds or other consideration borrowed or otherwise obtained for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or trading such security, a description of the transaction and the names of the parties thereto, except that where a source of funds is a loan made in the ordinary course of business by a bank, as defined in section 78c(a)(6) of this title, if the person filing such statement so requests, the name of the bank shall not be made available to the public;

(C) if the purpose of the purchases or prospective purchases is to acquire control of the business of the issuer of the securities, any plans or proposals which such persons may have to liquidate such issuer, to sell its assets to or merge it with any other persons, or to make any other major change in its business or corporate structure;

(D) the number of shares of such security which are beneficially owned, and the number of shares concerning which there is a right to acquire, directly or indirectly, by (i) such person, and (ii) by each associate of such person, giving the background, identity, residence, and citizenship of each such associate; and

(E) information as to any contracts, arrangements, or understandings with any person with respect to any securities of the issuer, including but not limited to transfer of any of the securities, joint ventures, loan or option arrangements, puts or calls, guaranties of loans, guaranties against loss or guaranties of profits, division of losses or profits, or the giving or withholding of proxies, naming the persons with whom such contracts, arrangements, or understandings have been entered into, and giving the details thereof.

(2) If any material change occurs in the facts set forth in the statements to the issuer and the exchange, and in the statement filed with the Commission, an amendment shall be transmitted to the issuer and the exchange and shall be filed with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3) When two or more persons act as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate, or other group for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or disposing of securities of an issuer, such syndicate or group shall be deemed a ''person'' for the purposes of this subsection.

(4) In determining, for purposes of this subsection, any percentage of a class of any security, such class shall be deemed to consist of the amount of the outstanding securities of such class, exclusive of any securities of such class held by or for the account of the issuer or a subsidiary of the issuer.

(5) The Commission, by rule or regulation or by order, may permit any person to file in lieu of the statement required by paragraph (1) of this subsection or the rules and regulations thereunder, a notice stating the name of such

person, the number of shares of any equity securities subject to paragraph (1) which are owned by him, the date of their acquisition and such other information as the Commission may specify, if it appears to the Commission that such securities were acquired by such person in the ordinary course of his business and were not acquired for the purpose of and do not have the effect of changing or influencing the control of the issuer nor in connection with or as a participant in any transaction having such purpose or effect.

(6) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to—

(A) any acquisition or offer to acquire securities made or proposed to be made by means of a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.];

(B) any acquisition of the beneficial ownership of a security which, together with all other acquisitions by the same person of securities of the same class during the preceding twelve months, does not exceed 2 per centum of that class;

(C) any acquisition of an equity security by the issuer of such security;

(D) any acquisition or proposed acquisition of a security which the Commission, by rules or regulations or by order, shall exempt from the provisions of this subsection as not entered into for the purpose of, and not having the effect of, changing or influencing the control of the issuer or otherwise as not comprehended within the purposes of this subsection.

**(e) Purchase of securities by issuer**

(1) It shall be unlawful for an issuer which has a class of equity securities registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, or which is a closed-end investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], to purchase any equity security issued by it if such purchase is in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission, in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may adopt (A) to define acts and practices which are fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative, and (B) to prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent such acts and practices. Such rules and regulations may require such issuer to provide holders of equity securities of such class with such information relating to the reasons for such purchase, the source of funds, the number of shares to be purchased, the price to be paid for such securities, the method of purchase, and such additional information, as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, or which the Commission deems to be material to a determination whether such security should be sold.

(2) For the purpose of this subsection, a purchase by or for the issuer or any person controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the issuer, or a purchase subject to control of the issuer or any such person, shall be deemed to be a purchase by the issuer. The Commission shall have power to make rules and regulations implementing this paragraph in the public interest and for the protection of investors, including exemptive rules and regulations covering situations in which the Commission deems it unnecessary or inappropriate that a purchase of the type described in this paragraph shall be deemed to be a purchase by the issuer for purposes of some or all of the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) At the time of filing such statement as the Commission may require by rule pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection, the person making the filing shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraphs (5) and (6), is equal to $92 per $1,000,000 of the value of securities proposed to be purchased. The fee shall be reduced with respect to securities in an amount equal to any fee paid with respect to any securities issued in connection with the proposed transaction under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)], or the fee paid under that section shall be reduced in an amount equal to the fee paid to the Commission in connection with such transaction under this paragraph.

(4) OFFSETTING COLLECTIONS.—Fees collected pursuant to this subsection for any fiscal year shall be deposited and credited as offsetting collections to the account providing appropriations to the Commission, and, except as provided in paragraph (9), shall not be collected for any fiscal year except to the extent provided in advance in appropriation Acts. No fees collected pursuant to this subsection for fiscal year 2002 or any succeeding fiscal year shall be deposited and credited as general revenue of the Treasury.

(5) ANNUAL ADJUSTMENT.—For each of the fiscal years 2003 through 2011, the Commission shall by order adjust the rate required by paragraph (3) for such fiscal year to a rate that is equal to the rate (expressed in dollars per million) that is applicable under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)] for such fiscal year.

(6) FINAL RATE ADJUSTMENT.—For fiscal year 2012 and all of the succeeding fiscal years, the Commission shall by order adjust the rate required by paragraph (3) for all of such fiscal years to a rate that is equal to the rate (expressed in dollars per million) that is applicable under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)] for all of such fiscal years.

(7) PRO RATA APPLICATION.—The rates per $1,000,000 required by this subsection shall be applied pro rata to amounts and balances of less than $1,000,000.

(8) REVIEW AND EFFECTIVE DATE.—In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall not be required to comply with the provisions of section 553 of title 5. An adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (5) or (6) and published under paragraph (10) shall not be subject to judicial review. Subject to paragraphs (4) and (9)—

(A) an adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (5) shall take effect on the later of—

(i) the first day of the fiscal year to which such rate applies; or

(ii) five days after the date on which a regular appropriation to the Commission for such fiscal year is enacted; and

(B) an adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (6) shall take effect on the later of—

(i) the first day of fiscal year 2012; or

(ii) five days after the date on which a regular appropriation to the Commission for fiscal year 2012 is enacted.

(9) LAPSE OF APPROPRIATION.—If on the first day of a fiscal year a regular appropriation to the Commission has not been enacted, the Commission shall continue to collect fees (as offsetting collections) under this subsection at the rate in effect during the preceding fiscal year, until 5 days after the date such a regular appropriation is enacted.

(10) PUBLICATION.—The rate applicable under this subsection for each fiscal year is published pursuant to section 6(b)(10) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)(10)].

**(f) Reports by institutional investment managers**

(1) Every institutional investment manager which uses the mails, or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in the course of its business as an institutional investment manager and which exercises investment discretion with respect to accounts holding equity securities of a class described in subsection (d)(1) of this section having an aggregate fair market value on the last trading day in any of the preceding twelve months of at least $100,000,000 or such lesser amount (but in no case less than $10,000,000) as the Commission, by rule, may determine, shall file reports with the Commission in such form, for such periods, and at such times after the end of such periods as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe, but in no event shall such reports be filed for periods longer than one year or shorter than one quarter. Such reports shall include for each such equity security held on the last day of the reporting period by accounts (in aggregate or by type as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe) with respect to which the institutional investment manager exercises investment discretion (other than securities held in amounts which the Commission, by rule, determines to be insignificant for purposes of this subsection), the name of the issuer and the title, class, CUSIP number, number of shares or principal amount, and aggregate fair market value of each such security. Such reports may also include for accounts (in aggregate or by type) with respect to which the institutional investment manager exercises investment discretion such of the following information as the Commission, by rule, prescribes—

(A) the name of the issuer and the title, class, CUSIP number, number of shares or principal amount, and aggregate fair market value or cost or amortized cost of each other security (other than an exempted security) held on the last day of the reporting period by such accounts;

(B) the aggregate fair market value or cost or amortized cost of exempted securities (in aggregate or by class) held on the last day of the reporting period by such accounts;

(C) the number of shares of each equity security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) of this section held on the last day of the reporting period by such accounts with respect to which the institutional investment manager possesses sole or shared authority to exercise the voting rights evidenced by such securities;

(D) the aggregate purchases and aggregate sales during the reporting period of each security (other than an exempted security) effected by or for such accounts; and

(E) with respect to any transaction or series of transactions having a market value of at least $500,000 or such other amount as the Commission, by rule, may determine, effected during the reporting period by or for such accounts in any equity security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) of this section—

(i) the name of the issuer and the title, class, and CUSIP number of the security;

(ii) the number of shares or principal amount of the security involved in the transaction;

(iii) whether the transaction was a purchase or sale;

(iv) the per share price or prices at which the transaction was effected;

(v) the date or dates of the transaction;

(vi) the date or dates of the settlement of the transaction;

(vii) the broker or dealer through whom the transaction was effected;

(viii) the market or markets in which the transaction was effected; and

(ix) such other related information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe.

(2) The Commission, by rule, or order, may exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, any institutional investment manager or security or any class of institutional investment managers or securities from any or all of the provisions of this subsection or the rules thereunder.

(3) The Commission shall make available to the public for a reasonable fee a list of all equity securities of a class described in subsection (d)(1) of this section, updated no less frequently than reports are required to be filed pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection. The Commission shall tabulate the information contained in any report filed pursuant to this subsection in a manner which will, in the view of the Commission, maximize the usefulness of the information to other Federal and State authorities and the public. Promptly after the filing of any such report, the Commission shall make the information contained therein conveniently available to the public for a reasonable fee in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe, except that the Commission, as it determines to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may delay or prevent public disclosure of any such information in accordance with section 552 of title 5. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, any such information identifying the securities held by the account of a natural person or an estate or trust (other than a business trust or investment company) shall not be disclosed to the public.

(4) In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall determine (and so state) that its action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors or to maintain fair and orderly markets or, in granting an exemption, that its action is consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes of this subsection. In exercising such authority the Commission shall take

such steps as are within its power, including consulting with the Comptroller General of the United States, the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, the appropriate regulatory agencies, Federal and State authorities which, directly or indirectly, require reports from institutional investment managers of information substantially similar to that called for by this subsection, national securities exchanges, and registered securities associations, (A) to achieve uniform, centralized reporting of information concerning the securities holdings of and transactions by or for accounts with respect to which institutional investment managers exercise investment discretion, and (B) consistently with the objective set forth in the preceding subparagraph, to avoid unnecessarily duplicative reporting by, and minimize the compliance burden on, institutional investment managers. Federal authorities which, directly or indirectly, require reports from institutional investment managers of information substantially similar to that called for by this subsection shall cooperate with the Commission in the performance of its responsibilities under the preceding sentence. An institutional investment manager which is a bank, the deposits of which are insured in accordance with the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1811 et seq.], shall file with the appropriate regulatory agency a copy of every report filed with the Commission pursuant to this subsection.

(5)(A) For purposes of this subsection the term ''institutional investment manager'' includes any person, other than a natural person, investing in or buying and selling securities for its own account, and any person exercising investment discretion with respect to the account of any other person.

(B) The Commission shall adopt such rules as it deems necessary or appropriate to prevent duplicative reporting pursuant to this subsection by two or more institutional investment managers exercising investment discretion with respect to the same amount.[1]

**(g) Statement of equity security ownership**

(1) Any person who is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 5 per centum of any security of a class described in subsection (d)(1) of this section shall send to the issuer of the security and shall file with the Commission a statement setting forth, in such form and at such time as the Commission may, by rule, prescribe—

(A) such person's identity, residence, and citizenship; and

(B) the number and description of the shares in which such person has an interest and the nature of such interest.

(2) If any material change occurs in the facts set forth in the statement sent to the issuer and filed with the Commission, an amendment shall be transmitted to the issuer and shall be filed with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3) When two or more persons act as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate, or other group for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or disposing of securities of an issuer, such syndicate or group shall be deemed a ''person'' for the purposes of this subsection.

(4) In determining, for purposes of this subsection, any percentage of a class of any security, such class shall be deemed to consist of the amount of the outstanding securities of such class, exclusive of any securities of such class held by or for the account of the issuer or a subsidiary of the issuer.

(5) In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall take such steps as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors (A) to achieve centralized reporting of information regarding ownership, (B) to avoid unnecessarily duplicative reporting by and minimize the compliance burden on persons required to report, and (C) to tabulate and promptly make available the information contained in any report filed pursuant to this subsection in a manner which will, in the view of the Commission, maximize the usefulness of the information to other Federal and State agencies and the public.

(6) The Commission may, by rule or order, exempt, in whole or in part, any person or class of persons from any or all of the reporting requirements of this subsection as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(h) Large trader reporting**

**(1) Identification requirements for large traders**

For the purpose of monitoring the impact on the securities markets of securities transactions involving a substantial volume or a large fair market value or exercise value and for the purpose of otherwise assisting the Commission in the enforcement of this chapter, each large trader shall—

(A) provide such information to the Commission as the Commission may by rule or regulation prescribe as necessary or appropriate, identifying such large trader and all accounts in or through which such large trader effects such transactions; and

(B) identify, in accordance with such rules or regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate, to any registered broker or dealer by or through whom such large trader directly or indirectly effects securities transactions, such large trader and all accounts directly or indirectly maintained with such broker or dealer by such large trader in or through which such transactions are effected.

**(2) Recordkeeping and reporting requirements for brokers and dealers**

Every registered broker or dealer shall make and keep for prescribed periods such records as the Commission by rule or regulation prescribes as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, with respect to securities transactions that equal or exceed the reporting activity level effected directly or indirectly by or through such registered broker or dealer of

[1] So in original. Probably should be ''account.''

or for any person that such broker or dealer knows is a large trader, or any person that such broker or dealer has reason to know is a large trader on the basis of transactions in securities effected by or through such broker or dealer. Such records shall be available for reporting to the Commission, or any self-regulatory organization that the Commission shall designate to receive such reports, on the morning of the day following the day the transactions were effected, and shall be reported to the Commission or a self-regulatory organization designated by the Commission immediately upon request by the Commission or such a self-regulatory organization. Such records and reports shall be in a format and transmitted in a manner prescribed by the Commission (including, but not limited to, machine readable form).

**(3) Aggregation rules**

The Commission may prescribe rules or regulations governing the manner in which transactions and accounts shall be aggregated for the purpose of this subsection, including aggregation on the basis of common ownership or control.

**(4) Examination of broker and dealer records**

All records required to be made and kept by registered brokers and dealers pursuant to this subsection with respect to transactions effected by large traders are subject at any time, or from time to time, to such reasonable periodic, special, or other examinations by representatives of the Commission as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

**(5) Factors to be considered in Commission actions**

In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall take into account—

(A) existing reporting systems;

(B) the costs associated with maintaining information with respect to transactions effected by large traders and reporting such information to the Commission or self-regulatory organizations; and

(C) the relationship between the United States and international securities markets.

**(6) Exemptions**

The Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, consistent with the purposes of this chapter, may exempt any person or class of persons or any transaction or class of transactions, either conditionally or upon specified terms and conditions or for stated periods, from the operation of this subsection, and the rules and regulations thereunder.

**(7) Authority of Commission to limit disclosure of information**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be kept or reported under this subsection. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

**(8) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection—

(A) the term ''large trader'' means every person who, for his own account or an account for which he exercises investment discretion, effects transactions for the purchase or sale of any publicly traded security or securities by use of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of the mails, or of any facility of a national securities exchange, directly or indirectly by or through a registered broker or dealer in an aggregate amount equal to or in excess of the identifying activity level;

(B) the term ''publicly traded security'' means any equity security (including an option on individual equity securities, and an option on a group or index of such securities) listed, or admitted to unlisted trading privileges, on a national securities exchange, or quoted in an automated interdealer quotation system;

(C) the term ''identifying activity level'' means transactions in publicly traded securities at or above a level of volume, fair market value, or exercise value as shall be fixed from time to time by the Commission by rule or regulation, specifying the time interval during which such transactions shall be aggregated;

(D) the term ''reporting activity level'' means transactions in publicly traded securities at or above a level of volume, fair market value, or exercise value as shall be fixed from time to time by the Commission by rule, regulation, or order, specifying the time interval during which such transactions shall be aggregated; and

(E) the term ''person'' has the meaning given in section 78c(a)(9) of this title and also includes two or more persons acting as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate, or other group, but does not include a foreign central bank.

**(i) Accuracy of financial reports**

Each financial report that contains financial statements, and that is required to be prepared in accordance with (or reconciled to) generally accepted accounting principles under this chapter and filed with the Commission shall reflect all material correcting adjustments that have been identified by a registered public accounting firm in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and the rules and regulations of the Commission.

**(j) Off-balance sheet transactions**

Not later than 180 days after July 30, 2002, the Commission shall issue final rules providing that each annual and quarterly financial report

required to be filed with the Commission shall disclose all material off-balance sheet transactions, arrangements, obligations (including contingent obligations), and other relationships of the issuer with unconsolidated entities or other persons, that may have a material current or future effect on financial condition, changes in financial condition, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures, capital resources, or significant components of revenues or expenses.

**(k) Prohibition on personal loans to executives**

**(1) In general**

It shall be unlawful for any issuer (as defined in section 7201 of this title), directly or indirectly, including through any subsidiary, to extend or maintain credit, to arrange for the extension of credit, or to renew an extension of credit, in the form of a personal loan to or for any director or executive officer (or equivalent thereof) of that issuer. An extension of credit maintained by the issuer on July 30, 2002, shall not be subject to the provisions of this subsection, provided that there is no material modification to any term of any such extension of credit or any renewal of any such extension of credit on or after July 30, 2002.

**(2) Limitation**

Paragraph (1) does not preclude any home improvement and manufactured home loans (as that term is defined in section 1464 of title 12), consumer credit (as defined in section 1602 of this title), or any extension of credit under an open end credit plan (as defined in section 1602 of this title), or a charge card (as defined in section 1637(c)(4)(e) of this title), or any extension of credit by a broker or dealer registered under section 78*o* of this title to an employee of that broker or dealer to buy, trade, or carry securities, that is permitted under rules or regulations of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System pursuant to section 78g of this title (other than an extension of credit that would be used to purchase the stock of that issuer), that is—

(A) made or provided in the ordinary course of the consumer credit business of such issuer;

(B) of a type that is generally made available by such issuer to the public; and

(C) made by such issuer on market terms, or terms that are no more favorable than those offered by the issuer to the general public for such extensions of credit.

**(3) Rule of construction for certain loans**

Paragraph (1) does not apply to any loan made or maintained by an insured depository institution (as defined in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813)), if the loan is subject to the insider lending restrictions of section 375b of title 12.

**(*l*) Real time issuer disclosures**

Each issuer reporting under subsec. (a) of this section or section 78*o*(d) of this title shall disclose to the public on a rapid and current basis such additional information concerning material changes in the financial condition or operations of the issuer, in plain English, which may include trend and qualitative information and graphic presentations, as the Commission determines, by rule, is necessary or useful for the protection of investors and in the public interest.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 13, 48 Stat. 894; Pub. L. 88–467, § 4, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 569; Pub. L. 90–439, § 2, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 454; Pub. L. 91–567, §§ 1, 2, Dec. 22, 1970, 84 Stat. 1497; Pub. L. 94–29, § 10, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 119; Pub. L. 94–210, title III, § 308(b), Feb. 5, 1976, 90 Stat. 57; Pub. L. 95–213, title I, § 102, title II, §§ 202, 203, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1494, 1498, 1499; Pub. L. 98–38, § 2(a), June 6, 1983, 97 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§ 315, 316, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256; Pub. L. 100–241, § 12(d), Feb. 3, 1988, 101 Stat. 1810; Pub. L. 100–418, title V, § 5002, Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1415; Pub. L. 101–432, § 3, Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 964; Pub. L. 107–123, § 5, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2395; Pub. L. 107–204, title I, § 109(h), title IV, §§ 401(a), 402(a), 409, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 771, 785, 787, 791.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1), (h)(1), (2), (4), (6), and (i), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsecs. (d)(1) and (e)(1), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (d)(6)(A), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Federal Deposit Insurance Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(4), is act Sept. 21, 1950, ch. 967, § 2, 64 Stat. 873, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 16 (§ 1811 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1811 of Title 12 and Tables.

Section 7201 of this title, referred to in subsec. (k)(1), was in the original ''section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002'', Pub. L. 107–204, which enacted section 7201 of this title and amended section 78c of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 107–204, § 109(h), added subpar. (C).

Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 107–123, § 5(1), substituted ''a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraphs (5) and (6), is equal to $92 per $1,000,000 of the value of securities proposed to be purchased'' for ''a fee of 1/50 of 1 per centum of the value of securities proposed to be purchased''.

Subsec. (e)(4) to (10). Pub. L. 107–123, § 5(2), added pars. (4) to (10).

Subsecs. (i), (j). Pub. L. 107–204, § 401(a), added subsecs. (i) and (j).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 107–204, § 402(a), added subsec. (k).

Subsec. (*l*). Pub. L. 107–204, § 409, added subsec. (*l*).

1990—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101–432 added subsec. (h).

1988—Subsec. (b)(4) to (7). Pub. L. 100–418 added pars. (4) to (7).

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 100–241 inserted ''or any equity security issued by a Native Corporation pursuant to section 1629c(d)(6) of title 43''.

1987—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–181, § 315, struck out ''of'' after ''thereof''.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 100–181, § 316, struck out subsec. (h) which required Commission to report to Congress within thirty months of Dec. 19, 1977, with respect to ef-

fectiveness of ownership reporting requirements contained in this chapter and desirability and feasibility of reducing or otherwise modifying the 5 per centum threshold used in subsecs. (d)(1) and (g)(1) of this section.

1983—Subsec. (e)(3). Pub. L. 98–38 added par. (3).

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95–213, § 102, designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 95–213, § 202, inserted references to residence and citizenship of persons and to nature of beneficial ownership of persons in subpar. (A), and inserted references to background, identity, residence, and citizenship of associates of persons in subpar. (D).

Subsecs. (g), (h). Pub. L. 95–213, § 203, added subsecs. (g) and (h).

1976—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–210 substituted provisions relating to exceptions for inconsistent rules and regulations, for provisions relating to reporting requirements for carriers subject to the provisions of section 20 of title 49, or other carriers required to make reports of the same general character as those required under section 20 of title 49.

1975—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsec. (f).

1970—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 91–567, § 1(a), included equity securities of insurance companies which would have been required to be registered except for the exemption contained in section 78*l*(g)(2)(G) of this title, and substituted ''5 per centum'' for ''10 per centum''.

Subsec. (d)(5), (6). Pub. L. 91–567, § 1(b), added par. (5) and redesignated former par. (5) as (6).

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 91–567, § 2, inserted provisions empowering the Commission to make rules and regulations implementing the paragraph in the public interest and for the protection of investors.

1968—Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 90–439 added subsecs. (d) and (e).

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88–467 substituted provisions which require the issuer of a security registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title to file reports with the Commission rather than with the exchange and to furnish the exchange with duplicate originals and prohibit the Commission from requiring the filing of any material contract wholly executed before July 1, 1962 for former provisions which required the issuer of a security registered on a national securities exchange to file certain reports with the exchange and to file duplicates with the Commission.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–123 effective Oct. 1, 2001, except that authorities provided by subsec. (e)(9) of this section to not apply until Oct. 1, 2002, see section 11 of Pub. L. 107–123, set out as a note under section 78ee of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–210 not applicable to any report by any person with respect to a fiscal year of such person which began before Feb. 5, 1976, see section 308(d)(2) of Pub. L. 94–210, set out as a note under section 80a–3 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

CONSULTATION

Pub. L. 106–102, title II, § 241, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1407, provided that:

''(a) IN GENERAL.—The Securities and Exchange Commission shall consult and coordinate comments with the appropriate Federal banking agency before taking any action or rendering any opinion with respect to the manner in which any insured depository institution or depository institution holding company reports loan loss reserves in its financial statement, including the amount of any such loan loss reserve.

''(b) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of subsection (a), the terms 'insured depository institution', 'depository institution holding company', and 'appropriate Federal banking agency' have the same meaning as given in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1813].''

## § 78n. Proxies

### (a) Solicitation of proxies in violation of rules and regulations

It shall be unlawful for any person, by the use of the mails or by any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of any facility of a national securities exchange or otherwise, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to solicit or to permit the use of his name to solicit any proxy or consent or authorization in respect of any security (other than an exempted security) registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title.

### (b) Giving or refraining from giving proxy in respect of any security carried for account of customer

(1) It shall be unlawful for any member of a national securities exchange, or any broker or dealer registered under this chapter, or any bank, association, or other entity that exercises fiduciary powers, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to give, or to refrain from giving a proxy, consent, authorization, or information statement in respect of any security registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, or any security issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], and carried for the account of a customer.

(2) With respect to banks, the rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission under paragraph (1) shall not require the disclosure of the names of beneficial owners of securities in an account held by the bank on December 28, 1985, unless the beneficial owner consents to the disclosure. The provisions of this paragraph shall not apply in the case of a bank which the Commission finds has not made a good faith effort to obtain such consent from such beneficial owners.

### (c) Information to holders of record prior to annual or other meeting

Unless proxies, consents, or authorizations in respect of a security registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, or a security issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], are solicited by or on behalf of the management of the issuer from the holders of record of such security in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed under subsection (a) of this section, prior to any annual or other

meeting of the holders of such security, such issuer shall, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission, file with the Commission and transmit to all holders of record of such security information substantially equivalent to the information which would be required to be transmitted if a solicitation were made, but no information shall be required to be filed or transmitted pursuant to this subsection before July 1, 1964.

**(d) Tender offer by owner of more than five per centum of class of securities; exceptions**

(1) It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, by use of the mails or by any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or of any facility of a national securities exchange or otherwise, to make a tender offer for, or a request or invitation for tenders of, any class of any equity security which is registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, or any equity security of an insurance company which would have been required to be so registered except for the exemption contained in section 78*l*(g)(2)(G) of this title, or any equity security issued by a a closed-end investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], if, after consummation thereof, such person would, directly or indirectly, be the beneficial owner of more than 5 per centum of such class, unless at the time copies of the offer or request or invitation are first published or sent or given to security holders such person has filed with the Commission a statement containing such of the information specified in section 78m(d) of this title, and such additional information as the Commission may by rules and regulations prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. All requests or invitations for tenders or advertisements making a tender offer or requesting or inviting tenders of such a security shall be filed as a part of such statement and shall contain such of the information contained in such statement as the Commission may by rules and regulations prescribe. Copies of any additional material soliciting or requesting such tender offers subsequent to the initial solicitation or request shall contain such information as the Commission may by rules and regulations prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, and shall be filed with the Commission not later than the time copies of such material are first published or sent or given to security holders. Copies of all statements, in the form in which such material is furnished to security holders and the Commission, shall be sent to the issuer not later than the date such material is first published or sent or given to any security holders.

(2) When two or more persons act as a partnership, limited partnership, syndicate, or other group for the purpose of acquiring, holding, or disposing of securities of an issuer, such syndicate or group shall be deemed a ''person'' for purposes of this subsection.

(3) In determining, for purposes of this subsection, any percentage of a class of any security, such class shall be deemed to consist of the amount of the outstanding securities of such class, exclusive of any securities of such class held by or for the account of the issuer or a subsidiary of the issuer.

(4) Any solicitation or recommendation to the holders of such a security to accept or reject a tender offer or request or invitation for tenders shall be made in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(5) Securities deposited pursuant to a tender offer or request or invitation for tenders may be withdrawn by or on behalf of the depositor at any time until the expiration of seven days after the time definitive copies of the offer or request or invitation are first published or sent or given to security holders, and at any time after sixty days from the date of the original tender offer or request or invitation, except as the Commission may otherwise prescribe by rules, regulations, or order as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(6) Where any person makes a tender offer, or request or invitation for tenders, for less than all the outstanding equity securities of a class, and where a greater number of securities is deposited pursuant thereto within ten days after copies of the offer or request or invitation are first published or sent or given to security holders than such person is bound or willing to take up and pay for, the securities taken up shall be taken up as nearly as may be pro rata, disregarding fractions, according to the number of securities deposited by each depositor. The provisions of this subsection shall also apply to securities deposited within ten days after notice of an increase in the consideration offered to security holders, as described in paragraph (7), is first published or sent or given to security holders.

(7) Where any person varies the terms of a tender offer or request or invitation for tenders before the expiration thereof by increasing the consideration offered to holders of such securities, such person shall pay the increased consideration to each security holder whose securities are taken up and paid for pursuant to the tender offer or request or invitation for tenders whether or not such securities have been taken up by such person before the variation of the tender offer or request or invitation.

(8) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to any offer for, or request or invitation for tenders of, any security—

(A) if the acquisition of such security, together with all other acquisitions by the same person of securities of the same class during the preceding twelve months, would not exceed 2 per centum of that class;

(B) by the issuer of such security; or

(C) which the Commission, by rules or regulations or by order, shall exempt from the provisions of this subsection as not entered into for the purpose of, and not having the effect of, changing or influencing the control of the issuer or otherwise as not comprehended within the purposes of this subsection.

**(e) Untrue statement of material fact or omission of fact with respect to tender offer**

It shall be unlawful for any person to make any untrue statement of a material fact or omit

to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements made, in the light of the circumstances under which they are made, not misleading, or to engage in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative acts or practices, in connection with any tender offer or request or invitation for tenders, or any solicitation of security holders in opposition to or in favor of any such offer, request, or invitation. The Commission shall, for the purposes of this subsection, by rules and regulations define, and prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent, such acts and practices as are fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative.

**(f) Election or designation of majority of directors of issuer by owner of more than five per centum of class of securities at other than meeting of security holders**

If, pursuant to any arrangement or understanding with the person or persons acquiring securities in a transaction subject to subsection (d) of this section or subsection (d) of section 78m of this title, any persons are to be elected or designated as directors of the issuer, otherwise than at a meeting of security holders, and the persons so elected or designated will constitute a majority of the directors of the issuer, then, prior to the time any such person takes office as a director, and in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission, the issuer shall file with the Commission, and transmit to all holders of record of securities of the issuer who would be entitled to vote at a meeting for election of directors, information substantially equivalent to the information which would be required by subsection (a) or (c) of this section to be transmitted if such person or persons were nominees for election as directors at a meeting of such security holders.

**(g) Filing fees**

(1)(A) At the time of filing such preliminary proxy solicitation material as the Commission may require by rule pursuant to subsection (a) of this section that concerns an acquisition, merger, consolidation, or proposed sale or other disposition of substantially all the assets of a company, the person making such filing, other than a company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], shall pay to the Commission the following fees:

(i) for preliminary proxy solicitation material involving an acquisition, merger, or consolidation, if there is a proposed payment of cash or transfer of securities or property to shareholders, a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraphs (5) and (6), is equal to $92 per $1,000,000 of such proposed payment, or of the value of such securities or other property proposed to be transferred; and

(ii) for preliminary proxy solicitation material involving a proposed sale or other disposition of substantially all of the assets of a company, a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraphs (5) and (6), is equal to $92 per $1,000,000 of the cash or of the value of any securities or other property proposed to be received upon such sale or disposition.

(B) The fee imposed under subparagraph (A) shall be reduced with respect to securities in an amount equal to any fee paid to the Commission with respect to such securities in connection with the proposed transaction under section 77f(b) of this title, or the fee paid under that section shall be reduced in an amount equal to the fee paid to the Commission in connection with such transaction under this subsection. Where two or more companies involved in an acquisition, merger, consolidation, sale, or other disposition of substantially all the assets of a company must file such proxy material with the Commission, each shall pay a proportionate share of such fee.

(2) At the time of filing such preliminary information statement as the Commission may require by rule pursuant to subsection (c) of this section, the issuer shall pay to the Commission the same fee as required for preliminary proxy solicitation material under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(3) At the time of filing such statement as the Commission may require by rule pursuant to subsection (d)(1) of this section, the person making the filing shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraphs (5) and (6), is equal to $92 per $1,000,000 of the aggregate amount of cash or of the value of securities or other property proposed to be offered. The fee shall be reduced with respect to securities in an amount equal to any fee paid with respect to such securities in connection with the proposed transaction under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77f(b)), or the fee paid under that section shall be reduced in an amount equal to the fee paid to the Commission in connection with such transaction under this subsection.

(4) OFFSETTING COLLECTIONS.—Fees collected pursuant to this subsection for any fiscal year shall be deposited and credited as offsetting collections to the account providing appropriations to the Commission, and, except as provided in paragraph (9), shall not be collected for any fiscal year except to the extent provided in advance in appropriation Acts. No fees collected pursuant to this subsection for fiscal year 2002 or any succeeding fiscal year shall be deposited and credited as general revenue of the Treasury.

(5) ANNUAL ADJUSTMENT.—For each of the fiscal years 2003 through 2011, the Commission shall by order adjust each of the rates required by paragraphs (1) and (3) for such fiscal year to a rate that is equal to the rate (expressed in dollars per million) that is applicable under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)] for such fiscal year.

(6) FINAL RATE ADJUSTMENT.—For fiscal year 2012 and all of the succeeding fiscal years, the Commission shall by order adjust each of the rates required by paragraphs (1) and (3) for all of such fiscal years to a rate that is equal to the rate (expressed in dollars per million) that is applicable under section 6(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)] for all of such fiscal years.

(7) PRO RATA APPLICATION.—The rates per $1,000,000 required by this subsection shall be applied pro rata to amounts and balances of less than $1,000,000.

(8) REVIEW AND EFFECTIVE DATE.—In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commis-

sion shall not be required to comply with the provisions of section 553 of title 5. An adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (5) or (6) and published under paragraph (10) shall not be subject to judicial review. Subject to paragraphs (4) and (9)—

(A) an adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (5) shall take effect on the later of—

(i) the first day of the fiscal year to which such rate applies; or

(ii) five days after the date on which a regular appropriation to the Commission for such fiscal year is enacted; and

(B) an adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (6) shall take effect on the later of—

(i) the first day of fiscal year 2012; or

(ii) five days after the date on which a regular appropriation to the Commission for fiscal year 2012 is enacted.

(9) LAPSE OF APPROPRIATION.—If on the first day of a fiscal year a regular appropriation to the Commission has not been enacted, the Commission shall continue to collect fees (as offsetting collections) under this subsection at the rate in effect during the preceding fiscal year, until 5 days after the date such a regular appropriation is enacted.

(10) PUBLICATION.—The rate applicable under this subsection for each fiscal year is published pursuant to section 6(b)(10) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)(10)].

(11) Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission may impose fees, charges, or prices for matters not involving any acquisition, merger, consolidation, sale, or other disposition of assets described in this subsection, as authorized by section 9701 of title 31, or otherwise.

**(h) Proxy solicitations and tender offers in connection with limited partnership rollup transactions**

**(1) Proxy rules to contain special provisions**

It shall be unlawful for any person to solicit any proxy, consent, or authorization concerning a limited partnership rollup transaction, or to make any tender offer in furtherance of a limited partnership rollup transaction, unless such transaction is conducted in accordance with rules prescribed by the Commission under subsections (a) and (d) of this section as required by this subsection. Such rules shall—

(A) permit any holder of a security that is the subject of the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction to engage in preliminary communications for the purpose of determining whether to solicit proxies, consents, or authorizations in opposition to the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction, without regard to whether any such communication would otherwise be considered a solicitation of proxies, and without being required to file soliciting material with the Commission prior to making that determination, except that—

(i) nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to limit the application of any provision of this chapter prohibiting, or reasonably designed to prevent, fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative acts or practices under this chapter; and

(ii) any holder of not less than 5 percent of the outstanding securities that are the subject of the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction who engages in the business of buying and selling limited partnership interests in the secondary market shall be required to disclose such ownership interests and any potential conflicts of interests in such preliminary communications;

(B) require the issuer to provide to holders of the securities that are the subject of the limited partnership rollup transaction such list of the holders of the issuer's securities as the Commission may determine in such form and subject to such terms and conditions as the Commission may specify;

(C) prohibit compensating any person soliciting proxies, consents, or authorizations directly from security holders concerning such a limited partnership rollup transaction—

(i) on the basis of whether the solicited proxy, consent, or authorization either approves or disapproves the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction; or

(ii) contingent on the approval, disapproval, or completion of the limited partnership rollup transaction;

(D) set forth disclosure requirements for soliciting material distributed in connection with a limited partnership rollup transaction, including requirements for clear, concise, and comprehensible disclosure with respect to—

(i) any changes in the business plan, voting rights, form of ownership interest, or the compensation of the general partner in the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction from each of the original limited partnerships;

(ii) the conflicts of interest, if any, of the general partner;

(iii) whether it is expected that there will be a significant difference between the exchange values of the limited partnerships and the trading price of the securities to be issued in the limited partnership rollup transaction;

(iv) the valuation of the limited partnerships and the method used to determine the value of the interests of the limited partners to be exchanged for the securities in the limited partnership rollup transaction;

(v) the differing risks and effects of the limited partnership rollup transaction for investors in different limited partnerships proposed to be included, and the risks and effects of completing the limited partnership rollup transaction with less than all limited partnerships;

(vi) the statement by the general partner required under subparagraph (E);

(vii) such other matters deemed necessary or appropriate by the Commission;

(E) require a statement by the general partner as to whether the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction is fair or unfair to investors in each limited partnership,

a discussion of the basis for that conclusion, and an evaluation and a description by the general partner of alternatives to the limited partnership rollup transaction, such as liquidation;

(F) provide that, if the general partner or sponsor has obtained any opinion (other than an opinion of counsel), appraisal, or report that is prepared by an outside party and that is materially related to the limited partnership rollup transaction, such soliciting materials shall contain or be accompanied by clear, concise, and comprehensible disclosure with respect to—

(i) the analysis of the transaction, scope of review, preparation of the opinion, and basis for and methods of arriving at conclusions, and any representations and undertakings with respect thereto;

(ii) the identity and qualifications of the person who prepared the opinion, the method of selection of such person, and any material past, existing, or contemplated relationships between the person or any of its affiliates and the general partner, sponsor, successor, or any other affiliate;

(iii) any compensation of the preparer of such opinion, appraisal, or report that is contingent on the transaction's approval or completion; and

(iv) any limitations imposed by the issuer on the access afforded to such preparer to the issuer's personnel, premises, and relevant books and records;

(G) provide that, if the general partner or sponsor has obtained any opinion, appraisal, or report as described in subparagraph (F) from any person whose compensation is contingent on the transaction's approval or completion or who has not been given access by the issuer to its personnel and premises and relevant books and records, the general partner or sponsor shall state the reasons therefor;

(H) provide that, if the general partner or sponsor has not obtained any opinion on the fairness of the proposed limited partnership rollup transaction to investors in each of the affected partnerships, such soliciting materials shall contain or be accompanied by a statement of such partner's or sponsor's reasons for concluding that such an opinion is not necessary in order to permit the limited partners to make an informed decision on the proposed transaction;

(I) require that the soliciting material include a clear, concise, and comprehensible summary of the limited partnership rollup transaction (including a summary of the matters referred to in clauses (i) through (vii) of subparagraph (D) and a summary of the matter referred to in subparagraphs (F), (G), and (H)), with the risks of the limited partnership rollup transaction set forth prominently in the fore part thereof;

(J) provide that any solicitation or offering period with respect to any proxy solicitation, tender offer, or information statement in a limited partnership rollup transaction shall be for not less than the lesser of 60 calendar days or the maximum number of days permitted under applicable State law; and

(K) contain such other provisions as the Commission determines to be necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors in limited partnership rollup transactions.

**(2) Exemptions**

The Commission may, consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this chapter, exempt by rule or order any security or class of securities, any transaction or class of transactions, or any person or class of persons, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, from the requirements imposed pursuant to paragraph (1) or from the definition contained in paragraph (4).

**(3) Effect on Commission authority**

Nothing in this subsection limits the authority of the Commission under subsection (a) or (d) of this section or any other provision of this chapter or precludes the Commission from imposing, under subsection (a) or (d) of this section or any other provision of this chapter, a remedy or procedure required to be imposed under this subsection.

**(4) "Limited partnership rollup transaction" defined**

Except as provided in paragraph (5), as used in this subsection, the term ''limited partnership rollup transaction'' means a transaction involving the combination or reorganization of one or more limited partnerships, directly or indirectly, in which—

(A) some or all of the investors in any of such limited partnerships will receive new securities, or securities in another entity, that will be reported under a transaction reporting plan declared effective before December 17, 1993, by the Commission under section 78k–1 of this title;

(B) any of the investors' limited partnership securities are not, as of the date of filing, reported under a transaction reporting plan declared effective before December 17, 1993, by the Commission under section 78k–1 of this title;

(C) investors in any of the limited partnerships involved in the transaction are subject to a significant adverse change with respect to voting rights, the term of existence of the entity, management compensation, or investment objectives; and

(D) any of such investors are not provided an option to receive or retain a security under substantially the same terms and conditions as the original issue.

**(5) Exclusions from definition**

Notwithstanding paragraph (4), the term ''limited partnership rollup transaction'' does not include—

(A) a transaction that involves only a limited partnership or partnerships having an operating policy or practice of retaining cash available for distribution and reinvesting proceeds from the sale, financing, or refinancing of assets in accordance with such

criteria as the Commission determines appropriate;

(B) a transaction involving only limited partnerships wherein the interests of the limited partners are repurchased, recalled, or exchanged in accordance with the terms of the preexisting limited partnership agreements for securities in an operating company specifically identified at the time of the formation of the original limited partnership;

(C) a transaction in which the securities to be issued or exchanged are not required to be and are not registered under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.];

(D) a transaction that involves only issuers that are not required to register or report under section 78*l* of this title, both before and after the transaction;

(E) a transaction, except as the Commission may otherwise provide by rule for the protection of investors, involving the combination or reorganization of one or more limited partnerships in which a non-affiliated party succeeds to the interests of a general partner or sponsor, if—

(i) such action is approved by not less than 66⅔ percent of the outstanding units of each of the participating limited partnerships; and

(ii) as a result of the transaction, the existing general partners will receive only compensation to which they are entitled as expressly provided for in the preexisting limited partnership agreements; or

(F) a transaction, except as the Commission may otherwise provide by rule for the protection of investors, in which the securities offered to investors are securities of another entity that are reported under a transaction reporting plan declared effective before December 17, 1993, by the Commission under section 78k–1 of this title, if—

(i) such other entity was formed, and such class of securities was reported and regularly traded, not less than 12 months before the date on which soliciting material is mailed to investors; and

(ii) the securities of that entity issued to investors in the transaction do not exceed 20 percent of the total outstanding securities of the entity, exclusive of any securities of such class held by or for the account of the entity or a subsidiary of the entity.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 14, 48 Stat. 895; Pub. L. 88–467, § 5, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 569; Pub. L. 90–439, § 3, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 455; Pub. L. 91–567, §§ 3–5, Dec. 22, 1970, 84 Stat. 1497; Pub. L. 98–38, § 2(b), June 6, 1983, 97 Stat. 205; Pub. L. 99–222, § 2, Dec. 28, 1985, 99 Stat. 1737; Pub. L. 101–550, title III, § 302, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2721; Pub. L. 103–202, title III, § 302(a), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2359; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, § 301(b)(7), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 107–123, § 6, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2396.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (h)(1)(A), (2), (3), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsecs. (b)(1), (c), (d)(1), and (g)(1)(A), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (h)(5)(C), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (g)(1)(A)(i), (ii), (3). Pub. L. 107–123, § 6(1), substituted ''a fee at a rate that, subject to paragraphs (5) and (6), is equal to $92 per $1,000,000 of'' for ''a fee of 1/50 of 1 per centum of''.

Subsec. (g)(4) to (11). Pub. L. 107–123, § 6(2), (3), added pars. (4) to (10) and redesignated former par. (4) as (11).

1998—Subsec. (g)(4). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted ''consolidation, sale,'' for ''consolidation sale,''.

1993—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 103–202 added subsec. (h).

1990—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 101–550, § 302(a), substituted ''section 78*l* of this title, or any security issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940,'' for ''section 78*l* of this title'' and ''authorization, or information statement'' for ''or authorization''.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 101–550, § 302(b), substituted ''title, or a security issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940,'' for ''title''.

1985—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 99–222 designated existing provision as par. (1), inserted ''or any bank, association, or other entity that exercises fiduciary powers,'' after ''under this chapter,'', and added par. (2).

1983—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 98–38 added subsec. (g).

1970—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 91–567, § 3, included equity securities of an insurance company which would have been required to be registered except for the exemption contained in section 78*l*(g)(2)(G) of this title, and substituted ''5 per centum'' for ''10 per centum''.

Subsec. (d)(8). Pub. L. 91–567, § 4, struck out cl. (A) which excluded offers for, or invitations for tenders of, securities proposed to be made by means of a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933, and redesignated cls. (B) to (D) as (A) to (C), respectively.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 91–567, § 5, inserted provisions requiring the Commission, for the purposes of the subsection, by rules and regulations to define, and prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent, such acts and practices as are fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative.

1968—Subsecs. (d) to (f). Pub. L. 90–439 added subsecs. (d) to (f).

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88–467, § 5(a), substituted provisions which make it unlawful for any person, in contravention of the Commission's rules and regulations, to solicit, or to permit the use of his name to solicit, proxies in respect of any security registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title for former provisions which limited the Commission's rulemaking authority to proxies relating to securities listed and registered on a national securities exchange.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88–467, § 5(b), substituted provisions which make it unlawful for members of a national securities exchange and brokers and dealers registered under this chapter, in contravention of such rules as may be prescribed by the Commission, to give, or to refrain from giving proxies, consents, and other authorizations in respect of any security registered under section 78*l* of this title carried for the account of customers for former provisions which limited the Commission's rulemaking authority only to the giving of proxies in respect to listed securities carried for the account of customers by members of the national securities exchanges and by brokers or dealers who conduct business through the medium of an exchange member,

and deleted the reference to brokers and dealers who transacted business through the medium of an exchange member as being now covered by brokers and dealers registered under this chapter.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88–467, § 5(c), added subsec. (c).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 107–123 effective Oct. 1, 2001, except that authorities provided by subsec. (g)(9) of this section to not apply until Oct. 1, 2002, see section 11 of Pub. L. 107–123, set out as a note under section 78ee of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Section 303 of Pub. L. 101–550 provided that: ''The amendments made by section 302 of this title [amending this section] shall take effect upon the expiration of 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 15, 1990].''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1985 AMENDMENT

Section 3 of Pub. L. 99–222 provided that: ''The amendments made by this Act [amending this section] shall become effective one year after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 28, 1985].''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

REGULATIONS

Section 302(b) of Pub. L. 103–202 provided that: ''The Securities and Exchange Commission shall conduct rulemaking proceedings and prescribe final regulations under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.] to implement the requirements of section 14(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78n(h)], as amended by subsection (a), and such regulations shall become effective not later than 12 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 17, 1993].''

CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–202 not to limit authority of Securities and Exchange Commission, a registered securities association, or a national securities exchange under any provision of this chapter or preclude the Commission or such association or exchange from imposing a remedy or procedure required to be imposed under such amendment, see section 304(b) of Pub. L. 103–202, set out in an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 78f of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

STUDY AND REPORT ON SHAREHOLDER ACCESS TO PROXY STATEMENTS

Pub. L. 104–290, title V, § 510(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3450, provided that:

''(1) STUDY.—The Commission shall conduct a study of—

''(A) whether shareholder access to proxy statements pursuant to section 14 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78n] has been impaired by recent statutory, judicial, or regulatory changes; and

''(B) the ability of shareholders to have proposals relating to corporate practices and social issues included as part of proxy statements.

''(2) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996], the Commission shall submit a report to the Congress on the results of the study conducted under paragraph (1), together with any recommendations for regulatory or legislative changes that it considers necessary to improve shareholder access to proxy statements.''

EVALUATION OF FAIRNESS OPINION PREPARATION, DISCLOSURE, AND USE

Section 302(c) of Pub. L. 103–202 provided that:

''(1) EVALUATION REQUIRED.—The Comptroller General of the United States shall, within 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 17, 1993], conduct a study of—

''(A) the use of fairness opinions in limited partnership rollup transactions;

''(B) the standards which preparers use in making determinations of fairness;

''(C) the scope of review, quality of analysis, qualifications and methods of selection of preparers, costs of preparation, and any limitations imposed by issuers on such preparers;

''(D) the nature and quality of disclosures provided with respect to such opinions;

''(E) any conflicts of interest with respect to the preparation of such opinions; and

''(F) the usefulness of such opinions to limited partners.

''(2) REPORT REQUIRED.—Not later than the end of the 18-month period referred to in paragraph (1), the Comptroller General of the United States shall submit to the Congress a report on the evaluation required by paragraph (1).''

## § 78o. Registration and regulation of brokers and dealers

### (a) Registration of all persons utilizing exchange facilities to effect transactions; exemptions

(1) It shall be unlawful for any broker or dealer which is either a person other than a natural person or a natural person not associated with a broker or dealer which is a person other than a natural person (other than such a broker or dealer whose business is exclusively intrastate and who does not make use of any facility of a national securities exchange) to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transactions in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security or commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) unless such broker or dealer is registered in accordance with subsection (b) of this section.

(2) The Commission, by rule or order, as it deems consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt from paragraph (1) of this subsection any broker or dealer or class of brokers or dealers specified in such rule or order.

### (b) Manner of registration of brokers and dealers

(1) A broker or dealer may be registered by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such broker or dealer and any persons associated with such broker or dealer as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Within forty-five days of the date of the filing of such application (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents), the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred twenty days of the date of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings, the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The order granting registration shall not be effective until such broker or dealer has become a member of a registered securities association, or until such broker or dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange if such broker or dealer effects transactions solely on that exchange, unless the Commission has exempted such broker or dealer, by rule or order, from such membership. The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for up to ninety days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant such registration if the Commission finds that the requirements of this section are satisfied. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such a finding or if it finds that if the applicant were so registered, its registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under paragraph (4) of this subsection.

(2)(A) An application for registration of a broker or dealer to be formed or organized may be made by a broker or dealer to which the broker or dealer to be formed or organized is to be the successor. Such application, in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe, shall contain such information and documents concerning the applicant, the successor, and any persons associated with the applicant or the successor, as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. The grant or denial of registration to such an applicant shall be in accordance with the procedures set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection. If the Commission grants such registration, the registration shall terminate on the forty-fifth day after the effective date thereof, unless prior thereto the successor shall, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe, adopt the application for registration as its own.

(B) Any person who is a broker or dealer solely by reason of acting as a municipal securities dealer or municipal securities broker, who so acts through a separately identifiable department or division, and who so acted in such a manner on June 4, 1975, may, in accordance with such terms and conditions as the Commission, by rule, prescribes as necessary and appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, register such separately identifiable department or division in accordance with this subsection. If any such department or division is so registered, the department or division and not such person himself shall be the broker or dealer for purposes of this chapter.

(C) Within six months of the date of the granting of registration to a broker or dealer, the Commission, or upon the authorization and direction of the Commission, a registered securities association or national securities exchange of which such broker or dealer is a member, shall conduct an inspection of the broker or dealer to determine whether it is operating in conformity with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder: *Provided, however*, That the Commission may delay such inspection of any class of brokers or dealers for a period not to exceed six months.

(3) Any provision of this chapter (other than section 78e of this title and subsection (a) of this section) which prohibits any act, practice, or course of business if the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce is used in connection therewith shall also prohibit any such act, practice, or course of business by any registered broker or dealer or any person acting on behalf of such a broker or dealer, irrespective of any use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in connection therewith.

(4) The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoke the registration of any broker or dealer if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming such, or any person associated with such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming so associated—

(A) has willfully made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with the Commission or with any other appropriate regulatory agency under this chapter, or in any proceeding before the Commission with respect to registration, any statement which was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such application or report any material fact which is required to be stated therein.

(B) has been convicted within ten years preceding the filing of any application for registration or at any time thereafter of any felony or misdemeanor or of a substantially equivalent crime by a foreign court of competent jurisdiction which the Commission finds—

(i) involves the purchase or sale of any security, the taking of a false oath, the making of a false report, bribery, perjury, burglary, any substantially equivalent activity however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government, or conspiracy to commit any such offense;

(ii) arises out of the conduct of the business of a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, investment adviser, bank, insurance company, fiduciary, transfer agent, foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.) or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation;

(iii) involves the larceny, theft, robbery, extortion, forgery, counterfeiting, fraudulent concealment, embezzlement, fraudulent conversion, or misappropriation of funds, or securities, or substantially equivalent activity however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government; or

(iv) involves the violation of section 152, 1341, 1342, or 1343 or chapter 25 or 47 of title 18 or a violation of a substantially equivalent foreign statute.

(C) is permanently or temporarily enjoined by order, judgment, or decree of any court of competent jurisdiction from acting as an investment adviser, underwriter, broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, transfer agent, foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation, or as an affiliated person or employee of any investment company, bank, insurance company, foreign entity substantially equivalent to any of the above, or entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with any such activity, or in connection with the purchase or sale of any security.

(D) has willfully violated any provision of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.], the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], the Commodity Exchange Act, this chapter, the rules or regulations under any of such statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or is unable to comply with any such provision.

(E) has willfully aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured the violation by any other person of any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, the Commodity Exchange Act, this chapter, the rules or regulations under any of such statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or has failed reasonably to supervise, with a view to preventing violations of the provisions of such statutes, rules, and regulations, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision. For the purposes of this subparagraph (E) no person shall be deemed to have failed reasonably to supervise any other person, if—

(i) there have been established procedures, and a system for applying such procedures, which would reasonably be expected to prevent and detect, insofar as practicable, any such violation by such other person, and

(ii) such person has reasonably discharged the duties and obligations incumbent upon him by reason of such procedures and system without reasonable cause to believe that such procedures and system were not being complied with.

(F) is subject to any order of the Commission barring or suspending the right of the person to be associated with a broker or dealer;

(G) has been found by a foreign financial regulatory authority to have—

(i) made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with a foreign financial regulatory authority, or in any proceeding before a foreign financial regulatory authority with respect to registration, any statement that was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any application or report to the foreign financial regulatory authority any material fact that is required to be stated therein;

(ii) violated any foreign statute or regulation regarding transactions in securities, or contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery, traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market or any board of trade;

(iii) aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured the violation by any person of any provision of any statutory provisions enacted by a foreign government, or rules or regulations thereunder, empowering a foreign financial regulatory authority regarding transactions in securities, or contracts of sale of a commodity for future delivery, traded on or subject to the rules of a contract market or any board of trade, or has been found, by a foreign financial regulatory authority, to have failed reasonably to supervise, with a view to preventing violations of such statutory provisions, rules, and regulations, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision; or

(H) is subject to any final order of a State securities commission (or any agency or officer performing like functions), State authority that supervises or examines banks, savings associations, or credit unions, State insurance commission (or any agency or office performing like functions), an appropriate Federal banking agency (as defined in section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(q))), or the National Credit Union Administration, that—

(i) bars such person from association with an entity regulated by such commission, authority, agency, or officer, or from engaging in the business of securities, insurance, banking, savings association activities, or credit union activities; or

(ii) constitutes a final order based on violations of any laws or regulations that prohibit fraudulent, manipulative, or deceptive conduct.

(5) Pending final determination whether any registration under this subsection shall be revoked, the Commission, by order, may suspend such registration, if such suspension appears to the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Any registered broker or dealer may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission

deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any registered broker or dealer is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a broker or dealer, the Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration of such broker or dealer.

(6)(A) With respect to any person who is associated, who is seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, who was associated or was seeking to become associated with a broker or dealer, or any person participating, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, who was participating, in an offering of any penny stock, the Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities or functions of such person, or suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or bar such person from being associated with a broker or dealer, or from participating in an offering of penny stock, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person—

(i) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), or (E) of paragraph (4) of this subsection;

(ii) has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph; or

(iii) is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).

(B) It shall be unlawful—

(i) for any person as to whom an order under subparagraph (A) is in effect, without the consent of the Commission, willfully to become, or to be, associated with a broker or dealer in contravention of such order, or to participate in an offering of penny stock in contravention of such order;

(ii) for any broker or dealer to permit such a person, without the consent of the Commission, to become or remain, a person associated with the broker or dealer in contravention of such order, if such broker or dealer knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order; or

(iii) for any broker or dealer to permit such a person, without the consent of the Commission, to participate in an offering of penny stock in contravention of such order, if such broker or dealer knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order and of such participation.

(C) For purposes of this paragraph, the term ''person participating in an offering of penny stock'' includes any person acting as any promoter, finder, consultant, agent, or other person who engages in activities with a broker, dealer, or issuer for purposes of the issuance or trading in any penny stock, or inducing or attempting to induce the purchase or sale of any penny stock. The Commission may, by rule or regulation, define such term to include other activities, and may, by rule, regulation, or order, exempt any person or class of persons, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, from such term.

(7) No registered broker or dealer or government securities broker or government securities dealer registered (or required to register) under section 78*o*–5(a)(1)(A) of this title shall effect any transaction in, or induce the purchase or sale of, any security unless such broker or dealer meets such standards of operational capability and such broker or dealer and all natural persons associated with such broker or dealer meet such standards of training, experience, competence, and such other qualifications as the Commission finds necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. The Commission shall establish such standards by rules and regulations, which may—

(A) specify that all or any portion of such standards shall be applicable to any class of brokers and dealers and persons associated with brokers and dealers;

(B) require persons in any such class to pass tests prescribed in accordance with such rules and regulations, which tests shall, with respect to any class of partners, officers, or supervisory employees (which latter term may be defined by the Commission's rules and regulations and as so defined shall include branch managers of brokers or dealers) engaged in the management of the broker or dealer, include questions relating to bookkeeping, accounting, internal control over cash and securities, supervision of employees, maintenance of records, and other appropriate matters; and

(C) provide that persons in any such class other than brokers and dealers and partners, officers, and supervisory employees of brokers or dealers, may be qualified solely on the basis of compliance with such standards of training and such other qualifications as the Commission finds appropriate.

The Commission, by rule, may prescribe reasonable fees and charges to defray its costs in carrying out this paragraph, including, but not limited to, fees for any test administered by it or under its direction. The Commission may cooperate with registered securities associations and national securities exchanges in devising and administering tests and may require registered brokers and dealers and persons associated with such brokers and dealers to pass tests administered by or on behalf of any such association or exchange and to pay such association or exchange reasonable fees or charges to defray the costs incurred by such association or exchange in administering such tests.

(8) It shall be unlawful for any registered broker or dealer to effect any transaction in, or induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than or[1] commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills), unless such broker or dealer is a member of a securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3 of this title or effects transactions in securities solely on a national securities exchange of which it is a member.

(9) The Commission by rule or order, as it deems consistent with the public interest and

[1] So in original. The word ''or'' probably should not appear.

the protection of investors, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt from paragraph (8) of this subsection any broker or dealer or class of brokers or dealers specified in such rule or order.

(10) For the purposes of determining whether a person is subject to a statutory disqualification under section 78f(c)(2), 78*o*–3(g)(2), or 78q–1(b)(4)(A) of this title, the term ''Commission'' in paragraph (4)(B) of this subsection shall mean ''exchange'', ''association'', or ''clearing agency'', respectively.

(11) BROKER/DEALER REGISTRATION WITH RESPECT TO TRANSACTIONS IN SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS.—

(A) NOTICE REGISTRATION.—

(i) CONTENTS OF NOTICE.—Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), a broker or dealer required to register only because it effects transactions in security futures products on an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title may register for purposes of this section by filing with the Commission a written notice in such form and containing such information concerning such broker or dealer and any persons associated with such broker or dealer as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. A broker or dealer may not register under this paragraph unless that broker or dealer is a member of a national securities association registered under section 78*o*–3(k) of this title.

(ii) IMMEDIATE EFFECTIVENESS.—Such registration shall be effective contemporaneously with the submission of notice, in written or electronic form, to the Commission, except that such registration shall not be effective if the registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under paragraph (4).

(iii) SUSPENSION.—Such registration shall be suspended immediately if a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title suspends the membership of that broker or dealer.

(iv) TERMINATION.—Such registration shall be terminated immediately if any of the above stated conditions for registration set forth in this paragraph are no longer satisfied.

(B) EXEMPTIONS FOR REGISTERED BROKERS AND DEALERS.—A broker or dealer registered pursuant to the requirements of subparagraph (A) shall be exempt from the following provisions of this chapter and the rules thereunder with respect to transactions in security futures products:

(i) Section 78h of this title.

(ii) Section 78k of this title.

(iii) Subsections (c)(3) and (c)(5) of this section.

(iv) Section 78*o*–4 of this title.

(v) Section 78*o*–5 of this title.

(vi) Subsections (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) of section 78q of this title.

(12) EXEMPTION FOR SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCT EXCHANGE MEMBERS.—

(A) REGISTRATION EXEMPTION.—A natural person shall be exempt from the registration requirements of this section if such person—

(i) is a member of a designated contract market registered with the Commission as an exchange pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title;

(ii) effects transactions only in securities on the exchange of which such person is a member; and

(iii) does not directly accept or solicit orders from public customers or provide advice to public customers in connection with the trading of security futures products.

(B) OTHER EXEMPTIONS.—A natural person exempt from registration pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall also be exempt from the following provisions of this chapter and the rules thereunder:

(i) Section 78h of this title.

(ii) Section 78k of this title.

(iii) Subsections (c)(3), (c)(5), and (e) of this section.

(iv) Section 78*o*–4 of this title.

(v) Section 78*o*–5 of this title.

(vi) Subsections (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) of section 78q of this title.

**(c) Use of manipulative or deceptive devices; contravention of rules and regulations**

(1)(A) No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) otherwise than on a national securities exchange of which it is a member, or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act), by means of any manipulative, deceptive, or other fraudulent device or contrivance.

(B) No municipal securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involving a municipal security by means of any manipulative, deceptive, or other fraudulent device or contrivance.

(C) No government securities broker or government securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or to attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involving a government security by means of any manipulative, deceptive, or other fraudulent device or contrivance.

(2)(A) No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security or commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) otherwise than on a national securities exchange of which it is a member, in connection with which such broker or dealer engages in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative act or practice, or makes any fictitious quotation.

(B) No municipal securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security in connection with which such municipal securities dealer engages in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative act or practice, or makes any fictitious quotation.

(C) No government securities broker or government securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security in connection with which such government securities broker or government securities dealer engages in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative act or practice, or makes any fictitious quotation.

(D) The Commission shall, for the purposes of this paragraph, by rules and regulations define, and prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent, such acts and practices as are fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative and such quotations as are fictitious.

(E) The Commission shall, prior to adopting any rule or regulation under subparagraph (C), consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury and each appropriate regulatory agency. If the Secretary of the Treasury or any appropriate regulatory agency comments in writing on a proposed rule or regulation of the Commission under such subparagraph (C) that has been published for comment, the Commission shall respond in writing to such written comment before adopting the proposed rule. If the Secretary of the Treasury determines, and notifies the Commission, that such rule or regulation, if implemented, would, or as applied does (i) adversely affect the liquidity or efficiency of the market for government securities; or (ii) impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section, the Commission shall, prior to adopting the proposed rule or regulation, find that such rule or regulation is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section notwithstanding the Secretary's determination.

(3)(A) No broker or dealer (other than a government securities broker or government securities dealer, except a registered broker or dealer) shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security (except a government security) or commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to provide safeguards with respect to the financial responsibility and related practices of brokers and dealers including, but not limited to, the acceptance of custody and use of customers' securities and the carrying and use of customers' deposits or credit balances. Such rules and regulations shall (A) require the maintenance of reserves with respect to customers' deposits or credit balances, and (B) no later than September 1, 1975, establish minimum financial responsibility requirements for all brokers and dealers.

(B) Consistent with this chapter, the Commission, in consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, shall issue such rules, regulations, or orders as are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting regulations applicable to any broker or dealer registered with the Commission pursuant to subsection (b) of this section (except paragraph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 6f(a)] (except paragraph (2) thereof), with respect to the application of: (i) the provisions of section 78h of this title, subsection (c)(3) of this section, and section 78q of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder related to the treatment of customer funds, securities, or property, maintenance of books and records, financial reporting, or other financial responsibility rules, involving security futures products; and (ii) similar provisions of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.] and rules and regulations thereunder involving security futures products.

(4) If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that any person subject to the provisions of section 78*l*, 78m, 78n of this title or subsection (d) of this section or any rule or regulation thereunder has failed to comply with any such provision, rule, or regulation in any material respect, the Commission may publish its findings and issue an order requiring such person, and any person who was a cause of the failure to comply due to an act or omission the person knew or should have known would contribute to the failure to comply, to comply, or to take steps to effect compliance, with such provision or such rule or regulation thereunder upon such terms and conditions and within such time as the Commission may specify in such order.

(5) No dealer (other than a specialist registered on a national securities exchange) acting in the capacity of market maker or otherwise shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security or a municipal security) in contravention of such specified and appropriate standards with respect to dealing as the Commission, by rule, shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to maintain fair and orderly markets, or to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a national market system. Under the rules of the Commission a dealer in a security may be prohibited from acting as a broker in that security.

(6) No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than an exempted security, municipal security, commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the

protection of investors or to perfect or remove impediments to a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, with respect to the time and method of, and the form and format of documents used in connection with, making settlements of and payments for transactions in securities, making transfers and deliveries of securities, and closing accounts. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed (A) to affect the authority of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, pursuant to section 78g of this title, to prescribe rules and regulations for the purpose of preventing the excessive use of credit for the purchase or carrying of securities, or (B) to authorize the Commission to prescribe rules or regulations for such purpose.

(7) In connection with any bid for or purchase of a government security related to an offering of government securities by or on behalf of an issuer, no government securities broker, government securities dealer, or bidder for or purchaser of securities in such offering shall knowingly or willfully make any false or misleading written statement or omit any fact necessary to make any written statement made not misleading.

(8) PROHIBITION OF REFERRAL FEES.—No broker or dealer, or person associated with a broker or dealer, may solicit or accept, directly or indirectly, remuneration for assisting an attorney in obtaining the representation of any person in any private action arising under this chapter or under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.].

**(d) Filing of supplementary and periodic information**

Each issuer which has filed a registration statement containing an undertaking which is or becomes operative under this subsection as in effect prior to August 20, 1964, and each issuer which shall after such date file a registration statement which has become effective pursuant to the Securities Act of 1933, as amended [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, such supplementary and periodic information, documents, and reports as may be required pursuant to section 78m of this title in respect of a security registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title. The duty to file under this subsection shall be automatically suspended if and so long as any issue of securities of such issuer is registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title. The duty to file under this subsection shall also be automatically suspended as to any fiscal year, other than the fiscal year within which such registration statement became effective, if, at the beginning of such fiscal year, the securities of each class to which the registration statement relates are held of record by less than three hundred persons. For the purposes of this subsection, the term ''class'' shall be construed to include all securities of an issuer which are of substantially similar character and the holders of which enjoy substantially similar rights and privileges. The Commission may, for the purpose of this subsection, define by rules and regulations the term ''held of record'' as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors in order to prevent circumvention of the provisions of this subsection. Nothing in this subsection shall apply to securities issued by a foreign government or political subdivision thereof.

**(e) Compliance with this chapter by members not required to be registered**

The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors or to assure equal regulation, may require any member of a national securities exchange not required to register under this section and any person associated with any such member to comply with any provision of this chapter (other than subsection (a) of this section) or the rules or regulations thereunder which by its terms regulates or prohibits any act, practice, or course of business by a ''broker or dealer'' or ''registered broker or dealer'' or a ''person associated with a broker or dealer,'' respectively.

**(f) Prevention of misuse of material, nonpublic information**

Every registered broker or dealer shall establish, maintain, and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed, taking into consideration the nature of such broker's or dealer's business, to prevent the misuse in violation of this chapter, or the rules or regulations thereunder, of material, nonpublic information by such broker or dealer or any person associated with such broker or dealer. The Commission, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, shall adopt rules or regulations to require specific policies or procedures reasonably designed to prevent misuse in violation of this chapter (or the rules or regulations thereunder) of material, nonpublic information.

**(g) Requirements for transactions in penny stocks**

**(1) In general**

No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any penny stock by any customer except in accordance with the requirements of this subsection and the rules and regulations prescribed under this subsection.

**(2) Risk disclosure with respect to penny stocks**

Prior to effecting any transaction in any penny stock, a broker or dealer shall give the customer a risk disclosure document that—

(A) contains a description of the nature and level of risk in the market for penny stocks in both public offerings and secondary trading;

(B) contains a description of the broker's or dealer's duties to the customer and of the rights and remedies available to the customer with respect to violations of such duties or other requirements of Federal securities laws;

(C) contains a brief, clear, narrative description of a dealer market, including ''bid'' and ''ask'' prices for penny stocks and the significance of the spread between the bid and ask prices;

(D) contains the toll free telephone number for inquiries on disciplinary actions established pursuant to section 78*o*–3(i) of this title;

(E) defines significant terms used in the disclosure document or in the conduct of trading in penny stocks; and

(F) contains such other information, and is in such form (including language, type size, and format), as the Commission shall require by rule or regulation.

**(3) Commission rules relating to disclosure**

The Commission shall adopt rules setting forth additional standards for the disclosure by brokers and dealers to customers of information concerning transactions in penny stocks. Such rules—

(A) shall require brokers and dealers to disclose to each customer, prior to effecting any transaction in, and at the time of confirming any transaction with respect to any penny stock, in accordance with such procedures and methods as the Commission may require consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors—

(i) the bid and ask prices for penny stock, or such other information as the Commission may, by rule, require to provide customers with more useful and reliable information relating to the price of such stock;

(ii) the number of shares to which such bid and ask prices apply, or other comparable information relating to the depth and liquidity of the market for such stock; and

(iii) the amount and a description of any compensation that the broker or dealer and the associated person thereof will receive or has received in connection with such transaction;

(B) shall require brokers and dealers to provide, to each customer whose account with the broker or dealer contains penny stocks, a monthly statement indicating the market value of the penny stocks in that account or indicating that the market value of such stock cannot be determined because of the unavailability of firm quotes; and

(C) may, as the Commission finds necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, require brokers and dealers to disclose to customers additional information concerning transactions in penny stocks.

**(4) Exemptions**

The Commission, as it determines consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, may by rule, regulation, or order exempt in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, any person or class of persons, or any transaction or class of transactions, from the requirements of this subsection. Such exemptions shall include an exemption for brokers and dealers based on the minimal percentage of the broker's or dealer's commissions, commission-equivalents, and markups received from transactions in penny stocks.

**(5) Regulations**

It shall be unlawful for any person to violate such rules and regulations as the Commission shall prescribe in the public interest or for the protection of investors or to maintain fair and orderly markets—

(A) as necessary or appropriate to carry out this subsection; or

(B) as reasonably designed to prevent fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative acts and practices with respect to penny stocks.

**(h) Limitations on State law**

**(1) Capital, margin, books and records, bonding, and reports**

No law, rule, regulation, or order, or other administrative action of any State or political subdivision thereof shall establish capital, custody, margin, financial responsibility, making and keeping records, bonding, or financial or operational reporting requirements for brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, government securities brokers, or government securities dealers that differ from, or are in addition to, the requirements in those areas established under this chapter. The Commission shall consult periodically the securities commissions (or any agency or office performing like functions) of the States concerning the adequacy of such requirements as established under this chapter.

**(2) De minimis transactions by associated persons**

No law, rule, regulation, or order, or other administrative action of any State or political subdivision thereof may prohibit an associated person of a broker or dealer from effecting a transaction described in paragraph (3) for a customer in such State if—

(A) such associated person is not ineligible to register with such State for any reason other than such a transaction;

(B) such associated person is registered with a registered securities association and at least one State; and

(C) the broker or dealer with which such person is associated is registered with such State.

**(3) Described transactions**

**(A) In general**

A transaction is described in this paragraph if—

(i) such transaction is effected—

(I) on behalf of a customer that, for 30 days prior to the day of the transaction, maintained an account with the broker or dealer; and

(II) by an associated person of the broker or dealer—

(aa) to which the customer was assigned for 14 days prior to the day of the transaction; and

(bb) who is registered with a State in which the customer was a resident or was present for at least 30 consecutive

days during the 1-year period prior to the day of the transaction; or

(ii) the transaction is effected—

(I) on behalf of a customer that, for 30 days prior to the day of the transaction, maintained an account with the broker or dealer; and

(II) during the period beginning on the date on which such associated person files an application for registration with the State in which the transaction is effected and ending on the earlier of—

(aa) 60 days after the date on which the application is filed; or

(bb) the date on which such State notifies the associated person that it has denied the application for registration or has stayed the pendency of the application for cause.

**(B) Rules of construction**

For purposes of subparagraph (A)(i)(II)—

(i) each of up to 3 associated persons of a broker or dealer who are designated to effect transactions during the absence or unavailability of the principal associated person for a customer may be treated as an associated person to which such customer is assigned; and

(ii) if the customer is present in another State for 30 or more consecutive days or has permanently changed his or her residence to another State, a transaction is not described in this paragraph, unless the associated person of the broker or dealer files an application for registration with such State not later than 10 business days after the later of the date of the transaction, or the date of the discovery of the presence of the customer in the other State for 30 or more consecutive days or the change in the customer's residence.

**(i)[2] Rulemaking to extend requirements to new hybrid products**

**(1) Consultation**

Prior to commencing a rulemaking under this subsection, the Commission shall consult with and seek the concurrence of the Board concerning the imposition of broker or dealer registration requirements with respect to any new hybrid product. In developing and promulgating rules under this subsection, the Commission shall consider the views of the Board, including views with respect to the nature of the new hybrid product; the history, purpose, extent, and appropriateness of the regulation of the new product under the Federal banking laws; and the impact of the proposed rule on the banking industry.

**(2) Limitation**

The Commission shall not—

(A) require a bank to register as a broker or dealer under this section because the bank engages in any transaction in, or buys or sells, a new hybrid product; or

(B) bring an action against a bank for a failure to comply with a requirement described in subparagraph (A), unless the Commission has imposed such requirement by rule or regulation issued in accordance with this section.

**(3) Criteria for rulemaking**

The Commission shall not impose a requirement under paragraph (2) of this subsection with respect to any new hybrid product unless the Commission determines that—

(A) the new hybrid product is a security; and

(B) imposing such requirement is necessary and appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors.

**(4) Considerations**

In making a determination under paragraph (3), the Commission shall consider—

(A) the nature of the new hybrid product; and

(B) the history, purpose, extent, and appropriateness of the regulation of the new hybrid product under the Federal securities laws and under the Federal banking laws.

**(5) Objection to Commission regulation**

**(A) Filing of petition for review**

The Board may obtain review of any final regulation described in paragraph (2) in the United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Circuit by filing in such court, not later than 60 days after the date of publication of the final regulation, a written petition requesting that the regulation be set aside. Any proceeding to challenge any such rule shall be expedited by the Court of Appeals.

**(B) Transmittal of petition and record**

A copy of a petition described in subparagraph (A) shall be transmitted as soon as possible by the Clerk of the Court to an officer or employee of the Commission designated for that purpose. Upon receipt of the petition, the Commission shall file with the court the regulation under review and any documents referred to therein, and any other relevant materials prescribed by the court.

**(C) Exclusive jurisdiction**

On the date of the filing of the petition under subparagraph (A), the court has jurisdiction, which becomes exclusive on the filing of the materials set forth in subparagraph (B), to affirm and enforce or to set aside the regulation at issue.

**(D) Standard of review**

The court shall determine to affirm and enforce or set aside a regulation of the Commission under this subsection, based on the determination of the court as to whether—

(i) the subject product is a new hybrid product, as defined in this subsection;

(ii) the subject product is a security; and

(iii) imposing a requirement to register as a broker or dealer for banks engaging in transactions in such product is appropriate in light of the history, purpose, and extent of regulation under the Federal securities laws and under the Federal banking laws, giving deference neither to the views of the Commission nor the Board.

[2] So in original. Two subsecs. (i) have been enacted.

**(E) Judicial stay**

The filing of a petition by the Board pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall operate as a judicial stay, until the date on which the determination of the court is final (including any appeal of such determination).

**(F) Other authority to challenge**

Any aggrieved party may seek judicial review of the Commission's rulemaking under this subsection pursuant to section 78y of this title.

**(6) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection:

**(A) New hybrid product**

The term ''new hybrid product'' means a product that—

(i) was not subjected to regulation by the Commission as a security prior to the date of the enactment of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act [Nov. 12, 1999];

(ii) is not an identified banking product as such term is defined in section 206 of such Act; and

(iii) is not an equity swap within the meaning of section 206(a)(6) of such Act.

**(B) Board**

The term ''Board'' means the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

**(i)[2] Limitation on Commission authority**

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c–1(b) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 15, 48 Stat. 895; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 3, 49 Stat. 1377; June 25, 1938, ch. 677, § 2, 52 Stat. 1075; Pub. L. 88–467, § 6, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 570; Pub. L. 91–598, § 11(d), formerly § 7(d), Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1653, renumbered § 11(d), Pub. L. 95–283, § 9, May 21, 1978, 92 Stat. 260; Pub. L. 94–29, § 11, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 121; Pub. L. 95–213, title II, § 204, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1500; Pub. L. 98–38, § 3(a), June 6, 1983, 97 Stat. 206; Pub. L. 98–376, §§ 4, 6(b), Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, § 102(e), (f), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3218; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, § 317, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256; Pub. L. 100–704, § 3(b)(1), Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4679; Pub. L. 101–429, title V, §§ 504(a), 505, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 952, 953; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, § 203(a), (c)(1), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2715, 2718; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, §§ 105, 106(b)(2)(B), 109(b)(2), 110, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2348, 2350, 2353; Pub. L. 104–67, title I, § 103(a), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 756; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, § 103(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3420; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, § 301(b)(8), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, § 205, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1391; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, §§ 203(a)(1), (b), 206(h), title III, § 303(e), (f)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–421, 2763A–422, 2763A–432, 2763A–454, 2763A–455; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, § 604(a), (c)(1)(B)(ii), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 795, 796.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2)(B), (C), (3), (4)(A), (D), (E), (11)(B), (12)(B), (c)(3)(B), (8), (e), (f), and (h)(1), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(4)(B)(ii), (C) to (E) and (c)(3)(B), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§ 1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsecs. (b)(4)(D), (E), (c)(8), and (d), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter 1 (§ 77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Investment Advisers Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (b)(4)(D), (E), is title II of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 847, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§ 80b–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80b–20 of this title and Tables.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (b)(4)(D), (E), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter 1 (§ 80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

Sections 206 and 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsecs. (c)(1), (i)(6)(A)(ii), (iii), and (i), are sections 206 and 206B of Pub. L. 106–102, which are set out as notes under section 78c of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (b)(4)(F). Pub. L. 107–204, § 604(a)(1), added subpar. (F) and struck out former subpar. (F) which read as follows: ''is subject to an order of the Commission entered pursuant to paragraph (6) of this subsection (b) barring or suspending the right of such person to be associated with a broker or dealer.''

Subsec. (b)(4)(H). Pub. L. 107–204, § 604(a)(2), added subpar. (H).

Subsec. (b)(6)(A)(i). Pub. L. 107–204, § 604(c)(1)(B)(ii), substituted '', or is subject to an order or finding,'' for ''or omission''.

2000—Subsec. (b)(11). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 203(a)(1)], added par. (11).

Subsec. (b)(12). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 203(b)], added par. (12).

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title III, § 303(e)], amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) consisted of subpars. (A) to (E) prohibiting use of mails or instrumentality of interstate commerce for transactions in securities by manipulative, deceptive, or other fraudulent device, requiring the Commission, by regulation, to define such devices as manipulative, deceptive or fraudulent, and providing for consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and other agencies prior to adoption of regulations.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(h)], designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title III, § 303(f)], added subsec. (i) relating to limitation on Commission authority.

1999—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 106–102 added subsec. (i) relating to rulemaking to extend requirements to new hybrid products.

1998—Subsec. (c)(8). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(8)(A), realigned margins.

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(8)(B), substituted ''effecting'' for ''affecting'' in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (h)(3)(A)(i)(II)(bb). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(8)(C), inserted ''or'' after semicolon at end.

Subsec. (h)(3)(A)(ii)(I). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(8)(D), substituted ''maintained'' for ''maintains''.

Subsec. (h)(3)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(8)(E), substituted ''associated'' for ''association''.

1996—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 104–290 added subsec. (h).

1995—Subsec. (c)(8). Pub. L. 104–67 added par. (8).

1993—Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 103–202, § 109(b)(2), inserted ''The order granting registration shall not be ef-

fective until such broker or dealer has become a member of a registered securities association, or until such broker or dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange if such broker or dealer effects transactions solely on that exchange, unless the Commission has exempted such broker or dealer, by rule or order, from such membership.'' before ''The Commission may extend''.

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 103–202, §106(b)(2)(B), inserted ''or government securities broker or government securities dealer registered (or required to register) under section 78o–5(a)(1)(A) of this title'' after ''No registered broker or dealer'' in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 103–202, §105(b), inserted subpar. designation ''(A)'' after ''(1)'', substituted ''contrivance.'' along with subpar. designation ''(B)'' and ''No municipal securities dealer'' for ''contrivance, and no municipal securities dealer'', substituted ''contrivance.'' along with subpar. (C), subpar. designation ''(D)'' and ''The Commission shall'' for ''contrivance. The Commission shall'', and added subpar. (E).

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 103–202, §105(a), inserted subpar. designation ''(A)'' after ''(2)'', substituted ''fictitious quotation.'' along with subpar. designation ''(B)'' and ''No municipal securities dealer'' for ''fictitious quotation, and no municipal securities dealer'', substituted ''fictitious quotation.'' along with subpar. (C), subpar. designation ''(D)'' and ''The Commission shall'' for ''fictitious quotation. The Commission shall'', and added subpar. (E).

Subsec. (c)(7). Pub. L. 103–202, §110, added par. (7).

1990—Subsec. (b)(4)(B). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(a)(1), inserted ''or of a substantially equivalent crime by a foreign court of competent jurisdiction'' after ''misdemeanor''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(B)(i). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(a)(2), inserted ''any substantially equivalent activity however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government,'' after ''burglary,''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(a)(3), inserted ''foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above,'' after ''transfer agent,'' and ''or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation'' before semicolon at end.

Subsec. (b)(4)(B)(iii). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(a)(4), inserted '', or substantially equivalent activity however denominated by the laws of the relevant foreign government'' after ''securities''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(B)(iv). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(a)(5), inserted ''or a violation of a substantially equivalent foreign statute'' after ''title 18''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(C). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(a)(6), inserted ''foreign person performing a function substantially equivalent to any of the above,'' after ''transfer agent,'', ''or any substantially equivalent foreign statute or regulation'' after ''Commodity Exchange Act'' wherever appearing, and ''foreign entity substantially equivalent to any of the above,'' after ''insurance company,''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(G). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(a)(7), added subpar. (G).

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 101–429, §504(a), amended par. (6) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (6) read as follows: ''The Commission, by order, shall censure or place limitations on the activities or functions of any person associated, seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated with a broker or dealer, or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or bar any such person from being associated with a broker or dealer, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed or omitted any act or omission enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), or (G) of paragraph (4) of this subsection, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of said paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of said paragraph (4). It shall be unlawful for any person as to whom such an order suspending or barring him from being associated with a broker or dealer is in effect willfully to become, or to be, associated with a broker or dealer without the consent of the Commission, and it shall be unlawful for any broker or dealer to permit such a person to become, or remain, a person associated with him without the consent of the Commission, if such broker or dealer knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order.''

Pub. L. 101–550, §203(c)(1), substituted ''(A), (D), (E), or (G)'' for ''(A), (D), or (E)''.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101–429, §505, added subsec. (g).

1988—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 100–704 added subsec. (f).

1987—Subsec. (b)(4)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 100–181, §317(1), substituted ''fiduciary, transfer agent, or'' for ''fiduciary, or any''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(C). Pub. L. 100–181, §317(2), added subpar. (C) and struck out former subpar. (C) which read as follows: ''is permanently or temporarily enjoined by order, judgment, or decree of any court of competent jurisdiction from acting as an investment adviser, underwriter, broker, dealer, entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer, or as an affiliated person or employee of any investment company, bank, entity or person required to be registered under such Act, or insurance company, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with any such activity, or in connection with the purchase or sale of any security.''

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 100–181, §317(3), substituted ''seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated'' for ''or seeking to become associated,'' in first sentence.

Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 100–181, §317(4), substituted ''78q–1(b)(4)(A)'' for ''78q–1(b)(4)(B)''.

1986—Subsec. (b)(4)(A). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(e)(1), inserted ''or with any other appropriate regulatory agency''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(e)(2), inserted ''government securities broker, government securities dealer,''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(C). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(e)(3), substituted ''municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer,'' for ''or municipal securities dealer,''.

Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(e)(4), substituted ''any registered broker or dealer'' for ''any broker or dealer required to register pursuant to this chapter'' and struck out ''an exempted security'' after ''other than''.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(f), inserted ''(other than a government securities broker or government securities dealer, except a registered broker or dealer)'' and ''(except a government security)''.

1984—Subsec. (b)(4)(B)(ii). Pub. L. 98–376, §6(b)(1), substituted ''fiduciary, or any entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.)'' for ''or fiduciary''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(C). Pub. L. 98–376, §6(b)(2), inserted ''entity or person required to be registered under the Commodity Exchange Act,'' and ''entity or person required to be registered under such Act''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(D), (E). Pub. L. 98–376, §6(b)(3), inserted ''the Commodity Exchange Act,''.

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 98–376, §4, inserted reference to section 78n of this title and ''and any person who was a cause of the failure to comply due to an act or omission the person knew or should have known would contribute to the failure to comply,''.

1983—Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 98–38, §3(a)(1), added par. (8) and struck out former par. (8), which had directed that, in addition to the fees and charges authorized by par. (7) of this subsection, each registered broker or dealer not a member of a registered securities association pay to the Commission such reasonable fees and

charges as necessary to defray the costs of the additional regulatory duties required to be performed by the Commission because such broker or dealer effected transactions in securities otherwise than on a national securities exchange of which it was a member and was not a member of a registered securities association, and that the Commission, by rule, establish such fees and charges.

Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 98–38, §3(a)(2), added par. (9) and struck out former par. (9), which had provided that no broker or dealer subject to par. (8) of this subsection could effect any transaction in, or induce the purchase or sale of, any security (otherwise than on a national securities exchange of which it was a member) in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission might prescribe designed to promote just and equitable principles of trade, to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a free and open market and a national market system, and, in general, to protect investors and the public interest.

1977—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 95–213 authorized the Commission to define, for purposes of this subsection, term ''held of record''.

1975—Pub. L. 94–29, §11(1), amended section catchline.

Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29, §11(2), required registration with the Commission of all persons utilizing an exchange's facilities to effect transactions.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29, §11(2), expanded coverage to include municipal securities dealers, permitted nonbank municipal securities dealers and brokers to register company departments or divisions conducting municipal securities activities rather than the company of which the department or division is a part, subjected municipal securities and associated persons thereof to the Commission's enforcement and disciplinary powers, updated the list of statutory offenses which bar a person from becoming a broker-dealer or an associated person of a broker-dealer, expanded Commission regulatory control to include all brokers and dealers executing transactions on exchanges of which such brokers and dealers are not members, required any registered broker-dealer who is not a member of a registered securities association to pay the Commission fees imposed by it to defray the costs of the additional regulatory duties to be performed by the Commission, and clarified the power of national securities exchanges, registered securities associations, and registered clearing agencies to make determinations as to whether a person is subject to statutory disqualification.

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 94–29, §11(3), expanded the Commission's authority to define devices, contrivances, acts, and practices deemed manipulative, deceptive, and otherwise fraudulent for municipal securities dealers as well as for brokers and dealers.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 94–29, §11(3), expanded the Commission's authority to define quotations deemed to be fictitious for municipal securities dealers as well as for brokers and dealers.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 94–29, §11(3), inserted requirement that rules and regulations be promulgated no later than Sept. 1, 1975, establishing minimum financial responsibility requirements for all brokers and dealers.

Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 94–29, §11(4), substituted provisions authorizing the Commission to regulate trading activities of market makers other than specialists registered on a national securities exchange for provisions authorizing the Commission summarily to suspend trading, otherwise than on a national securities exchange, in any security other than an exempted security for a period not exceeding 10 days if the public interest and the protection of investors so requires.

Subsec. (c)(6). Pub. L. 94–29, §11(5), added par. (6).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94–29, §11(6), added subsec. (e).

1970—Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 91–598 extended Commission's rulemaking power to both the exchange and the over-the-counter markets, striking out ''otherwise than on a national securities exchange'' before ''in contravention of such rules and regulations'' and substituting ''shall prescribe'' for ''may prescribe'' and provided for safeguards with respect to the related practices of brokers and dealers, including customers' securities and customers' deposits or credit balances, and maintenance of reserves with respect to such deposits or credit balances.

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(a), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(b), designated first par. as (1) and substituted ''persons associated with such broker or dealer'' for ''person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, such broker or dealer,''.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(b), designated second par. as (2) and substituted ''associated with the applicant'' for ''directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by, or under direct or indirect common control with, the applicant''.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(b), designated third par. as (3) and substituted ''effective date of the registration'' for ''effective date thereof''.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(b), added par. (4).

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(b), designated first sentence of fourth par, as (5), provided for censure and for suspension for period not exceeding twelve months, substituted the language ''that such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming such, or any person associated with such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming so associated'' for ''that (1) such broker or dealer whether prior or subsequent to becoming such, or (2) any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such broker or dealer (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), or any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming such'', substituted in clause (A) the provision respecting false or misleading statements in any report required to, be filed with the Commission for such statements in any document supplemental to application for registration and inserted in such clause (A) the material fact omission provision, designated existing provisions of clause (B) as items (i) and (ii), included in item (ii) the business of investment broker, and added items (iii) and (iv), provided in clause (C) for enjoyment from acting as an investment adviser, underwriter, broker, or dealer, or as an affiliated person or employee of any investment company, bank, or insurance company, or from engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with any such activity, made clause (D) applicable to violations of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 and the Investment Company Act of 1940, and added clauses (E) and (F).

Subsec. (b)(6). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(b), designated second through fifth sentences of fourth par. as (6) and, in provision constituting first sentence of par. (6) substituted ''any registration under this subsection'' for ''any such registration'' and inserted ''(which may consist solely of affidavits and oral argument)'' after ''opportunity for hearing''.

Subsec. (b)(7) to (10). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(b), added pars. (7) to (10).

Subsec. (c)(4), (5). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(c), added pars. (4) and (5).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 88–467, §6(d), substituted provisions which require every issuer filing a registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933 to file for the fiscal year in which the registration statement becomes effective such reports as may be required by the Commission under section 78m of this title and provide for suspension of duty to file reports for any later fiscal years if at the beginning of such fiscal year the securities to which the registration statement relates are held of record by less than three hundred persons for former provisions which required the registration statement filed under the Securities Act to contain an undertaking if the value of the securities offered plus the value of other outstanding securities of the same class amounted to $2,000,000 or more and suspended the duty to file if the value of securities outstanding was reduced to less than $1,000,000 or the issuer had become

subject to an equivalent reporting requirement and deleted ''or to any other security which the Commission may by rules and regulations exempt as not comprehended within the purposes of this subsection'' after ''political subdivision thereof''.

1938—Subsec. (c)(2), (3). Act June 25, 1938, added pars. (2) and (3).

1936—Act May 27, 1936, amended section generally.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1999 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective at the end of the 18-month period beginning on Nov. 12, 1999, see section 209 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 1828 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 77*l* of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 504(a) of Pub. L. 101–429 effective 12 months after Oct. 15, 1990, or upon issuance of final regulations initially implementing such amendment, whichever is earlier, and with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(2), (3)(A) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

Amendment by section 505 of Pub. L. 101–429 effective 18 months after Oct. 15, 1990, or upon issuance of final regulations initially implementing such amendment, whichever is earlier, with provision to commence rulemaking proceedings to implement such amendment not later than 180 days after Oct. 15, 1990, and with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(2), (3)(B), (C) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 provided that: ''The amendments made by this Act [enacting sections 78t–1, 78u–1, and 80b–4a of this title and amending this section and sections 78c, 78u, 78ff, and 78kk of this title], except for section 6 [amending sections 78c and 78u of this title], shall not apply to any actions occurring before the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 19, 1988].''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment Pub. L. 98–376 effective Aug. 10, 1984, see section 7 of Pub. L. 98–376, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1983 AMENDMENT

Section 3(b) of Pub. L. 98–38 provided that: ''The amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall become effective six months after the date of enactment of this Act [June 6, 1983].''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, except for amendment of subsec. (a) by Pub. L. 94–29 which is effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 of subsec. (a) of this section effective July 1, 1964, and of subsecs. (b), (c)(4), (5), and (d) of this section effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Nothing in amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a Construction note under section 78j–1 of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 105, 106(b)(2)(B), and 109(b)(2) of Pub. L. 103–202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

STUDY AND REPORT ON BROKER-DEALER UNIFORMITY

Section 510(d) of Pub. L. 104–290 provided that:

''(1) STUDY.—The Commission, after consultation with registered securities associations, national securities exchanges, and States, shall conduct a study of the impact of disparate State licensing requirements on associated persons of registered brokers or dealers and methods for States to attain uniform licensing requirements for such persons.

''(2) REPORT.—Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 11, 1996], the Commission shall submit to the Congress a report on the study conducted under paragraph (1). Such report shall include recommendations concerning appropriate methods described in paragraph (1)(B), including any necessary legislative changes to implement such recommendations.''

PENNY STOCK REFORM; CONGRESSIONAL STATEMENT OF FINDINGS

Section 502 of Pub. L. 101–429 provided that: ''The Congress finds the following:

''(1) The maintenance of an honest and healthy primary and secondary market for securities offerings is essential to enhancing long-term capital formation and economic growth and providing legitimate investment opportunities for individuals and institutions.

''(2) Protecting investors in new securities is a critical component in the maintenance of an honest and healthy market for such securities.

''(3) Protecting issuers of new securities and promoting the capital formation process on behalf of small companies are fundamental concerns in maintaining a strong economy and viable trading markets.

''(4) Unscrupulous market practices and market participants have pervaded the 'penny stock' market with an overwhelming amount of fraud and abuse.

''(5) Although the Securities and Exchange Commission, State securities regulators, and securities self-regulators have made efforts to curb these abusive and harmful practices, the penny stock market still lacks an adequate and sufficient regulatory structure, particularly in comparison to the structure for overseeing trading in National Market System securities.

''(6) Investors in the penny stock market suffer from a serious lack of adequate information concern-

ing price and volume of penny stock transactions, the nature of this market, and the specific securities in which they are investing.

''(7) Current practices do not adequately regulate the role of 'promoters' and 'consultants' in the penny stock market, and many professionals who have been banned from the securities markets have ended up in promoter and consultant roles, contributing substantially to fraudulent and abusive schemes.

''(8) The present regulatory environment has permitted the ascendancy of the use of particular market practices, such as 'reverse mergers' with shell corporations and 'blank check' offerings, which are used to facilitate manipulation schemes and harm investors.

''(9) In light of the substantial and continuing problems in the penny stock markets, additional legislative measures are necessary and appropriate.''

REVISION OF SANCTION AUTHORITY WITH RESPECT TO PENNY STOCKS; RECOMMENDATIONS TO CONGRESS

Section 504(b) of Pub. L. 101–429 provided that: ''Within 6 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 1990], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall submit to each House of the Congress such recommendations as the Commission considers appropriate with respect to further revision of section 15(b)(6) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78*o*(b)(6)). In preparing such recommendations, the Commission shall consider the desirability and effect of expanding the applicability of such section to any promoter, finder, consultant, agent or other person who engages in activities with a broker, dealer, or issuer for purposes of the issuance of or trading in, or inducing or attempting to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (and not just penny stock).''

### § 78*o*–1. Brokers deemed to be registered

All brokers and dealers for whom registration was in effect on May 27, 1936, in accordance with rules and regulations of the Commission prescribed pursuant to section 78*o* of this title shall be deemed to be registered pursuant to said section.

(May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 10, 49 Stat. 1380.)

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### § 78*o*–2. Liabilities arising prior to amendment unaffected

Nothing in this Act shall be deemed to extinguish any liability which may have arisen prior to the effective date of this Act by reason of any violation of section 78*o* of this title or of any rule or regulation thereunder.

(May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 11, 49 Stat. 1380.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is act May 27, 1936, ch. 462, 49 Stat. 1375, popularly known as the Unlisted Securities Trading Act, which enacted sections 78*l*–1, 78*o*–1, 78*o*–2, and 78hh–1 of this title, and amended sections 78*l*, 78*o*, 78q, 78r, 78t, 78u, 78w, and 78ff of this title.

Effective date of this Act, referred to in text, is July 1, 1934. See section 78hh–1 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

### § 78*o*–3. Registered securities associations

#### (a) Registration; application

An association of brokers and dealers may be registered as a national securities association pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, or as an affiliated securities association pursuant to subsection (d) of this section, under the terms and conditions hereinafter provided in this section and in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(a) of this title, by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the rules of the association and such other information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

#### (b) Determinations by Commission requisite to registration of applicant as national securities association

An association of brokers and dealers shall not be registered as a national securities association unless the Commission determines that—

(1) By reason of the number and geographical distribution of its members and the scope of their transactions, such association will be able to carry out the purposes of this section.

(2) Such association is so organized and has the capacity to be able to carry out the purposes of this chapter and to comply, and (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) to enforce compliance by its members and persons associated with its members, with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and the rules of the association.

(3) Subject to the provisions of subsection (g) of this section, the rules of the association provide that any registered broker or dealer may become a member of such association and any person may become associated with a member thereof.

(4) The rules of the association assure a fair representation of its members in the selection of its directors and administration of its affairs and provide that one or more directors shall be representative of issuers and investors and not be associated with a member of the association, broker, or dealer.

(5) The rules of the association provide for the equitable allocation of reasonable dues, fees, and other charges among members and issuers and other persons using any facility or system which the association operates or controls.

(6) The rules of the association are designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices, to promote just and equitable principles of trade, to foster cooperation and coordination with persons engaged in regulating, clearing, settling, processing information with respect to, and facilitating transactions in securities, to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a free and open market and a national market system, and, in general, to protect investors and the public interest; and are not designed to permit unfair

discrimination between customers, issuers, brokers, or dealers, to fix minimum profits, to impose any schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by its members, or to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this chapter or the administration of the association.

(7) The rules of the association provide that (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) its members and persons associated with its members shall be appropriately disciplined for violation of any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or the rules of the association, by expulsion, suspension, limitation of activities, functions, and operations, fine, censure, being suspended or barred from being associated with a member, or any other fitting sanction.

(8) The rules of the association are in accordance with the provisions of subsection (h) of this section, and, in general, provide a fair procedure for the disciplining of members and persons associated with members, the denial of membership to any person seeking membership therein, the barring of any person from becoming associated with a member thereof, and the prohibition or limitation by the association of any person with respect to access to services offered by the association or a member thereof.

(9) The rules of the association do not impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(10) The requirements of subsection (c) of this section, insofar as these may be applicable, are satisfied.

(11) The rules of the association include provisions governing the form and content of quotations relating to securities sold otherwise than on a national securities exchange which may be distributed or published by any member or person associated with a member, and the persons to whom such quotations may be supplied. Such rules relating to quotations shall be designed to produce fair and informative quotations, to prevent fictitious or misleading quotations, and to promote orderly procedures for collecting, distributing, and publishing quotations.

(12) The rules of the association to promote just and equitable principles of trade, as required by paragraph (6), include rules to prevent members of the association from participating in any limited partnership rollup transaction (as such term is defined in paragraphs (4) and (5) of section 78n(h) of this title) unless such transaction was conducted in accordance with procedures designed to protect the rights of limited partners, including—

(A) the right of dissenting limited partners to one of the following:

(i) an appraisal and compensation;

(ii) retention of a security under substantially the same terms and conditions as the original issue;

(iii) approval of the limited partnership rollup transaction by not less than 75 percent of the outstanding securities of each of the participating limited partnerships;

(iv) the use of a committee that is independent, as determined in accordance with rules prescribed by the association, of the general partner or sponsor, that has been approved by a majority of the outstanding securities of each of the participating partnerships, and that has such authority as is necessary to protect the interest of limited partners, including the authority to hire independent advisors, to negotiate with the general partner or sponsor on behalf of the limited partners, and to make a recommendation to the limited partners with respect to the proposed transaction; or

(v) other comparable rights that are prescribed by rule by the association and that are designed to protect dissenting limited partners;

(B) the right not to have their voting power unfairly reduced or abridged;

(C) the right not to bear an unfair portion of the costs of a proposed limited partnership rollup transaction that is rejected; and

(D) restrictions on the conversion of contingent interests or fees into non-contingent interests or fees and restrictions on the receipt of a non-contingent equity interest in exchange for fees for services which have not yet been provided.

As used in this paragraph, the term ''dissenting limited partner'' means a person who, on the date on which soliciting material is mailed to investors, is a holder of a beneficial interest in a limited partnership that is the subject of a limited partnership rollup transaction, and who casts a vote against the transaction and complies with procedures established by the association, except that for purposes of an exchange or tender offer, such person shall file an objection in writing under the rules of the association during the period in which the offer is outstanding.

(13) The rules of the association prohibit the authorization for quotation on an automated interdealer quotation system sponsored by the association of any security designated by the Commission as a national market system security resulting from a limited partnership rollup transaction (as such term is defined in paragraphs (4) and (5) of section 78n(h) of this title), unless such transaction was conducted in accordance with procedures designed to protect the rights of limited partners, including—

(A) the right of dissenting limited partners to one of the following:

(i) an appraisal and compensation;

(ii) retention of a security under substantially the same terms and conditions as the original issue;

(iii) approval of the limited partnership rollup transaction by not less than 75 percent of the outstanding securities of each of the participating limited partnerships;

(iv) the use of a committee that is independent, as determined in accordance with

rules prescribed by the association, of the general partner or sponsor, that has been approved by a majority of the outstanding securities of each of the participating partnerships, and that has such authority as is necessary to protect the interest of limited partners, including the authority to hire independent advisors, to negotiate with the general partner or sponsor on behalf of the limited partners, and to make a recommendation to the limited partners with respect to the proposed transaction; or

(v) other comparable rights that are prescribed by rule by the association and that are designed to protect dissenting limited partners;

(B) the right not to have their voting power unfairly reduced or abridged;

(C) the right not to bear an unfair portion of the costs of a proposed limited partnership rollup transaction that is rejected; and

(D) restrictions on the conversion of contingent interests or fees into non-contingent interests or fees and restrictions on the receipt of a non-contingent equity interest in exchange for fees for services which have not yet been provided.

As used in this paragraph, the term ''dissenting limited partner'' means a person who, on the date on which soliciting material is mailed to investors, is a holder of a beneficial interest in a limited partnership that is the subject of a limited partnership rollup transaction, and who casts a vote against the transaction and complies with procedures established by the association, except that for purposes of an exchange or tender offer, such person shall file an objection in writing under the rules of the association during the period during which the offer is outstanding.

**(c) National association rules; provision for registration of affiliated securities association**

The Commission may permit or require the rules of an association applying for registration pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, to provide for the admission of an association registered as an affiliated securities association pursuant to subsection (d) of this section, to participation in said applicant association as an affiliate thereof, under terms permitting such powers and responsibilities to such affiliate, and under such other appropriate terms and conditions, as may be provided by the rules of said applicant association, if such rules appear to the Commission to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors and to carry out the purposes of this section. The duties and powers of the Commission with respect to any national securities association or any affiliated securities association shall in no way be limited by reason of any such affiliation.

**(d) Registration as affiliated association; prerequisites; association rules**

An applicant association shall not be registered as an affiliated securities association unless it appears to the Commission that—

(1) such association, notwithstanding that it does not satisfy the requirements set forth in paragraph (1) of subsection (b) of this section, will, forthwith upon the registration thereof, be admitted to affiliation with an association registered as a national securities association pursuant to subsection (b) of this section, in the manner and under the terms and conditions provided by the rules of said national securities association in accordance with subsection (c) of this section; and

(2) such association and its rules satisfy the requirements set forth in paragraphs (2) to (10), inclusive, and paragraph (12),[1] of subsection (b) of this section; except that in the case of any such association any restrictions upon membership therein of the type authorized by paragraph (3) of subsection (b) of this section shall not be less stringent than in the case of the national securities association with which such association is to be affiliated.

**(e) Dealings with nonmember professionals**

(1) The rules of a registered securities association may provide that no member thereof shall deal with any nonmember professional (as defined in paragraph (2) of this subsection) except at the same prices, for the same commissions or fees, and on the same terms and conditions as are by such member accorded to the general public.

(2) For the purposes of this subsection, the term ''nonmember professional'' shall include (A) with respect to transactions in securities other than municipal securities, any registered broker or dealer who is not a member of any registered securities association, except such a broker or dealer who deals exclusively in commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, and commercial bills, and (B) with respect to transactions in municipal securities, any municipal securities dealer (other than a bank or division or department of a bank) who is not a member of any registered securities association and any municipal securities broker who is not a member of any such association.

(3) Nothing in this subsection shall be so construed or applied as to prevent (A) any member of a registered securities association from granting to any other member of any registered securities association any dealer's discount, allowance, commission, or special terms, in connection with the purchase or sale of securities, or (B) any member of a registered securities association or any municipal securities dealer which is a bank or a division or department of a bank from granting to any member of any registered securities association or any such municipal securities dealer any dealer's discount, allowance, commission, or special terms in connection with the purchase or sale of municipal securities: *Provided, however*, That the granting of any such discount, allowance, commission, or special terms in connection with the purchase or sale of municipal securities shall be subject to rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board adopted pursuant to section 78*o*–4(b)(2)(K) of this title.

**(f) Transactions in municipal securities**

Nothing in subsection (b)(6) or (b)(11) of this section shall be construed to permit a registered

[1] See References in Text note below.

securities association to make rules concerning any transaction by a registered broker or dealer in a municipal security.

**(g) Denial of membership**

(1) A registered securities association shall deny membership to any person who is not a registered broker or dealer.

(2) A registered securities association may, and in cases in which the Commission, by order, directs as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors shall, deny membership to any registered broker or dealer, and bar from becoming associated with a member any person, who is subject to a statutory disqualification. A registered securities association shall file notice with the Commission not less than thirty days prior to admitting any registered broker or dealer to membership or permitting any person to become associated with a member, if the association knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, that such broker or dealer or person was subject to a statutory disqualification. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3)(A) A registered securities association may deny membership to, or condition the membership of, a registered broker or dealer if (i) such broker or dealer does not meet such standards of financial responsibility or operational capability or such broker or dealer or any natural person associated with such broker or dealer does not meet such standards of training, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the association or (ii) such broker or dealer or person associated with such broker or dealer has engaged and there is a reasonable likelihood he will again engage in acts or practices inconsistent with just and equitable principles of trade. A registered securities association may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to become a member and the natural persons associated with such an applicant in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the association.

(B) A registered securities association may bar a natural person from becoming associated with a member or condition the association of a natural person with a member if such natural person (i) does not meet such standards of training, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the association or (ii) has engaged and there is a reasonable likelihood he will again engage in acts or practices inconsistent with just and equitable principles of trade. A registered securities association may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to become a person associated with a member in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the association and require a natural person associated with a member, or any class of such natural persons, to be registered with the association in accordance with procedures so established.

(C) A registered securities association may bar any person from becoming associated with a member if such person does not agree (i) to supply the association with such information with respect to its relationship and dealings with the member as may be specified in the rules of the association and (ii) to permit examination of its books and records to verify the accuracy of any information so supplied.

(D) Nothing in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C) of this paragraph shall be construed to permit a registered securities association to deny membership to or condition the membership of, or bar any person from becoming associated with or condition the association of any person with, a broker or dealer that engages exclusively in transactions in municipal securities.

(4) A registered securities association may deny membership to a registered broker or dealer not engaged in a type of business in which the rules of the association require members to be engaged: *Provided, however*, That no registered securities association may deny membership to a registered broker or dealer by reason of the amount of such type of business done by such broker or dealer or the other types of business in which he is engaged.

**(h) Discipline of registered securities association members and persons associated with members; summary proceedings**

(1) In any proceeding by a registered securities association to determine whether a member or person associated with a member should be disciplined (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection) the association shall bring specific charges, notify such member or person of, and give him an opportunity to defend against, such charges, and keep a record. A determination by the association to impose a disciplinary sanction shall be supported by a statement setting forth—

(A) any act or practice in which such member or person associated with a member has been found to have engaged, or which such member or person has been found to have omitted;

(B) the specific provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or the rules of the association which any such act or practice, or omission to act, is deemed to violate; and

(C) the sanction imposed and the reason therefor.

(2) In any proceeding by a registered securities association to determine whether a person shall be denied membership, barred from becoming associated with a member, or prohibited or limited with respect to access to services offered by the association or a member thereof (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection), the association shall notify such person of and give him an opportunity to be heard upon, the specific grounds for denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation under consideration and keep a record. A determination by the association to deny membership, bar a person from becoming associated with a member, or prohibit or limit a person with respect to access to services offered by the association or a member thereof shall be supported by a statement setting forth the specific grounds on which the denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation is based.

(3) A registered securities association may summarily (A) suspend a member or person as-

sociated with a member who has been and is expelled or suspended from any self-regulatory organization or barred or suspended from being associated with a member of any self-regulatory organization, (B) suspend a member who is in such financial or operating difficulty that the association determines and so notifies the Commission that the member cannot be permitted to continue to do business as a member with safety to investors, creditors, other members, or the association, or (C) limit or prohibit any person with respect to access to services offered by the association if subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph is applicable to such person or, in the case of a person who is not a member, if the association determines that such person does not meet the qualification requirements or other prerequisites for such access and such person cannot be permitted to continue to have such access with safety to investors, creditors, members, or the association. Any person aggrieved by any such summary action shall be promptly afforded an opportunity for a hearing by the association in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection. The Commission, by order, may stay any such summary action on its own motion or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby, if the Commission determines summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments) that such stay is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

**(i) Broker-dealer disciplinary history**

A registered securities association shall, within one year from October 15, 1990, (1) establish and maintain a toll-free telephone listing to receive inquiries regarding disciplinary actions involving its members and their associated persons, and (2) promptly respond to such inquiries in writing. Such association may charge persons, other than individual investors, reasonable fees for written responses to such inquiries. Such an association shall not have any liability to any person for any actions taken or omitted in good faith under this paragraph.

**(j) Registration for sales of private securities offerings**

A registered securities association shall create a limited qualification category for any associated person of a member who effects sales as part of a primary offering of securities not involving a public offering, pursuant to section 77c(b), 77d(2), or 77d(6) of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, and shall deem qualified in such limited qualification category, without testing, any bank employee who, in the six month period preceding November 12, 1999, engaged in effecting such sales.

**(k) Limited purpose national securities association**

**(1) Regulation of members with respect to security futures products**

A futures association registered under section 21 of title 7 shall be a registered national securities association for the limited purpose of regulating the activities of members who are registered as brokers or dealers in security futures products pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(11) of this title.

**(2) Requirements for registration**

Such a securities association shall—

(A) be so organized and have the capacity to carry out the purposes of the securities laws applicable to security futures products and to comply, and (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78s(g)(2) of this title) to enforce compliance by its members and persons associated with its members, with the provisions of the securities laws applicable to security futures products, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its rules;

(B) have rules that—

(i) are designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices, to promote just and equitable principles of trade, and, in general, to protect investors and the public interest, including rules governing sales practices and the advertising of security futures products reasonably comparable to those of other national securities associations registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section that are applicable to security futures products; and

(ii) are not designed to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this chapter or the administration of the association;

(C) have rules that provide that (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78s(g)(2) of this title) its members and persons associated with its members shall be appropriately disciplined for violation of any provision of the securities laws applicable to security futures products, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the association, by expulsion, suspension, limitation of activities, functions, and operations, fine, censure, being suspended or barred from being associated with a member, or any other fitting sanction; and

(D) have rules that ensure that members and natural persons associated with members meet such standards of training, experience, and competence necessary to effect transactions in security futures products and are tested for their knowledge of securities and security futures products.

**(3) Exemption from rule change submission**

Such a securities association shall be exempt from submitting proposed rule changes pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title, except that—

(A) the association shall file proposed rule changes related to higher margin levels, fraud or manipulation, recordkeeping, reporting, listing standards, or decimal pricing for security futures products, sales practices for, advertising of, or standards of training, experience, competence, or other qualifications for security futures products for persons who effect transactions in security futures products, or rules effectuating the association's obligation to enforce the securi-

ties laws pursuant to section 78s(b)(7) of this title;

(B) the association shall file pursuant to sections 78s(b)(1) and 78s(b)(2) of this title proposed rule changes related to margin, except for changes resulting in higher margin levels; and

(C) the association shall file pursuant to section 78s(b)(1) of this title proposed rule changes that have been abrogated by the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b)(7)(C) of this title.

**(4) Other exemptions**

Such a securities association shall be exempt from and shall not be required to enforce compliance by its members, and its members shall not, solely with respect to their transactions effected in security futures products, be required to comply, with the following provisions of this chapter and the rules thereunder:

(A) Section 78h of this title.

(B) Subsections (b)(1), (b)(3), (b)(4), (b)(5), (b)(8), (b)(10), (b)(11), (b)(12), (b)(13), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) of this section.

(C) Subsections (d), (f), and (k) of section 78q of this title.

(D) Subsections (a), (f), and (h) of section 78s of this title.

**(*l*) Rules to avoid duplicative regulation of dual registrants**

Consistent with this chapter, each national securities association registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall issue such rules as are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting rules applicable to any broker or dealer registered with the Commission pursuant to section 78*o*(b) of this title (except paragraph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 6f(a) of title 7 (except paragraph (2) thereof), with respect to the application of—

(1) rules of such national securities association of the type specified in section 78*o*(c)(3)(B) of this title involving security futures products; and

(2) similar rules of national securities associations registered pursuant to subsection (k) of this section and national securities exchanges registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title involving security futures products.

**(m) Procedures and rules for security future products**

A national securities association registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall, not later than 8 months after December 21, 2000, implement the procedures specified in section 78f(h)(5)(A) of this title and adopt the rules specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of section 78f(h)(5) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 15A, as added June 25, 1938, ch. 677, § 1, 52 Stat. 1070; amended Pub. L. 88–467, § 7, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 574; Pub. L. 94–29, § 12, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 127; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, § 102(g), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3218; Pub. L. 101–429, title V, § 509, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 957; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, § 106(b)(1), title III, § 303(a), (c), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2350, 2364, 2366; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, § 203, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1391; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, §§ 203(c), 206(j), (k)(1)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–422, 2763A–433.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2), (6), (7), (9), (h)(1)(B), (k)(2)(B)(ii), (4), and (*l*), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Paragraph (12), of subsection (b) of this section, referred to in subsec. (d)(2), was omitted in the general amendment of subsec. (b) by Pub. L. 94–29, see par. (11) of subsec. (b). A new par. (12) was added by Pub. L. 103–302, § 303(a).

CODIFICATION

October 15, 1990, referred to in subsec. (i), was in the original ''the date of enactment of this section'' and was translated as meaning the date of enactment of Pub. L. 101–429, which enacted subsec. (i), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 203(c)], added subsec. (k).

Subsec. (*l*). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(j)], added subsec. (*l*).

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(k)(1)], added subsec. (m).

1999—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 106–102 added subsec. (j).

1993—Subsec. (b)(12). Pub. L. 103–202, § 303(a), added par. (12).

Subsec. (b)(13). Pub. L. 103–202, § 303(c), added par. (13).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103–202, § 106(b)(1)(A), redesignated par. (3) as entire subsec. (f) and struck out pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

''(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, nothing in this section shall be construed to apply with respect to any transaction by a registered broker or dealer in any exempted security.

''(2) A registered securities association may adopt and implement rules applicable to members of such association (A) to enforce compliance by registered brokers and dealers with applicable provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, (B) to provide that its members and persons associated with its members shall be appropriately disciplined, in accordance with subsections (b)(7), (b)(8), and (h) of this section, for violation of applicable provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, (C) to provide for reasonable inspection and examination of the books and records of registered brokers and dealers, (D) to provide for the matters described in paragraphs (b)(3), (b)(4), and (b)(5) of this section, (E) to implement the provisions of subsection (g) of this section, and (F) to prohibit fraudulent, misleading, deceptive, and false advertising.''

Subsec. (g)(3)(D). Pub. L. 103–202, § 106(b)(1)(B)(i), substituted ''transactions in municipal securities'' for ''transactions in exempted securities''.

Subsec. (g)(4), (5). Pub. L. 103–202, § 106(b)(1)(B)(ii), (iii), redesignated par. (5) as (4) and struck out former par. (4) which allowed a registered securities association to deny membership to, condition the membership of, or to otherwise bar association with, the association, under circumstances where a government securities broker or dealer or other person violated financial responsibility rules adopted under section 78*o*–5(b)(1)(A) of this title, or where it appeared likely that such person or entity had or would engage in conduct which would subject such person or entity to sanctions under section 78*o*–5(c) of this title.

1990—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 101–429 added subsec. (i).

1986—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99–571, § 102(g)(1), amended subsec. (f) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (f) read as follows: ''Nothing in this section shall be construed to apply with respect to any transaction by a broker or dealer in any exempted security.''

Subsec. (g)(3)(D). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(g)(2)(A), added subpar. (D).

Subsec. (g)(4), (5). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(g)(2)(B), (C), added par. (4) and redesignated former par. (4) as (5).

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(2), struck out ''with the Commission'' after ''registered'', inserted reference to section 78s(a) of this title, substituted provisions covering an application for registration in the form prescribed by Commission rule containing the rules of the association and such other information and documents as the Commission prescribes as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors for provisions covering a statement in the form prescribed by the Commission setting forth specified information and accompanied by specified documents, and struck out provision that registration not be construed as a waiver of constitutional rights or as a waiver of the right to contest the validity of Commission rules or regulations.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(2), amended subsec. (b) generally, to conform its provisions concerning the registration and regulation of national and affiliated securities associations to those covering the registration and regulation of national securities exchanges contained in section 78f of this title and inserted provisions necessary to accommodate the creation of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board and to implement its purposes.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(3), redesignated subsec. (i) as (e) and in subsec. (e) as so redesignated substituted ''nonmember professional'' for ''nonmember broker or dealer'' in par. (1), substituted ''term 'nonmember professional' shall include (A) with respect to transactions in securities other than municipal securities, any registered broker or dealer who is not a member of any registered securities association, except such a broker or dealer who deals exclusively in commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, and commercial bills'' for ''term 'nonmember broker or dealer' shall include any broker or dealer who makes use of the mails or of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security otherwise than on a national securities exchange, who is not a member of any registered securities association, except a broker or dealer who deals exclusively in commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills'' and added cl. (B) in par. (2), and, in par. (3), designated existing provisions as cl. (A) and added cl. (B). Former subsec. (e), covering the grant and denial of registration and the revocation of affiliated association registration, was struck out. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(3), redesignated subsec. (m) as (f). Former subsec. (f), covering withdrawal from registration, was struck out. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(3), (4), added subsec. (g). Former subsec. (g), covering review by the Commission of adverse actions against association members and stays of such actions, was struck out. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(3), (4), added subsec. (h). Former subsec. (h), covering the Commission's action upon findings, was struck out. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(3), redesignated subsec. (i) as (e) and amended subsec. (e) as so redesignated.

Subsecs. (j) to (*l*). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(3), struck out subsecs. (j) to (*l*) which covered the filing of changes or additions to association rules and current information, the abrogation and alteration of association rules and supplements to association rules, the suspension of an association or its members, the revocation of registration, the expulsion of members, and the removal of officers or directors. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(3), redesignated subsec. (m) as (f).

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 94–29, §12(3), struck out subsec. (n) which directed that provisions of this section prevail in the event of any conflict between this section and any other law of the United States in force on June 25, 1938.

1964—Subsec. (b)(1), (2). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(1), substituted a period for the semicolon at end of pars. (1) and (2).

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(1), (2), substituted a period for the semicolon at end of par. (3), struck out ''of'' before ''any means'', substituted ''paragraph (4) or (5) of this subsection, or a rule of the association permitted under this paragraph. The rules'' for ''paragraph (4) of this subsection: *Provided*, That the rules'', and inserted provision authorizing a registered securities association to adopt rules under which it might exclude from membership persons who had been suspended or expelled from a national securities exchange or who were barred or suspended from being associated with all brokers or dealers who are members of such an exchange for violation of exchange rules.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(1), (3), substituted a period for the semicolon at end of par. (4), deleted from text preceding cl. (A) the language ''or (2) any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such broker or dealer (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), or any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming such'', inserted in cl. (A) ''or has been and is barred or suspended from being associated with all brokers or dealers which are members of such exchange'', inserted in cl. (B) provision for suspension for period not exceeding twelve months or barring or suspending the broker or dealer from being associated with a broker or dealer, inserted at the beginning of cl. (C) ''whether prior or subsequent to becoming a broker or dealer,'' (derived from former cl. (1) of this paragraph) and added to cl. (C) provision conferring jurisdiction upon the Commission, an exchange, or a registered securities association to determine whether an individual is the cause of disciplinary action taken by them against a broker or a dealer, and added cl. (D).

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(4), added par. (5). Former par. (5) redesignated (6).

Subsec. (b)(6) to (8). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(1), (4), substituted periods for semicolons at end of paragraphs, and redesignated former pars. (5) to (7) as (6) to (8), respectively. Former pars. (6) to (8) redesignated (7) to (9), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(1), (4), (5), substituted a period for the semicolon at the end, redesignated former par. (8) as (9), and inserted ''and persons associated with its members'' and ''or being suspended or barred from being associated with all members,'', respectively. Former par. (9) redesignated (10).

Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(4), (6), redesignated former par. (9) as (10), and inserted in paragraph preceding cl. (A) ''and persons associated with members'', ''or the barring of any person from being associated with a member'', ''or other persons'', and ''or person'', substituted a period for a comma at end of cls. (A) and (B) and a period for '', and'' at end of cl. (C), inserted in cl. (A) ''or other person'' in two places and in concluding sentence ''or whether any person shall be barred from being associated with a member'', ''or person'', ''or bar'' in two places, and substituted a period for ''; and'', respectively. Former par. (10) redesignated (11).

Subsec. (b)(11). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(4), redesignated former par. (10) as (11).

Subsec. (b)(12). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(7), added par. (12).

Pub. L. 88–467, §7(a)(7), inserted effective date provisions for application of subsec. (b) prior to its amendment and since its amendment with July 1, 1964 as the guiding date.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(b), substituted ''(10)'' for ''(9)'' and inserted ''and paragraph (12),'' after '', inclusive,''.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 88–467, §7(c), provided that disciplinary action taken by a registered securities association against a person associated with a member will be reviewable by the Commission, shortened the period

for review by an aggrieved person from sixty days or within such longer period as the Commission may determine to thirty days or within such longer period as the Commission may determine, authorized the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing on the question of stay to order no stay of action of a registered securities association pending the Commission's decision on review, and authorized the Commission to limit the hearing on the question of stay to affidavits and oral arguments.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 88–467, § 7(d), made the procedures and the Commission's authority in reviewing disciplinary action by a registered securities association against members and in reviewing association action in denying membership also applicable to Commission review of disciplinary action against persons associated with members and to the barring by an association of any person from being associated with a member.

Subsec. (k)(2). Pub. L. 88–467, § 7(e), inserted '', or with such modifications of such alteration or supplement as it deems necessary'' after ''in the manner theretofore requested'', redesignated cls. (1) to (4) as (A) to (D), respectively, and inserted in cl. (A) ''or the barring from being associated with a member'' and ''or persons associated with members, or the qualifications required for members or natural persons associated with members or any class thereof''.

Subsec. (*l*). Pub. L. 88–467, § 7(f), substituted a period for a semicolon at end of par. (1) and inserted in par. (2) preceding cl. (A) '', or to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or to bar any person from being associated with a member thereof,''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1999 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective at the end of the 18-month period beginning on Nov. 12, 1999, see section 209 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 1828 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 303(a), (c) of Pub. L. 103–202 effective 12 months after Dec. 17, 1993, with provisions for rulemaking authority and review of filings prior to effective date, see section 304(a) of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78f of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77*g* of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 106(b)(1) of Pub. L. 103–202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

Amendment by section 303(a), (c) of Pub. L. 103–202 not to limit authority of Securities and Exchange Commission, a registered securities association or a national securities exchange under any provision of this chapter, or preclude the Commission or such association or exchange from imposing a remedy or procedure required to be imposed under such amendment, see section 304(b) of Pub. L. 103–202, set out in an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 78f of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78*o*–4. Municipal securities

### (a) Registration of municipal securities dealers

(1) It shall be unlawful for any municipal securities dealer (other than one registered as a broker or dealer under section 78*o* of this title) to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security unless such municipal securities dealer is registered in accordance with this subsection.

(2) A municipal securities dealer may be registered by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such municipal securities dealer and any persons associated with such municipal securities dealer as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Within forty-five days of the date of the filing of such application (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents), the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred twenty days of the date of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for the conclusion of such proceedings for up to ninety days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant the registration of a municipal securities dealer if the Commission finds that the requirements of this section are satisfied. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such a finding or if it finds that if the applicant were so registered, its registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under subsection (c) of this section.

(3) Any provision of this chapter (other than section 78e of this title or paragraph (1) of this subsection) which prohibits any act, practice, or course of business if the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce is used

in connection therewith shall also prohibit any such act, practice, or course of business by any registered municipal securities dealer or any person acting on behalf of such municipal securities dealer, irrespective of any use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in connection therewith.

(4) The Commission, by rule or order, upon its own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer or class of brokers, dealers, or municipal securities dealers from any provision of this section or the rules or regulations thereunder, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this section.

**(b) Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board; rules and regulations**

(1) Not later than one hundred twenty days after June 4, 1975, the Commission shall establish a Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (hereinafter in this section referred to as the ''Board''), to be composed initially of fifteen members appointed by the Commission, which shall perform the duties set forth in this section. The initial members of the Board shall serve as members for a term of two years, and shall consist of (A) five individuals who are not associated with any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer (other than by reason of being under common control with, or indirectly controlling, any broker or dealer which is not a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer), at least one of whom shall be representative of investors in municipal securities, and at least one of whom shall be representative of issuers of municipal securities (which members are hereinafter referred to as ''public representatives''); (B) five individuals who are associated with and representative of municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers which are not banks or subsidiaries or departments or divisions of banks (which members are hereinafter referred to as ''broker-dealer representatives''); and (C) five individuals who are associated with and representative of municipal securities dealers which are banks or subsidiaries or departments or divisions of banks (which members are hereinafter referred to as ''bank representatives''). Prior to the expiration of the terms of office of the initial members of the Board, an election shall be held under rules adopted by the Board (pursuant to subsection (b)(2)(B) of this section) of the members to succeed such initial members.

(2) The Board shall propose and adopt rules to effect the purposes of this chapter with respect to transactions in municipal securities effected by brokers, dealers, and municipal securities dealers. (Such rules are hereinafter collectively referred to in this chapter as ''rules of the Board''.) The rules of the Board, as a minimum, shall:

(A) provide that no municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer shall effect any transaction in, or induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security unless such municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer meets such standards of operational capability and such municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer and every natural person associated with such municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer meet such standards of training, experience, competence, and such other qualifications as the Board finds necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. In connection with the definition and application of such standards the Board may—

(i) appropriately classify municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers (taking into account relevant matters, including types of business done, nature of securities other than municipal securities sold, and character of business organization), and persons associated with municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers;

(ii) specify that all or any portion of such standards shall be applicable to any such class;

(iii) require persons in any such class to pass tests administered in accordance with subsection (c)(7) of this section; and

(iv) provide that persons in any such class other than municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers and partners, officers, and supervisory employees of municipal securities brokers or municipal securities dealers, may be qualified solely on the basis of compliance with such standards of training and such other qualifications as the Board finds appropriate.

(B) establish fair procedures for the nomination and election of members of the Board and assure fair representation in such nominations and elections of municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers. Such rules shall provide that the membership of the Board shall at all times be equally divided among public representatives, broker-dealer representatives, and bank representatives, and that the public representatives shall be subject to approval by the Commission to assure that no one of them is associated with any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer (other than by reason of being under common control with, or indirectly controlling, any broker or dealer which is not a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer) and that at least one is representative of investors in municipal securities and at least one is representative of issuers of municipal securities. Such rules shall also specify the term members shall serve and may increase the number of members which shall constitute the whole Board provided that such number is an odd number.

(C) be designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices, to promote just and equitable principles of trade, to foster cooperation and coordination with persons engaged in regulating, clearing, settling, processing information with respect to, and facilitating transactions in municipal securities, to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a free and open market in municipal securities, and, in general, to protect investors and the public interest; and not be designed to

permit unfair discrimination between customers, issuers, municipal securities brokers, or municipal securities dealers, to fix minimum profits, to impose any schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by municipal securities brokers or municipal securities dealers, to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this chapter or the administration of the Board, or to impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(D) if the Board deems appropriate, provide for the arbitration of claims, disputes, and controversies relating to transactions in municipal securities: *Provided, however*, That no person other than a municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, or person associated with such a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer may be compelled to submit to such arbitration except at his instance and in accordance with section 78cc of this title.

(E) provide for the periodic examination in accordance with subsection (c)(7) of this section of municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers to determine compliance with applicable provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and the rules of the Board. Such rules shall specify the minimum scope and frequency of such examinations and shall be designed to avoid unnecessary regulatory duplication or undue regulatory burdens for any such municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer.

(F) include provisions governing the form and content of quotations relating to municipal securities which may be distributed or published by any municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, or person associated with such a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer, and the persons to whom such quotations may be supplied. Such rules relating to quotations shall be designed to produce fair and informative quotations, to prevent fictitious or misleading quotations, and to promote orderly procedures for collecting, distributing, and publishing quotations.

(G) prescribe records to be made and kept by municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers and the periods for which such records shall be preserved.

(H) define the term ''separately identifiable department or division'', as that term is used in section 78c(a)(30) of this title, in accordance with specified and appropriate standards to assure that a bank is not deemed to be engaged in the business of buying and selling municipal securities through a separately identifiable department or division unless such department or division is organized and administered so as to permit independent examination and enforcement of applicable provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and the rules of the Board. A separately identifiable department or division of a bank may be engaged in activities other than those relating to municipal securities.

(I) provide for the operation and administration of the Board, including the selection of a Chairman from among the members of the Board, the compensation of the members of the Board, and the appointment and compensation of such employees, attorneys, and consultants as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out the Board's functions under this section.

(J) provide that each municipal securities broker and each municipal securities dealer shall pay to the Board such reasonable fees and charges as may be necessary or appropriate to defray the costs and expenses of operating and administering the Board. Such rules shall specify the amount of such fees and charges.

(K) establish the terms and conditions under which any municipal securities dealer may sell, or prohibit any municipal securities dealer from selling, any part of a new issue of municipal securities to a municipal securities investment portfolio during the underwriting period.

(3) Nothing in this section shall be construed to impair or limit the power of the Commission under this chapter.

**(c) Discipline of municipal securities dealers; censure; suspension or revocation of registration; other sanctions; investigations**

(1) No broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security in contravention of any rule of the Board.

(2) The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations, suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoke the registration of any municipal securities dealer, if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, denial, suspension, or revocation, is in the public interest and that such municipal securities dealer has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78*o*(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).

(3) Pending final determination whether any registration under this section shall be revoked, the Commission, by order, may suspend such registration, if such suspension appears to the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Any registered municipal securities dealer may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission may deem necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any registered municipal securities dealer is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a municipal securities dealer, the

Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration of such municipal securities dealer.

(4) The Commission, by order, shall censure or place limitations on the activities or functions of any person associated, seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated with a municipal securities dealer, or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or bar any such person from being associated with a municipal securities dealer, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78*o*(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4). It shall be unlawful for any person as to whom an order entered pursuant to this paragraph or paragraph (5) of this subsection suspending or barring him from being associated with a municipal securities dealer is in effect willfully to become, or to be, associated with a municipal securities dealer without the consent of the Commission, and it shall be unlawful for any municipal securities dealer to permit such a person to become, or remain, a person associated with him without the consent of the Commission, if such municipal securities dealer knew, or, in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order.

(5) With respect to any municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, the appropriate regulatory agency for such municipal securities dealer may sanction any such municipal securities dealer in the manner and for the reasons specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection and any person associated with such municipal securities dealer in the manner and for the reasons specified in paragraph (4) of this subsection. In addition, such appropriate regulatory agency may, in accordance with section 1818 of title 12, enforce compliance by such municipal securities dealer or any person associated with such municipal securities dealer with the provisions of this section, section 78q of this title, the rules of the Board, and the rules of the Commission pertaining to municipal securities dealers, persons associated with municipal securities dealers, and transactions in municipal securities. For purposes of the preceding sentence, any violation of any such provision shall constitute adequate basis for the issuance of any order under section 1818(b) or 1818(c) of title 12, and the customers of any such municipal securities dealer shall be deemed to be ''depositors'' as that term is used in section 1818(c) of title 12. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to affect in any way the powers of such appropriate regulatory agency to proceed against such municipal securities dealer under any other provision of law.

(6)(A) The Commission, prior to the entry of an order of investigation, or commencement of any proceedings, against any municipal securities dealer, or person associated with any municipal securities dealer, for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, for violation of any provision of this section, section 78*o*(c)(1) or 78*o*(c)(2) of this title, any rule or regulation under any such section, or any rule of the Board, shall (i) give notice to the appropriate regulatory agency for such municipal securities dealer of the identity of such municipal securities dealer or person associated with such municipal securities dealer, the nature of and basis for such proposed action, and whether the Commission is seeking a monetary penalty against such municipal securities dealer or such associated person pursuant to section 78u–2 of this title; and (ii) consult with such appropriate regulatory agency concerning the effect of such proposed action on sound banking practices and the feasibility and desirability of coordinating such action with any proceeding or proposed proceeding by such appropriate regulatory agency against such municipal securities dealer or associated person.

(B) The appropriate regulatory agency for a municipal securities dealer (if other than the Commission), prior to the entry of an order of investigation, or commencement of any proceedings, against such municipal securities dealer or person associated with such municipal securities dealer, for violation of any provision of this section, the rules of the Board, or the rules or regulations of the Commission pertaining to municipal securities dealers, persons associated with municipal securities dealers, or transactions in municipal securities shall (i) give notice to the Commission of the identity of such municipal securities dealer or person associated with such municipal securities dealer and the nature of and basis for such proposed action and (ii) consult with the Commission concerning the effect of such proposed action on the protection of investors and the feasibility and desirability of coordinating such action with any proceeding or proposed proceeding by the Commission against such municipal securities dealer or associated person.

(C) Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to impair or limit (other than by the requirement of prior consultation) the power of the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency for a municipal securities dealer to initiate any action of a class described in this paragraph or to affect in any way the power of the Commission or such appropriate regulatory agency to initiate any other action pursuant to this chapter or any other provision of law.

(7)(A) Tests required pursuant to subsection (b)(2)(A)(iii) of this section shall be administered by or on behalf of and periodic examinations pursuant to subsection (b)(2)(E) of this section shall be conducted by—

(i) a registered securities association, in the case of municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers who are members of such association; and

(ii) the appropriate regulatory agency for any municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer, in the case of all other municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers.

(B) A registered securities association shall make a report of any examination conducted pursuant to subsection (b)(2)(E) of this section and promptly furnish the Commission a copy thereof and any data supplied to it in connection with such examination. Subject to such limitations as the Commission, by rule, determines to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, the Commission shall, on request, make available to the Board a copy of any report of an examination of a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer made by or furnished to the Commission pursuant to this paragraph or section 78q(c)(3) of this title.

(8) The Commission is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise, in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to remove from office or censure any member or employee of the Board, who, the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, has willfully (A) violated any provision of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, or the rules of the Board or (B) abused his authority.

**(d) Issuance of municipal securities**

(1) Neither the Commission nor the Board is authorized under this chapter, by rule or regulation, to require any issuer of municipal securities, directly or indirectly through a purchaser or prospective purchaser of securities from the issuer, to file with the Commission or the Board prior to the sale of such securities by the issuer any application, report, or document in connection with the issuance, sale, or distribution of such securities.

(2) The Board is not authorized under this chapter to require any issuer of municipal securities, directly or indirectly through a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer or otherwise, to furnish to the Board or to a purchaser or a prospective purchaser of such securities any application, report, document, or information with respect to such issuer: *Provided, however*, That the Board may require municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers to furnish to the Board or purchasers or prospective purchasers of municipal securities applications, reports, documents, and information with respect to the issuer thereof which is generally available from a source other than such issuer. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to impair or limit the power of the Commission under any provision of this chapter.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 15B, as added Pub. L. 94–29, § 13, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 131; amended Pub. L. 98–38, § 4, June 6, 1983, 97 Stat. 207; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§ 318–320, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256, 1257; Pub. L. 101–429, title II, § 205, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 941; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, § 203(c)(1), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2718; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, § 301(b)(9), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, § 604(c)(1)(B), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 796.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(3), (b)(2), (3), (c)(6)(C), (8), and (d), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (c)(2), (4). Pub. L. 107–204 substituted '', or is subject to an order or finding,'' for ''or omission'' and ''(H), or (G)'' for ''or (G)''.

1998—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted ''convicted of any offense'' for ''convicted by any offense'' in first sentence.

1990—Subsec. (c)(2), (4). Pub. L. 101–550 substituted ''(A), (D), (E), or (G)'' for ''(A), (D), or (E)''.

Subsec. (c)(6)(A). Pub. L. 101–429 substituted '', the nature'' for ''and the nature'' and ''proposed action, and whether the Commission is seeking a monetary penalty against such municipal securities dealer or such associated person pursuant to section 78u–2 of this title; and'' for ''proposed action and''.

1987—Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 100–181, § 318, substituted ''municipal securities dealers, to regulate'' for ''municipal security dealers, to regulate'' ''purposes of this chapter'' for ''purposes of this chapter or the securities'', and ''burden on competition'' for ''burden or competition''.

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 100–181, § 319, substituted new first sentence for former first sentence which read as follows: ''The Commission, by order, shall censure any person associated, or seeking to become associated with, a municipal securities dealer or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or bar any such person from being associated with a municipal securities dealer, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed or omitted any act or omission enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), or (E) of paragraph (4) of section 78*o*(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).''

Subsec. (c)(6)(A). Pub. L. 100–181, § 320, substituted ''Board'' for ''board''.

1983—Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 98–38, § 4(a), inserted ''(other than by reason of being under common control with, or indirectly controlling, any broker or dealer which is not a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer)'' after ''securities dealer''.

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 98–38, § 4(b), inserted ''(other than by reason of being under common control with, or indirectly controlling, any broker or dealer which is not a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer)'' after ''broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective June 4, 1975, except for subsec. (a) which is effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

## § 78*o*–5. Government securities brokers and dealers

**(a) Registration requirements; notice to regulatory agencies; manner of registration; exemption from registration requirements**

(1)(A) It shall be unlawful for any government securities broker or government securities dealer (other than a registered broker or dealer or a financial institution) to make use of the mails

or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security unless such government securities broker or government securities dealer is registered in accordance with paragraph (2) of this subsection.

(B)(i) It shall be unlawful for any government securities broker or government securities dealer that is a registered broker or dealer or a financial institution to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security unless such government securities broker or government securities dealer has filed with the appropriate regulatory agency written notice that it is a government securities broker or government securities dealer. When such a government securities broker or government securities dealer ceases to act as such it shall file with the appropriate regulatory agency a written notice that it is no longer acting as a government securities broker or government securities dealer.

(ii) Such notices shall be in such form and contain such information concerning a government securities broker or government securities dealer that is a financial institution and any persons associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall, by rule, after consultation with each appropriate regulatory agency (including the Commission), prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Such notices shall be in such form and contain such information concerning a government securities broker or government securities dealer that is a registered broker or dealer and any persons associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer as the Commission shall, by rule, prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(iii) Each appropriate regulatory agency (other than the Commission) shall make available to the Commission the notices which have been filed with it under this subparagraph, and the Commission shall maintain and make available to the public such notices and the notices it receives under this subparagraph.

(2) A government securities broker or a government securities dealer subject to the registration requirement of paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection may be registered by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such government securities broker or government securities dealer and any persons associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Within 45 days of the date of filing of such application (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents), the Commission shall—

(i) by order grant registration, or

(ii) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within 120 days of the date of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings, the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The order granting registration shall not be effective until such government securities broker or government securities dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange registered under section 78f of this title, or a securities association registered under section 78*o*–3 of this title, unless the Commission has exempted such government securities broker or government securities dealer, by rule or order, from such membership. The Commission may extend the time for the conclusion of such proceedings for up to 90 days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant the registration of a government securities broker or a government securities dealer if the Commission finds that the requirements of this section are satisfied. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such a finding or if it finds that if the applicant were so registered, its registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under subsection (c) of this section.

(3) Any provision of this chapter (other than section 78e of this title or paragraph (1) of this subsection) which prohibits any act, practice, or course of business if the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce is used in connection therewith shall also prohibit any such act, practice, or course of business by any government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or having filed notice under paragraph (1) of this subsection or any person acting on behalf of such government securities broker or government securities dealer, irrespective of any use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in connection therewith.

(4) No government securities broker or government securities dealer that is required to register under paragraph (1)(A) and that is not a member of the Securities Investor Protection Corporation shall effect any transaction in any security in contravention of such rules as the Commission shall prescribe pursuant to this subsection to assure that its customers receive complete, accurate, and timely disclosure of the inapplicability of Securities Investor Protection Corporation coverage to their accounts.

(5) The Secretary of the Treasury (hereinafter in this section referred to as the ''Secretary''), by rule or order, upon the Secretary's own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any government securities broker or government securities dealer, or class of government securities brokers or government securities dealers, from any provision of subsection (a), (b), or (d) of this section, other than subsection (d)(3) of this section, or the rules thereunder, if the Secretary finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this chapter.

**(b) Rules with respect to transactions in government securities**

(1) The Secretary shall propose and adopt rules to effect the purposes of this chapter with respect to transactions in government securities effected by government securities brokers and government securities dealers as follows:

(A) Such rules shall provide safeguards with respect to the financial responsibility and related practices of government securities brokers and government securities dealers including, but not limited to, capital adequacy standards, the acceptance of custody and use of customers' securities, the carrying and use of customers' deposits or credit balances, and the transfer and control of government securities subject to repurchase agreements and in similar transactions.

(B) Such rules shall require every government securities broker and government securities dealer to make reports to and furnish copies of records to the appropriate regulatory agency, and to file with the appropriate regulatory agency, annually or more frequently, a balance sheet and income statement certified by an independent public accountant, prepared on a calendar or fiscal year basis, and such other financial statements (which shall, as the Secretary specifies, be certified) and information concerning its financial condition as required by such rules.

(C) Such rules shall require records to be made and kept by government securities brokers and government securities dealers and shall specify the periods for which such records shall be preserved.

(2) RISK ASSESSMENT FOR HOLDING COMPANY SYSTEMS.—

(A) OBLIGATIONS TO OBTAIN, MAINTAIN, AND REPORT INFORMATION.—Every person who is registered as a government securities broker or government securities dealer under this section shall obtain such information and make and keep such records as the Secretary by rule prescribes concerning the registered person's policies, procedures, or systems for monitoring and controlling financial and operational risks to it resulting from the activities of any of its associated persons, other than a natural person. Such records shall describe, in the aggregate, each of the financial and securities activities conducted by, and customary sources of capital and funding of, those of its associated persons whose business activities are reasonably likely to have a material impact on the financial or operational condition of such registered person, including its capital, its liquidity, or its ability to conduct or finance its operations. The Secretary, by rule, may require summary reports of such information to be filed with the registered person's appropriate regulatory agency no more frequently than quarterly.

(B) AUTHORITY TO REQUIRE ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.—If, as a result of adverse market conditions or based on reports provided pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph or other available information, the appropriate regulatory agency reasonably concludes that it has concerns regarding the financial or operational condition of any government securities broker or government securities dealer registered under this section, such agency may require the registered person to make reports concerning the financial and securities activities of any of such person's associated persons, other than a natural person, whose business activities are reasonably likely to have a material impact on the financial or operational condition of such registered person. The appropriate regulatory agency, in requiring reports pursuant to this subparagraph, shall specify the information required, the period for which it is required, the time and date on which the information must be furnished, and whether the information is to be furnished directly to the appropriate regulatory agency or to a self-regulatory organization with primary responsibility for examining the registered person's financial and operational condition.

(C) SPECIAL PROVISIONS WITH RESPECT TO ASSOCIATED PERSONS SUBJECT TO FEDERAL BANKING AGENCY REGULATION.—

(i) COOPERATION IN IMPLEMENTATION.—In developing and implementing reporting requirements pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph with respect to associated persons subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency, the Secretary shall consult with and consider the views of each such Federal banking agency. If a Federal banking agency comments in writing on a proposed rule of the Secretary under this paragraph that has been published for comment, the Secretary shall respond in writing to such written comment before adopting the proposed rule. The Secretary shall, at the request of a Federal banking agency, publish such comment and response in the Federal Register at the time of publishing the adopted rule.

(ii) USE OF BANKING AGENCY REPORTS.—A registered government securities broker or government securities dealer shall be in compliance with any recordkeeping or reporting requirement adopted pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph concerning an associated person that is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency if such government securities broker or government securities dealer utilizes for such recordkeeping or reporting requirement copies of reports filed by the associated person with the Federal banking agency pursuant to section 161 of title 12, subchapter VIII of chapter 3 of title 12, section 1817(a) of title 12, section 1467a(b) of title 12, or section 1847 of title 12. The Secretary may, however, by rule adopted pursuant to subparagraph (A), require any registered government securities broker or government securities dealer filing such reports with the appropriate regulatory agency to obtain, maintain, or report supplemental information if the Secretary makes an explicit finding, based on information provided by the appropriate regulatory agency, that such supplemental information is necessary to inform the appropriate regulatory agency regarding potential risks to

such government securities broker or government securities dealer. Prior to requiring any such supplemental information, the Secretary shall first request the Federal banking agency to expand its reporting requirements to include such information.

(iii) PROCEDURE FOR REQUIRING ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.—Prior to making a request pursuant to subparagraph (B) of this paragraph for information with respect to an associated person that is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency, the appropriate regulatory agency shall—

(I) notify such banking agency of the information required with respect to such associated person; and

(II) consult with such agency to determine whether the information required is available from such agency and for other purposes, unless the appropriate regulatory agency determines that any delay resulting from such consultation would be inconsistent with ensuring the financial and operational condition of the government securities broker or government securities dealer or the stability or integrity of the securities markets.

(iv) EXCLUSION FOR EXAMINATION REPORTS.—Nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to permit the Secretary or an appropriate regulatory agency to require any registered government securities broker or government securities dealer to obtain, maintain, or furnish any examination report of any Federal banking agency or any supervisory recommendations or analysis contained therein.

(v) CONFIDENTIALITY OF INFORMATION PROVIDED.—No information provided to or obtained by an appropriate regulatory agency from any Federal banking agency pursuant to a request under clause (iii) of this subparagraph regarding any associated person which is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency may be disclosed to any other person (other than a self-regulatory organization), without the prior written approval of the Federal banking agency. Nothing in this clause shall authorize the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission.

(vi) NOTICE TO BANKING AGENCIES CONCERNING FINANCIAL AND OPERATIONAL CONDITION CONCERNS.—The Secretary or appropriate regulatory agency shall notify the Federal banking agency of any concerns of the Secretary or the appropriate regulatory agency regarding significant financial or operational risks resulting from the activities of any government securities broker or government securities dealer to any associated person thereof which is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of the Federal banking agency.

(vii) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this subparagraph, the term ''Federal banking agency'' shall have the same meaning as the term ''appropriate Federal banking agency'' in section 1813(q) of title 12.

(D) EXEMPTIONS.—The Secretary by rule or order may exempt any person or class of persons, under such terms and conditions and for such periods as the Secretary shall provide in such rule or order, from the provisions of this paragraph, and the rules thereunder. In granting such exemptions, the Secretary shall consider, among other factors—

(i) whether information of the type required under this paragraph is available from a supervisory agency (as defined in section 3401(6)[1] of title 12), a State insurance commission or similar State agency, the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, or a similar foreign regulator;

(ii) the primary business of any associated person;

(iii) the nature and extent of domestic or foreign regulation of the associated person's activities;

(iv) the nature and extent of the registered person's securities transactions; and

(v) with respect to the registered person and its associated persons, on a consolidated basis, the amount and proportion of assets devoted to, and revenues derived from, activities in the United States securities markets.

(E) CONFORMITY WITH REQUIREMENTS UNDER SECTION 78q(h).—In exercising authority pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph concerning information with respect to associated persons of government securities brokers and government securities dealers who are also associated persons of registered brokers or dealers reporting to the Commission pursuant to section 78q(h) of this title, the requirements relating to such associated persons shall conform, to the greatest extent practicable, to the requirements under section 78q(h) of this title.

(F) AUTHORITY TO LIMIT DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary and any appropriate regulatory agency shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be reported under this paragraph, or any information supplied to the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency by any domestic or foreign regulatory agency that relates to the financial or operational condition of any associated person of a registered government securities broker or a government securities dealer. Nothing in this paragraph shall authorize the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the informa-

[1] See References in Text note below.

tion for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this paragraph shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

(3)(A) With respect to any financial institution that has filed notice as a government securities broker or government securities dealer or that is required to file notice under subsection (a)(1)(B) of this section, the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer may issue such rules and regulations with respect to transactions in government securities as may be necessary to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices and to promote just and equitable principles of trade. If the Secretary of the Treasury determines, and notifies the appropriate regulatory agency, that such rule or regulation, if implemented, would, or as applied does (i) adversely affect the liquidity or efficiency of the market for government securities; or (ii) impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section, the appropriate regulatory agency shall, prior to adopting the proposed rule or regulation, find that such rule or regulation is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section notwithstanding the Secretary's determination.

(B) The appropriate regulatory agency shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary prior to approving or amending a rule or regulation under this paragraph, except where the appropriate regulatory agency determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious and summary action and publishes its reasons therefor. If the Secretary comments in writing to the appropriate regulatory agency on a proposed rule or regulation that has been published for comment, the appropriate regulatory agency shall respond in writing to such written comment before approving the proposed rule or regulation.

(C) In promulgating rules under this section, the appropriate regulatory agency shall consider the sufficiency and appropriateness of then existing laws and rules applicable to government securities brokers, government securities dealers, and persons associated with government securities brokers and government securities dealers.

(4) Rules promulgated and orders issued under this section shall—

(A) be designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices and to protect the integrity, liquidity, and efficiency of the market for government securities, investors, and the public interest; and

(B) not be designed to permit unfair discrimination between customers, issuers, government securities brokers, or government securities dealers, or to impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(5) In promulgating rules and issuing orders under this section, the Secretary—

(A) may appropriately classify government securities brokers and government securities dealers (taking into account relevant matters, including types of business done, nature of securities other than government securities purchased or sold, and character of business organization) and persons associated with government securities brokers and government securities dealers;

(B) may determine, to the extent consistent with paragraph (2) of this subsection and with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this chapter, not to apply, in whole or in part, certain rules under this section, or to apply greater, lesser, or different standards, to certain classes of government securities brokers, government securities dealers, or persons associated with government securities brokers or government securities dealers;

(C) shall consider the sufficiency and appropriateness of then existing laws and rules applicable to government securities brokers, government securities dealers, and persons associated with government securities brokers and government securities dealers; and

(D) shall consult with and consider the views of the Commission and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, except where the Secretary determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious or summary action and publishes its reasons for such determination.

(6) If the Commission or the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System comments in writing on a proposed rule of the Secretary that has been published for comment, the Secretary shall respond in writing to such written comment before approving the proposed rule.

(7) No government securities broker or government securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security in contravention of any rule under this section.

**(c) Sanctions for violations**

(1) With respect to any government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or required to register under subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section—

(A) The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or revoke the registration of such government securities broker or government securities dealer, if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such government securities broker or government securities dealer, or any person associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer (whether prior or subsequent to becoming so associated), has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78*o*(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the

proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).

(B) Pending final determination whether registration of any government securities broker or government securities dealer shall be revoked, the Commission, by order, may suspend such registration, if such suspension appears to the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Any registered government securities broker or registered government securities dealer may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission may deem necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any registered government securities broker or registered government securities dealer is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a government securities broker or government securities dealer, the Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration of such government securities broker or government securities dealer.

(C) The Commission, by order, shall censure or place limitations on the activities or functions of any person associated, or seeking to become associated, with a government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or required to register under subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section or suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months or bar any such person from being associated with such a government securities broker or government securities dealer, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78*o*(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).

(2)(A) With respect to any government securities broker or government securities dealer which is not registered or required to register under subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section, the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer may, in the manner and for the reasons specified in paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection, censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or bar from acting as a government securities broker or government securities dealer any such government securities broker or government securities dealer, and may sanction any person associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer in the manner and for the reasons specified in paragraph (1)(C) of this subsection.

(B) In addition, where applicable, such appropriate regulatory agency may, in accordance with section 1818 of title 12, section 1464 of title 12, or section 1730[2] of title 12, enforce compliance by such government securities broker or government securities dealer or any person associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer with the provisions of this section and the rules thereunder.

(C) For purposes of subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, any violation of any such provision shall constitute adequate basis for the issuance of any order under section 1818(b) or (c) of title 12, section 1464(d)(2) or (d)(3)[2] of title 12, or section 1730(e) or (f)[2] of title 12, and the customers of any such government securities broker or government securities dealer shall be deemed, respectively, ''depositors'' as that term is used in section 1818(c) of title 12, ''savings account holders'' as that term is used in section 1464(d)(3)[2] of title 12, or ''insured members'' as that term is used in section 1730(f)[2] of title 12.

(D) Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to affect in any way the powers of such appropriate regulatory agency to proceed against such government securities broker or government securities dealer under any other provision of law.

(E) Each appropriate regulatory agency (other than the Commission) shall promptly notify the Commission after it has imposed any sanction under this paragraph on a government securities broker or government securities dealer, or a person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer, and the Commission shall maintain, and make available to the public, a record of such sanctions and any sanctions imposed by it under this subsection.

(3) It shall be unlawful for any person as to whom an order entered pursuant to paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection suspending or barring him from being associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer is in effect willfully to become, or to be, associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer without the consent of the appropriate regulatory agency, and it shall be unlawful for any government securities broker or government securities dealer to permit such a person to become, or remain, a person associated with it without the consent of the appropriate regulatory agency, if such government securities broker or government securities dealer knew, or, in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order.

**(d) Records of brokers and dealers subject to examination**

(1) All records of a government securities broker or government securities dealer are subject at any time, or from time to time, to such reasonable periodic, special, or other examinations by representatives of the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer as such appropriate regulatory agency deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

[2] See References in Text note below.

(2) Information received by an appropriate regulatory agency, the Secretary, or the Commission from or with respect to any government securities broker, government securities dealer, any person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer, or any other person subject to this section or rules promulgated thereunder, may be made available by the Secretary or the recipient agency to the Commission, the Secretary, the Department of Justice, the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, any self-regulatory organization, or any Federal Reserve Bank.

(3) GOVERNMENT SECURITIES TRADE RECONSTRUCTION.—

(A) FURNISHING RECORDS.—Every government securities broker and government securities dealer shall furnish to the Commission on request such records of government securities transactions, including records of the date and time of execution of trades, as the Commission may require to reconstruct trading in the course of a particular inquiry or investigation being conducted by the Commission for enforcement or surveillance purposes. In requiring information pursuant to this paragraph, the Commission shall specify the information required, the period for which it is required, the time and date on which the information must be furnished, and whether the information is to be furnished directly to the Commission, to the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, or to an appropriate regulatory agency or self-regulatory organization with responsibility for examining the government securities broker or government securities dealer. The Commission may require that such information be furnished in machine readable form notwithstanding any limitation in subparagraph (B). In utilizing its authority to require information in machine readable form, the Commission shall minimize the burden such requirement may place on small government securities brokers and dealers.

(B) LIMITATION; CONSTRUCTION.—The Commission shall not utilize its authority under this paragraph to develop regular reporting requirements, except that the Commission may require information to be furnished under this paragraph as frequently as necessary for particular inquiries or investigations for enforcement or surveillance purposes. This paragraph shall not be construed as requiring, or as authorizing the Commission to require, any government securities broker or government securities dealer to obtain or maintain any information for purposes of this paragraph which is not otherwise maintained by such broker or dealer in accordance with any other provision of law or usual and customary business practice. The Commission shall, where feasible, avoid requiring any information to be furnished under this paragraph that the Commission may obtain from the Federal Reserve Bank of New York.

(C) PROCEDURES FOR REQUIRING INFORMATION.—At the time the Commission requests any information pursuant to subparagraph (A) with respect to any government securities broker or government securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, the Commission shall notify the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer and, upon request, furnish to the appropriate regulatory agency any information supplied to the Commission.

(D) CONSULTATION.—Within 90 days after December 17, 1993, and annually thereafter, or upon the request of any other appropriate regulatory agency, the Commission shall consult with the other appropriate regulatory agencies to determine the availability of records that may be required to be furnished under this paragraph and, for those records available directly from the other appropriate regulatory agencies, to develop a procedure for furnishing such records expeditiously upon the Commission's request.

(E) EXCLUSION FOR EXAMINATION REPORTS.—Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed so as to permit the Commission to require any government securities broker or government securities dealer to obtain, maintain, or furnish any examination report of any appropriate regulatory agency other than the Commission or any supervisory recommendations or analysis contained in any such examination report.

(F) AUTHORITY TO LIMIT DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission and the appropriate regulatory agencies shall not be compelled to disclose any information required or obtained under this paragraph. Nothing in this paragraph shall authorize the Commission or any appropriate regulatory agency to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission or any appropriate regulatory agency from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or from complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States, the Commission, or the appropriate regulatory agency. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subparagraph shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

**(e) Membership in national securities exchange; exemptions**

(1) It shall be unlawful for any government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or required to register with the Commission under subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section to effect any transaction in, or induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security, unless such government securities broker or government securities dealer is a member of a national securities exchange registered under section 78f of this title or a securities association registered under section 78*o*–3 of this title.

(2) The Commission, after consultation with the Secretary, by rule or order, as it deems consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt from paragraph (1) of this subsection any government securities broker or

government securities dealer or class of government securities brokers or government securities dealers specified in such rule or order.

**(f) Large position reporting**

**(1) Reporting requirements**

The Secretary may adopt rules to require specified persons holding, maintaining, or controlling large positions in to-be-issued or recently issued Treasury securities to file such reports regarding such positions as the Secretary determines to be necessary and appropriate for the purpose of monitoring the impact in the Treasury securities market of concentrations of positions in Treasury securities and for the purpose of otherwise assisting the Commission in the enforcement of this chapter, taking into account any impact of such rules on the efficiency and liquidity of the Treasury securities market and the cost to taxpayers of funding the Federal debt. Unless otherwise specified by the Secretary, reports required under this subsection shall be filed with the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, acting as agent for the Secretary. Such reports shall, on a timely basis, be provided directly to the Commission by the person with whom they are filed.

**(2) Recordkeeping requirements**

Rules under this subsection may require persons holding, maintaining, or controlling large positions in Treasury securities to make and keep for prescribed periods such records as the Secretary determines are necessary or appropriate to ensure that such persons can comply with reporting requirements under this subsection.

**(3) Aggregation rules**

Rules under this subsection—

(A) may prescribe the manner in which positions and accounts shall be aggregated for the purpose of this subsection, including aggregation on the basis of common ownership or control; and

(B) may define which persons (individually or as a group) hold, maintain, or control large positions.

**(4) Definitional authority; determination of reporting threshold**

(A) In prescribing rules under this subsection, the Secretary may, consistent with the purpose of this subsection, define terms used in this subsection that are not otherwise defined in section 78c of this title.

(B) Rules under this subsection shall specify—

(i) the minimum size of positions subject to reporting under this subsection, which shall be no less than the size that provides the potential for manipulation or control of the supply or price, or the cost of financing arrangements, of an issue or the portion thereof that is available for trading;

(ii) the types of positions (which may include financing arrangements) to be reported;

(iii) the securities to be covered; and

(iv) the form and manner in which reports shall be transmitted, which may include transmission in machine readable form.

**(5) Exemptions**

Consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, the Secretary by rule or order may exempt in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, any person or class of persons, or any transaction or class of transactions, from the requirements of this subsection.

**(6) Limitation on disclosure of information**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary and the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be kept or reported under this subsection. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Secretary or the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Secretary or the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or from complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States, the Secretary, or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this paragraph shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

**(g) Effect on other laws; authority of Commission**

(1) Nothing in this section except paragraph (2) of this subsection shall be construed to impair or limit the authority under any other provision of law of the Commission, the Secretary of the Treasury, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Comptroller of the Currency, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the Government National Mortgage Association.

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Commission shall not have any authority to make investigations of, require the filing of a statement by, or take any other action under this chapter against a government securities broker or government securities dealer, or any person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer, for any violation or threatened violation of the provisions of this section, other than subsection (d)(3) of this section[3] or the rules or regulations thereunder, unless the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer. Nothing in the preceding sentence shall be construed to limit the authority of the Commission with respect to violations or threatened violations of any provision of this chapter other than this section (except subsection (d)(3) of this section), the rules or regulations under any such other provision, or investigations pursuant to section 78u(a)(2) of this title to assist a foreign securities authority.

**(h) Emergency authority**

The Secretary may, by order, take any action with respect to a matter or action subject to regulation by the Secretary under this section,

[3] So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

or the rules of the Secretary under this section, involving a government security or a market therein (or significant portion or segment of that market), that the Commission may take under section 78*l*(k)(2) of this title with respect to transactions in securities (other than exempted securities) or a market therein (or significant portion or segment of that market).

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 15C, as added Pub. L. 99–571, title I, § 101, Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3208; amended Pub. L. 100–181, title VIII, § 801(a), Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 101–73, title VII, § 744(u)(3), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 441; Pub. L. 101–432, § 4(b), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 970; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, § 203(c), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2718; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, §§ 102–104, 106(a), 108, 109(b)(1), (c), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2345, 2346, 2349, 2351–2353; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, § 301(b)(10), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, § 604(c)(1)(B), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 796; Pub. L. 108–458, title VII, § 7803(d), Dec. 17, 2004, 118 Stat. 3863.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(3), (5), (b)(1), (2)(B), (4)(B), (d)(1), (f)(1), and (g)(2), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Subchapter VIII of chapter 3 of title 12, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(C)(ii), was in the original ''section 9 of the Federal Reserve Act'', meaning section 9 of act Dec. 23, 1913, ch. 6, 38 Stat. 251, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter VIII (§ 321 et seq.) of chapter 3 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Section 3401(6) of title 12, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(D)(i), was redesignated section 3401(7) of title 12 by Pub. L. 101–73, title IX, § 941(1), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 496.

Section 1730 of title 12, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(B), (C), was repealed by Pub. L. 101–73, title IV, § 407, Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 363.

Section 1464(d)(2) and (d)(3) of title 12, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(C), was amended generally by Pub. L. 101–73, title III, § 301, Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 282, and, as so amended, no longer relates to issuance of orders nor contains the term ''savings account holders''.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 108–458 added subsec. (h).

2002—Subsec. (c)(1)(A), (C). Pub. L. 107–204 substituted '', or is subject to an order or finding,'' for ''or omission'' and ''(H), or (G)'' for ''or (G)''.

1998—Subsec. (f)(5). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted ''class of persons'' for ''class or persons''.

1993—Subsec. (a)(2)(ii). Pub. L. 103–202, § 109(b)(1), inserted ''The order granting registration shall not be effective until such government securities broker or government securities dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange registered under section 78f of this title, or a securities association registered under section 78*o*–3 of this title, unless the Commission has exempted such government securities broker or government securities dealer, by rule or order, from such membership.'' before ''The Commission may extend''.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 103–202, § 108(2), added par. (4). Former par. (4) redesignated (5).

Pub. L. 103–202, § 103(b)(1), inserted '', other than subsection (d)(3) of this section,'' after ''subsection (a), (b), or (d) of this section''.

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 103–202, § 108(1), redesignated par. (4) as (5).

Subsec. (b)(3) to (7). Pub. L. 103–202, § 106(a), added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) to (6) as (4) to (7), respectively.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 103–202, § 109(c), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: ''Information received by any appropriate regulatory agency or the Secretary from or with respect to any government securities broker or government securities dealer or with respect to any person associated therewith may be made available by the Secretary or the recipient agency to the Commission, the Secretary, any appropriate regulatory agency, and any self-regulatory organization.''

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 103–202, § 103(a), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103–202, § 104(2), added subsec. (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 103–202, § 103(b)(2), inserted '', other than subsection (d)(3) of this section'' after ''threatened violation of the provisions of this section'' and ''(except subsection (d)(3) of this section)'' after ''other than this section''.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103–202, § 104(1), redesignated subsec. (f) as (g).

Pub. L. 103–202, § 102, struck out subsec. (g) which read as follows:

''(1) The authority of the Secretary to issue orders and to propose and adopt rules under this section shall terminate on October 1, 1991.

''(2) All orders and rules—

''(A) which have been issued or adopted by the Secretary, and

''(B) which are in effect on the date specified in paragraph (1),

shall continue in effect according to their terms.''

1990—Subsec. (b)(2) to (6). Pub. L. 101–432 added par. (2) and redesignated former pars. (2) to (5) as (3) to (6), respectively.

Subsec. (c)(1)(A), (C). Pub. L. 101–550, § 203(c)(1), substituted ''(A), (D), (E), or (G)'' for ''(A), (D), or (E)''.

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 101–550, § 203(c)(2), substituted ''the rules or regulations under any such other provision, or investigations pursuant to section 78u(a)(2) of this title to assist a foreign securities authority'' for ''or the rules or regulations under any such other provision''.

1989—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 101–73 substituted ''Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision'' for ''Federal Home Loan Bank Board''.

1987—Subsec. (a)(1)(B)(i). Pub. L. 100–181 substituted ''When such'' for ''When''.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Title IV of Pub. L. 99–571 provided that:

''SEC. 401. GENERAL EFFECTIVE DATES.

''Except as provided in section 402, this Act [enacting section 78*o*–5 of this title and section 9110 of Title 31, Money and Finance, amending sections 78c, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78q, 78w, 78y, 80a–9, and 80b–3 of this title and section 3121 of Title 31, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78a and 78*o*–5 of this title] and the amendments made by this Act shall take effect 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1986].

''SEC. 402. EFFECTIVE DATE AND REQUIREMENTS FOR REGULATIONS.

''Notwithstanding section 401, the Secretary of the Treasury and each appropriate regulatory agency shall, within 120 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1986], publish for notice and public comment such regulations as are initially required to implement this Act, which regulations shall become effective as temporary regulations 210 days after the date of enactment of this Act and as final regulations not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act.

''SEC. 403. REGISTRATION DATE.

''No person may continue to act as a government securities broker or government securities dealer after 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1986] unless such person has been registered or has provided notice to the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency as required by the amendment made by section 101 of this Act [enacting section 78*o*–5 of this title].''

TRANSITIONAL AND SAVINGS PROVISIONS

Section 301 of Pub. L. 99–571 provided that:

''(a) EFFECT ON PENDING ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEEDINGS.—The provisions of this Act [see Effective Date note above] shall not affect any proceedings pending on the effective date of this Act [see Effective Date note above].

''(b) EFFECT ON PENDING JUDICIAL PROCEEDINGS.—The provisions of this Act shall not affect suits commenced prior to the effective date of this Act, and in all such suits, proceedings shall be had, appeals taken, and judgments rendered in the same manner and effect as if this Act had not been enacted.

''(c) DISCRETION OF THE FEDERAL RESERVE BANK OF NEW YORK.—Nothing in this Act shall be construed to limit or impair the discretion or authority of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York to require reports or establish terms and conditions in connection with the Bank's relationship with any government securities broker or government securities dealer, including a primary dealer.

''(d) JURISDICTION OF THE COMMODITY FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION.—Nothing in this Act affects the jurisdiction of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission as set forth in the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.] over trading of commodity futures contracts and options on such contracts involving government securities.''

CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Section 111 of title I of Pub. L. 103–202 provided that:

''(a) IN GENERAL.—No provision of, or amendment made by, this title [amending this section and sections 78c, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78s, and 78w of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes below] may be construed—

''(1) to govern the initial issuance of any public debt obligation, or

''(2) to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization—

''(A) to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance,

''(B) to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or

''(C) to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance.

''(b) EXCEPTION.—Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to the amendment made by section 110 of this Act [amending section 78*o* of this title].

''(c) PUBLIC DEBT OBLIGATION.—For purposes of this section, the term 'public debt obligation' means an obligation subject to the public debt limit established in section 3101 of title 31, United States Code.''

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation abolished and functions transferred, see sections 401 to 406 of Pub. L. 101–73, set out as a note under section 1437 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS

Section 101 of Pub. L. 103–202 provided that: ''The Congress finds that—

''(1) the liquid and efficient operation of the government securities market is essential to facilitate government borrowing at the lowest possible cost to taxpayers;

''(2) the fair and honest treatment of investors will strengthen the integrity and liquidity of the government securities market;

''(3) rules promulgated by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to the Government Securities Act of 1986 [see Short Title of 1986 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] have worked well to protect investors from unregulated dealers and maintain the efficiency of the government securities market; and

''(4) extending the authority of the Secretary and providing new authority will ensure the continued strength of the government securities market.''

Section 1(b) of Pub. L. 99–571 provided that: ''The Congress finds that transactions in government securities are affected with a public interest which makes it necessary—

''(1) to provide for the integrity, stability, and efficiency of such transactions and of matters and practices related thereto;

''(2) to impose adequate regulation of government securities brokers and government securities dealers generally; and

''(3) to require appropriate financial responsibility, recordkeeping, reporting, and related regulatory requirements;

in order to protect investors and to insure the maintenance of fair, honest, and liquid markets in such securities.''

STUDY OF REGULATORY SYSTEM FOR GOVERNMENT SECURITIES

Section 112 of title I of Pub. L. 103–202 provided that:

''(a) JOINT STUDY.—The Secretary of the Treasury, the Securities and Exchange Commission, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall—

''(1) with respect to any rules promulgated or amended after October 1, 1991, pursuant to section 15C of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78*o*–5] or any amendment made by this title [amending this section and sections 78c, 78*o*, 78*o*–3, 78s, and 78w of this title], and any national securities association rule changes applicable principally to government securities transactions approved after October 1, 1991—

''(A) evaluate the effectiveness of such rules in carrying out the purposes of such Act [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.]; and

''(B) evaluate the impact of any such rules on the efficiency and liquidity of the government securities market and the cost of funding the Federal debt;

''(2) evaluate the effectiveness of surveillance and enforcement with respect to government securities, and the impact on such surveillance and enforcement of the availability of automated, time- sequenced records of essential information pertaining to trades in such securities; and

''(3) submit to the Congress, not later than March 31, 1998, any recommendations they may consider appropriate concerning—

''(A) the regulation of government securities brokers and government securities dealers;

''(B) the dissemination of information concerning quotations for and transactions in government securities;

''(C) the prevention of sales practice abuses in connection with transactions in government securities; and

''(D) such other matters as they consider appropriate.

''(b) TREASURY STUDY.—The Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Securities and Exchange Commission, shall—

''(1) conduct a study of—

''(A) the identity and nature of the business of government securities brokers and government securities dealers that are registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 15C of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78*o*–5]; and

''(B) the continuing need for, and regulatory and financial consequences of, a separate regulatory system for such government securities brokers and government securities dealers; and

''(2) submit to the Congress, not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 17, 1993], the Secretary's recommendations for change, if any, or such other recommendations as the Secretary considers appropriate.''

STUDIES AND RECOMMENDATIONS WITH RESPECT TO EXTENSION OF TREASURY AUTHORITY

Section 103 of Pub. L. 99–571 directed Secretary of the Treasury, together with Securities and Exchange Commission and Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, to evaluate the effectiveness of the rules promulgated pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 78*o*–5 in effecting the purposes of this chapter, and shall submit to Congress, not later than Oct. 1, 1990, their recommendation with respect to the extension of the Secretary's authority under 15 U.S.C. 78*o*–5 and such other recommendations as they considered appropriate; and directed Comptroller General to conduct a study of the regulation of government securities brokers and government securities dealers pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 78*o*–5 and the effectiveness of the amendments made by this Act in protecting investors and in effecting the purposes described in 15 U.S.C. 78*o*–5(b)(2), and submit to Congress, not later than Mar. 31, 1990, his recommendations with respect to the extension of the Secretary's authority under 15 U.S.C. 78*o*–5 and such other recommendations as he considered appropriate.

## § 78*o*–6. Securities analysts and research reports

### (a) Analyst protections

The Commission, or upon the authorization and direction of the Commission, a registered securities association or national securities exchange, shall have adopted, not later than 1 year after July 30, 2002, rules reasonably designed to address conflicts of interest that can arise when securities analysts recommend equity securities in research reports and public appearances, in order to improve the objectivity of research and provide investors with more useful and reliable information, including rules designed—

(1) to foster greater public confidence in securities research, and to protect the objectivity and independence of securities analysts, by—

(A) restricting the prepublication clearance or approval of research reports by persons employed by the broker or dealer who are engaged in investment banking activities, or persons not directly responsible for investment research, other than legal or compliance staff;

(B) limiting the supervision and compensatory evaluation of securities analysts to officials employed by the broker or dealer who are not engaged in investment banking activities; and

(C) requiring that a broker or dealer and persons employed by a broker or dealer who are involved with investment banking activities may not, directly or indirectly, retaliate against or threaten to retaliate against any securities analyst employed by that broker or dealer or its affiliates as a result of an adverse, negative, or otherwise unfavorable research report that may adversely affect the present or prospective investment banking relationship of the broker or dealer with the issuer that is the subject of the research report, except that such rules may not limit the authority of a broker or dealer to discipline a securities analyst for causes other than such research report in accordance with the policies and procedures of the firm;

(2) to define periods during which brokers or dealers who have participated, or are to participate, in a public offering of securities as underwriters or dealers should not publish or otherwise distribute research reports relating to such securities or to the issuer of such securities;

(3) to establish structural and institutional safeguards within registered brokers or dealers to assure that securities analysts are separated by appropriate informational partitions within the firm from the review, pressure, or oversight of those whose involvement in investment banking activities might potentially bias their judgment or supervision; and

(4) to address such other issues as the Commission, or such association or exchange, determines appropriate.

### (b) Disclosure

The Commission, or upon the authorization and direction of the Commission, a registered securities association or national securities exchange, shall have adopted, not later than 1 year after July 30, 2002, rules reasonably designed to require each securities analyst to disclose in public appearances, and each registered broker or dealer to disclose in each research report, as applicable, conflicts of interest that are known or should have been known by the securities analyst or the broker or dealer, to exist at the time of the appearance or the date of distribution of the report, including—

(1) the extent to which the securities analyst has debt or equity investments in the issuer that is the subject of the appearance or research report;

(2) whether any compensation has been received by the registered broker or dealer, or any affiliate thereof, including the securities analyst, from the issuer that is the subject of the appearance or research report, subject to such exemptions as the Commission may determine appropriate and necessary to prevent disclosure by virtue of this paragraph of material non-public information regarding specific potential future investment banking transactions of such issuer, as is appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors;

(3) whether an issuer, the securities of which are recommended in the appearance or research report, currently is, or during the 1-year period preceding the date of the appearance or date of distribution of the report has been, a client of the registered broker or dealer, and if so, stating the types of services provided to the issuer;

(4) whether the securities analyst received compensation with respect to a research report, based upon (among any other factors) the investment banking revenues (either generally or specifically earned from the issuer being analyzed) of the registered broker or dealer; and

(5) such other disclosures of conflicts of interest that are material to investors, research analysts, or the broker or dealer as the Commission, or such association or exchange, determines appropriate.

### (c) Definitions

In this section—

(1) the term ''securities analyst'' means any associated person of a registered broker or

dealer that is principally responsible for, and any associated person who reports directly or indirectly to a securities analyst in connection with, the preparation of the substance of a research report, whether or not any such person has the job title of ''securities analyst''; and

(2) the term ''research report'' means a written or electronic communication that includes an analysis of equity securities of individual companies or industries, and that provides information reasonably sufficient upon which to base an investment decision.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 15D, as added Pub. L. 107–204, title V, § 501(a), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 791.)

COMMISSION AUTHORITY

Pub. L. 107–204, title V, § 501(c), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 793, provided that: ''The Commission may promulgate and amend its regulations, or direct a registered securities association or national securities exchange to promulgate and amend its rules, to carry out section 15D of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78*o*–6], as added by this section, as is necessary for the protection of investors and in the public interest.''

## § 78p. Directors, officers, and principal stockholders

### (a) Disclosures required

#### (1) Directors, officers, and principal stockholders required to file

Every person who is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 10 percent of any class of any equity security (other than an exempted security) which is registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, or who is a director or an officer of the issuer of such security, shall file the statements required by this subsection with the Commission (and, if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, also with the exchange).

#### (2) Time of filing

The statements required by this subsection shall be filed—

(A) at the time of the registration of such security on a national securities exchange or by the effective date of a registration statement filed pursuant to section 78*l*(g) of this title;

(B) within 10 days after he or she becomes such beneficial owner, director, or officer;

(C) if there has been a change in such ownership, or if such person shall have purchased or sold a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206(b)[1] of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (15 U.S.C. 78c note)) involving such equity security, before the end of the second business day following the day on which the subject transaction has been executed, or at such other time as the Commission shall establish, by rule, in any case in which the Commission determines that such 2-day period is not feasible.

#### (3) Contents of statements

A statement filed—

(A) under subparagraph (A) or (B) of paragraph (2) shall contain a statement of the amount of all equity securities of such issuer of which the filing person is the beneficial owner; and

(B) under subparagraph (C) of such paragraph shall indicate ownership by the filing person at the date of filing, any such changes in such ownership, and such purchases and sales of the security-based swap agreements as have occurred since the most recent such filing under such subparagraph.

#### (4) Electronic filing and availability

Beginning not later than 1 year after July 30, 2002—

(A) a statement filed under subparagraph (C) of paragraph (2) shall be filed electronically;

(B) the Commission shall provide each such statement on a publicly accessible Internet site not later than the end of the business day following that filing; and

(C) the issuer (if the issuer maintains a corporate website) shall provide that statement on that corporate website, not later than the end of the business day following that filing.

### (b) Profits from purchase and sale of security within six months

For the purpose of preventing the unfair use of information which may have been obtained by such beneficial owner, director, or officer by reason of his relationship to the issuer, any profit realized by him from any purchase and sale, or any sale and purchase, of any equity security of such issuer (other than an exempted security) or a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involving any such equity security within any period of less than six months, unless such security or security-based swap agreement was acquired in good faith in connection with a debt previously contracted, shall inure to and be recoverable by the issuer, irrespective of any intention on the part of such beneficial owner, director, or officer in entering into such transaction of holding the security or security-based swap agreement purchased or of not repurchasing the security or security-based swap agreement sold for a period exceeding six months. Suit to recover such profit may be instituted at law or in equity in any court of competent jurisdiction by the issuer, or by the owner of any security of the issuer in the name and in behalf of the issuer if the issuer shall fail or refuse to bring such suit within sixty days after request or shall fail diligently to prosecute the same thereafter; but no such suit shall be brought more than two years after the date such profit was realized. This subsection shall not be construed to cover any transaction where such beneficial owner was not such both at the time of the purchase and sale, or the sale and purchase, of the security or security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involved, or any transaction or transactions which the Commission by rules and regulations may exempt as not comprehended within the purpose of this subsection.

### (c) Conditions for sale of security by beneficial owner, director, or officer

It shall be unlawful for any such beneficial owner, director, or officer, directly or indirectly,

[1] See References in Text note below.

to sell any equity security of such issuer (other than an exempted security), if the person selling the security or his principal (1) does not own the security sold, or (2) if owning the security, does not deliver it against such sale within twenty days thereafter, or does not within five days after such sale deposit it in the mails or other usual channels of transportation; but no person shall be deemed to have violated this subsection if he proves that notwithstanding the exercise of good faith he was unable to make such delivery or deposit within such time, or that to do so would cause undue inconvenience or expense.

**(d) Securities held in investment account, transactions in ordinary course of business, and establishment of primary or secondary market**

The provisions of subsection (b) of this section shall not apply to any purchase and sale, or sale and purchase, and the provisions of subsection (c) of this section shall not apply to any sale, of an equity security not then or theretofore held by him in an investment account, by a dealer in the ordinary course of his business and incident to the establishment or maintenance by him of a primary or secondary market (otherwise than on a national securities exchange or an exchange exempted from registration under section 78e of this title) for such security. The Commission may, by such rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, define and prescribe terms and conditions with respect to securities held in an investment account and transactions made in the ordinary course of business and incident to the establishment or maintenance of a primary or secondary market.

**(e) Application of section to foreign or domestic arbitrage transactions**

The provisions of this section shall not apply to foreign or domestic arbitrage transactions unless made in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may adopt in order to carry out the purposes of this section.

**(f) Treatment of transactions in security futures products**

The provisions of this section shall apply to ownership of and transactions in security futures products.

**(g) Limitation on Commission authority**

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c–1(b) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §16, 48 Stat. 896; Pub. L. 88–467, §8, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 579; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §208(b)(3), title III, §303(g), (h)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–435, 2763A–455, 2763A–456; Pub. L. 107–204, title IV, §403(a), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 788.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 206(b) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(2)(C), probably means section 206B of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out in a note under section 78c of this title.

Section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsecs. (b) and (g), is section 206B of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out in a note under section 78c of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Pub. L. 107–204 reenacted section catchline without change, added heading and text of subsec. (a), and struck out former subsec. (a) which read as follows: ''Every person who is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 10 per centum of any class of any equity security (other than an exempted security) which is registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, or who is a director or an officer of the issuer of such security, shall file, at the time of the registration of such security on a national securities exchange or by the effective date of a registration statement filed pursuant to section 78*l*(g) of this title, or within ten days after he becomes such beneficial owner, director, or officer, a statement with the Commission (and, if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, also with the exchange) of the amount of all equity securities of such issuer of which he is the beneficial owner, and within ten days after the close of each calendar month thereafter, if there has been a change in such ownership or if such person shall have purchased or sold a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involving such equity security during such month, shall file with the Commission (and if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, shall also file with the exchange), a statement indicating his ownership at the close of the calendar month and such changes in his ownership and such purchases and sales of such security-based swap agreements as have occurred during such calendar month.''

2000—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(g)], amended subsecs. (a) and (b) generally, revising provisions to extend application to security-based swap agreements.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §208(b)(3)], added subsec. (f).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(h)], added subsec. (g).

1964—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88–467, §8(a), substituted ''registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title'' for ''registered on a national securities exchange'', ''Commission (and, if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, also with the exchange)'' for ''exchange (and a duplicate original thereof with the Commission)'', ''a change'' for ''any change'', and ''Commission (and if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, shall also file with the exchange) a statement'' for ''exchange a statement (and a duplicate original thereof with the Commission)'', and inserted ''on a national securities exchange or by the effective date of a registration statement filed pursuant to section 78*l*(g) of this title'' after ''registration of such security''.

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 88–467, §8(b), added subsec. (d) and redesignated former subsec. (d) as (e).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107–204, title IV, §403(b), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 789, provided that: ''The amendment made by this section [amending this section] shall be effective 30 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 30, 2002].''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78q. Records and reports

### (a) Rules and regulations

(1) Every national securities exchange, member thereof, broker or dealer who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any such member, registered securities association, registered broker or dealer, registered municipal securities dealer, registered securities information processor, registered transfer agent, and registered clearing agency and the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board shall make and keep for prescribed periods such records, furnish such copies thereof, and make and disseminate such reports as the Commission, by rule, prescribes as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(2) Every registered clearing agency shall also make and keep for prescribed periods such records, furnish such copies thereof, and make and disseminate such reports, as the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency, by rule, prescribes as necessary or appropriate for the safeguarding of securities and funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible.

(3) Every registered transfer agent shall also make and keep for prescribed periods such records, furnish such copies thereof, and make such reports as the appropriate regulatory agency for such transfer agent, by rule, prescribes as necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of section 78q–1 of this title.

### (b) Records subject to examination

#### (1) Procedures for cooperation with other agencies

All records of persons described in subsection (a) of this section are subject at any time, or from time to time, to such reasonable periodic, special, or other examinations by representatives of the Commission and the appropriate regulatory agency for such persons as the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency for such persons deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter: *Provided, however*, That the Commission shall, prior to conducting any such examination of a—

(A) registered clearing agency, registered transfer agent, or registered municipal securities dealer for which it is not the appropriate regulatory agency, give notice to the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer of such proposed examination and consult with such appropriate regulatory agency concerning the feasibility and desirability of coordinating such examination with examinations conducted by such appropriate regulatory agency with a view to avoiding unnecessary regulatory duplication or undue regulatory burdens for such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer; or

(B) broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(11) of this title, exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title gives notice to the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of such proposed examination and consults with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission concerning the feasibility and desirability of coordinating such examination with examinations conducted by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission in order to avoid unnecessary regulatory duplication or undue regulatory burdens for such broker or dealer or exchange.

#### (2) Furnishing data and reports to CFTC

The Commission shall notify the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of any examination conducted of any broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(11) of this title, exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title and, upon request, furnish to the Commodity Futures Trading Commission any examination report and data supplied to, or prepared by, the Commission in connection with such examination.

#### (3) Use of CFTC reports

Prior to conducting an examination under paragraph (1), the Commission shall use the reports of examinations, if the information available therein is sufficient for the purposes of the examination, of—

(A) any broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(11) of this title;

(B) exchange[1] registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title; or

(C) national[2] securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title;

that is made by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title, or an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title.

#### (4) Rules of construction

(A) Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, the records of a broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(11) of this title, an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title described in this subparagraph shall not be subject to routine periodic examinations by the Commission.

(B) Any recordkeeping rules adopted under this subsection for a broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(11) of this title, an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title shall be limited to records with respect to persons, accounts, agreements, contracts, and transactions involving security futures products.

(C) Nothing in the proviso in paragraph (1) shall be construed to impair or limit (other

[1] So in original. Probably should be preceded by ''an''.

[2] So in original. Probably should be preceded by ''a''.

than by the requirement of prior consultation) the power of the Commission under this subsection to examine any clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer or to affect in any way the power of the Commission under any other provision of this chapter or otherwise to inspect, examine, or investigate any such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer.

**(c) Copies of reports filed with other regulatory agencies**

(1) Every clearing agency, transfer agent, and municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency shall (A) file with the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer a copy of any application, notice, proposal, report, or document filed with the Commission by reason of its being a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer and (B) file with the Commission a copy of any application, notice, proposal, report, or document filed with such appropriate regulatory agency by reason of its being a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer. The Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board shall file with each agency enumerated in section 78c(a)(34)(A) of this title copies of every proposed rule change filed with the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title.

(2) The appropriate regulatory agency for a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency shall file with the Commission notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by such appropriate regulatory agency against any clearing agency, transfer agent, municipal securities dealer, or person associated with a transfer agent or municipal securities dealer, and the Commission shall file with such appropriate regulatory agency, if any, notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the Commission against the clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer, or against any person associated with a transfer agent or municipal securities dealer for which the agency is the appropriate regulatory agency.

(3) The Commission and the appropriate regulatory agency for a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency shall each notify the other and make a report of any examination conducted by it of such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer, and, upon request, furnish to the other a copy of such report and any data supplied to it in connection with such examination.

(4) The Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may specify that documents required to be filed pursuant to this subsection with the Commission or such agency, respectively, may be retained by the originating clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer, or filed with another appropriate regulatory agency. The Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency (as the case may be) making such a specification shall continue to have access to the document on request.

**(d) Self-regulatory organizations**

(1) The Commission, by rule or order, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to foster cooperation and coordination among self-regulatory organizations, or to remove impediments to and foster the development of a national market system and national system for the clearance and settlement of securities transactions, may—

(A) with respect to any person who is a member of or participant in more than one self-regulatory organization, relieve any such self-regulatory organization of any responsibility under this chapter (i) to receive regulatory reports from such person, (ii) to examine such person for compliance, or to enforce compliance by such person, with specified provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its own rules, or (iii) to carry out other specified regulatory functions with respect to such person, and

(B) allocate among self-regulatory organizations the authority to adopt rules with respect to matters as to which, in the absence of such allocation, such self-regulatory organizations share authority under this chapter.

In making any such rule or entering any such order, the Commission shall take into consideration the regulatory capabilities and procedures of the self-regulatory organizations, availability of staff, convenience of location, unnecessary regulatory duplication, and such other factors as the Commission may consider germane to the protection of investors, cooperation and coordination among self-regulatory organizations, and the development of a national market system and a national system for the clearance and settlement of securities transactions. The Commission, by rule or order, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, may require any self-regulatory organization relieved of any responsibility pursuant to this paragraph, and any person with respect to whom such responsibility relates, to take such steps as are specified in any such rule or order to notify customers of, and persons doing business with, such person of the limited nature of such self-regulatory organization's responsibility for such person's acts, practices, and course of business.

(2) A self-regulatory organization shall furnish copies of any report of examination of any person who is a member of or a participant in such self-regulatory organization to any other self-regulatory organization of which such person is a member or in which such person is a participant upon the request of such person, such other self-regulatory organization, or the Commission.

**(e) Balance sheet and income statement; other financial statements and information**

(1)(A) Every registered broker or dealer shall annually file with the Commission a balance sheet and income statement certified by a registered public accounting firm, prepared on a calendar or fiscal year basis, and such other financial statements (which shall, as the Commis-

sion specifies, be certified) and information concerning its financial condition as the Commission, by rule may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) Every registered broker and dealer shall annually send to its customers its certified balance sheet and such other financial statements and information concerning its financial condition as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe pursuant to subsection (a) of this section.

(C) The Commission, by rule or order, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any registered broker or dealer, or class of such brokers or dealers, from any provision of this paragraph if the Commission determines that such exemption is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

(2) The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may prescribe the form and content of financial statements filed pursuant to this chapter and the accounting principles and accounting standards used in their preparation.

**(f) Missing, lost, counterfeit, and stolen securities**

(1) Every national securities exchange, member thereof, registered securities association, broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, registered transfer agent, registered clearing agency, participant therein, member of the Federal Reserve System, and bank whose deposits are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation shall—

(A) report to the Commission or other person designated by the Commission and, in the case of securities issued pursuant to chapter 31 of title 31, to the Secretary of the Treasury such information about missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen securities, in such form and within such time as the Commission, by rule, determines is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors; such information shall be available on request for a reasonable fee, to any such exchange, member, association, broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, transfer agent, clearing agency, participant, member of the Federal Reserve System, or insured bank, and such other persons as the Commission, by rule, designates; and

(B) make such inquiry with respect to information reported pursuant to this subsection as the Commission, by rule, prescribes as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to determine whether securities in their custody or control, for which they are responsible, or in which they are effecting, clearing, or settling a transaction have been reported as missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen.

(2) Every member of a national securities exchange, broker, dealer, registered transfer agent, and registered clearing agency, shall require that each of its partners, directors, officers, and employees be fingerprinted and shall submit such fingerprints, or cause the same to be submitted, to the Attorney General of the United States for identification and appropriate processing. The Commission, by rule, may exempt from the provisions of this paragraph upon specified terms, conditions, and periods, any class of partners, directors, officers, or employees of any such member, broker, dealer, transfer agent, or clearing agency, if the Commission finds that such action is not inconsistent with the public interest or the protection of investors. Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in providing identification and processing functions, the Attorney General shall provide the Commission and self-regulatory organizations designated by the Commission with access to all criminal history record information.

(3)(A) In order to carry out the authority under paragraph (1) above, the Commission or its designee may enter into agreement with the Attorney General to use the facilities of the National Crime Information Center (''NCIC'') to receive, store, and disseminate information in regard to missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen securities and to permit direct inquiry access to NCIC's file on such securities for the financial community.

(B) In order to carry out the authority under paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Commission or its designee and the Secretary of the Treasury shall enter into an agreement whereby the Commission or its designee will receive, store, and disseminate information in the possession, and which comes into the possession, of the Department of the Treasury in regard to missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen securities.

(4) In regard to paragraphs (1), (2), and (3), above insofar as such paragraphs apply to any bank or member of the Federal Reserve System, the Commission may delegate its authority to:

(A) the Comptroller of the Currency as to national banks;

(B) the Federal Reserve Board in regard to any member of the Federal Reserve System which is not a national bank; and

(C) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation for any State bank which is insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation but which is not a member of the Federal Reserve System.

(5) The Commission shall encourage the insurance industry to require their insured to report expeditiously instances of missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen securities to the Commission or to such other person as the Commission may, by rule, designate to receive such information.

**(g) Persons extending credit**

Any broker, dealer, or other person extending credit who is subject to the rules and regulations prescribed by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System pursuant to this chapter shall make such reports to the Board as it may require as necessary or appropriate to enable it to perform the functions conferred upon it by this chapter. If any such broker, dealer, or other person shall fail to make any such report or fail to furnish full information therein, or, if in the judgment of the Board it is otherwise necessary, such broker, dealer, or other person shall permit such inspections to be made by the Board with respect to the business oper-

ations of such broker, dealer, or other person as the Board may deem necessary to enable it to obtain the required information.

**(h) Risk assessment for holding company systems**

**(1) Obligations to obtain, maintain, and report information**

Every person who is (A) a registered broker or dealer, or (B) a registered municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency, shall obtain such information and make and keep such records as the Commission by rule prescribes concerning the registered person's policies, procedures, or systems for monitoring and controlling financial and operational risks to it resulting from the activities of any of its associated persons, other than a natural person. Such records shall describe, in the aggregate, each of the financial and securities activities conducted by, and the customary sources of capital and funding of, those of its associated persons whose business activities are reasonably likely to have a material impact on the financial or operational condition of such registered person, including its net capital, its liquidity, or its ability to conduct or finance its operations. The Commission, by rule, may require summary reports of such information to be filed with the Commission no more frequently than quarterly.

**(2) Authority to require additional information**

If, as a result of adverse market conditions or based on reports provided to the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection or other available information, the Commission reasonably concludes that it has concerns regarding the financial or operational condition of (A) any registered broker or dealer, or (B) any registered municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer for which the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency, the Commission may require the registered person to make reports concerning the financial and securities activities of any of such person's associated persons, other than a natural person, whose business activities are reasonably likely to have a material impact on the financial or operational condition of such registered person. The Commission, in requiring reports pursuant to this paragraph, shall specify the information required, the period for which it is required, the time and date on which the information must be furnished, and whether the information is to be furnished directly to the Commission or to a self-regulatory organization with primary responsibility for examining the registered person's financial and operational condition.

**(3) Special provisions with respect to associated persons subject to Federal banking agency regulation**

**(A) Cooperation in implementation**

In developing and implementing reporting requirements pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection with respect to associated persons subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of each such Federal banking agency. If a Federal banking agency comments in writing on a proposed rule of the Commission under this subsection that has been published for comment, the Commission shall respond in writing to such written comment before adopting the proposed rule. The Commission shall, at the request of the Federal banking agency, publish such comment and response in the Federal Register at the time of publishing the adopted rule.

**(B) Use of banking agency reports**

A registered broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer shall be in compliance with any recordkeeping or reporting requirement adopted pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection concerning an associated person that is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency if such broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer utilizes for such recordkeeping or reporting requirement copies of reports filed by the associated person with the Federal banking agency pursuant to section 161 of title 12, subchapter VIII of chapter 3 of title 12, section 1817(a) of title 12, section 1467a(b) of title 12, or section 1847 of title 12. The Commission may, however, by rule adopted pursuant to paragraph (1), require any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer filing such reports with the Commission to obtain, maintain, or report supplemental information if the Commission makes an explicit finding that such supplemental information is necessary to inform the Commission regarding potential risks to such broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer. Prior to requiring any such supplemental information, the Commission shall first request the Federal banking agency to expand its reporting requirements to include such information.

**(C) Procedure for requiring additional information**

Prior to making a request pursuant to paragraph (2) of this subsection for information with respect to an associated person that is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency, the Commission shall—

(i) notify such agency of the information required with respect to such associated person; and

(ii) consult with such agency to determine whether the information required is available from such agency and for other purposes, unless the Commission determines that any delay resulting from such consultation would be inconsistent with ensuring the financial and operational condition of the broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer or the stability or integrity of the securities markets.

**(D) Exclusion for examination reports**

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to permit the Commission to require any registered broker or dealer, or any registered municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer for which the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency, to obtain, maintain, or furnish any examination report of any Federal banking agency or any supervisory recommendations or analysis contained therein.

**(E) Confidentiality of information provided**

No information provided to or obtained by the Commission from any Federal banking agency pursuant to a request by the Commission under subparagraph (C) of this paragraph regarding any associated person which is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency may be disclosed to any other person (other than a self-regulatory organization), without the prior written approval of the Federal banking agency. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission.

**(F) Notice to banking agencies concerning financial and operational condition concerns**

The Commission shall notify the Federal banking agency of any concerns of the Commission regarding significant financial or operational risks resulting from the activities of any registered broker or dealer, or any registered municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer for which the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency, to any associated person thereof which is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of the Federal banking agency.

**(G) "Federal banking agency" defined**

For purposes of this paragraph, the term ''Federal banking agency'' shall have the same meaning as the term ''appropriate Federal bank agency'' in section 1813(q) of title 12.

**(4) Exemptions**

The Commission by rule or order may exempt any person or class of persons, under such terms and conditions and for such periods as the Commission shall provide in such rule or order, from the provisions of this subsection, and the rules thereunder. In granting such exemptions, the Commission shall consider, among other factors—

(A) whether information of the type required under this subsection is available from a supervisory agency (as defined in section 3401(6)[3] of title 12), a State insurance commission or similar State agency, the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, or a similar foreign regulator;

(B) the primary business of any associated person;

(C) the nature and extent of domestic or foreign regulation of the associated person's activities;

(D) the nature and extent of the registered person's securities activities; and

(E) with respect to the registered person and its associated persons, on a consolidated basis, the amount and proportion of assets devoted to, and revenues derived from, activities in the United States securities markets.

**(5) Authority to limit disclosure of information**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be reported under this subsection, or any information supplied to the Commission by any domestic or foreign regulatory agency that relates to the financial or operational condition of any associated person of a registered broker, dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, or municipal securities dealer. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552. In prescribing regulations to carry out the requirements of this subsection, the Commission shall designate information described in or obtained pursuant to subparagraph (B) or (C) of paragraph (3) of this subsection as confidential information for purposes of section 78x(b)(2) of this title.

**(i) Investment bank holding companies**

**(1) Elective supervision of an investment bank holding company not having a bank or savings association affiliate**

**(A) In general**

An investment bank holding company that is not—

(i) an affiliate of an insured bank (other than an institution described in subparagraph (D), (F), or (G) of section 1841(c)(2), or held under section 1843(f), of title 12), or a savings association;

(ii) a foreign bank, foreign company, or company that is described in section 3106(a) of title 12; or

(iii) a foreign bank that controls, directly or indirectly, a corporation chartered under section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act [12 U.S.C. 611 et seq.],

may elect to become supervised by filing with the Commission a notice of intention to become supervised, pursuant to subparagraph (B) of this paragraph. Any investment

[3] See References in Text note below.

bank holding company filing such a notice shall be supervised in accordance with this section and comply with the rules promulgated by the Commission applicable to supervised investment bank holding companies.

**(B) Notification of status as a supervised investment bank holding company**

An investment bank holding company that elects under subparagraph (A) to become supervised by the Commission shall file with the Commission a written notice of intention to become supervised by the Commission in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such investment bank holding company as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section. Unless the Commission finds that such supervision is not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section, such supervision shall become effective 45 days after the date of receipt of such written notice by the Commission or within such shorter time period as the Commission, by rule or order, may determine.

**(2) Election not to be supervised by the Commission as an investment bank holding company**

**(A) Voluntary withdrawal**

A supervised investment bank holding company that is supervised pursuant to paragraph (1) may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate, elect not to be supervised by the Commission by filing a written notice of withdrawal from Commission supervision. Such notice shall not become effective until 1 year after receipt by the Commission, or such shorter or longer period as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate to ensure effective supervision of the material risks to the supervised investment bank holding company and to the affiliated broker or dealer, or to prevent evasion of the purposes of this section.

**(B) Discontinuation of Commission supervision**

If the Commission finds that any supervised investment bank holding company that is supervised pursuant to paragraph (1) is no longer in existence or has ceased to be an investment bank holding company, or if the Commission finds that continued supervision of such a supervised investment bank holding company is not consistent with the purposes of this section, the Commission may discontinue the supervision pursuant to a rule or order, if any, promulgated by the Commission under this section.

**(3) Supervision of investment bank holding companies**

**(A) Recordkeeping and reporting**

**(i) In general**

Every supervised investment bank holding company and each affiliate thereof shall make and keep for prescribed periods such records, furnish copies thereof, and make such reports, as the Commission may require by rule, in order to keep the Commission informed as to—

(I) the company's or affiliate's activities, financial condition, policies, systems for monitoring and controlling financial and operational risks, and transactions and relationships between any broker or dealer affiliate of the supervised investment bank holding company; and

(II) the extent to which the company or affiliate has complied with the provisions of this chapter and regulations prescribed and orders issued under this chapter.

**(ii) Form and contents**

Such records and reports shall be prepared in such form and according to such specifications (including certification by a registered public accounting firm), as the Commission may require and shall be provided promptly at any time upon request by the Commission. Such records and reports may include—

(I) a balance sheet and income statement;

(II) an assessment of the consolidated capital of the supervised investment bank holding company;

(III) an independent auditor's report attesting to the supervised investment bank holding company's compliance with its internal risk management and internal control objectives; and

(IV) reports concerning the extent to which the company or affiliate has complied with the provisions of this chapter and any regulations prescribed and orders issued under this chapter.

**(B) Use of existing reports**

**(i) In general**

The Commission shall, to the fullest extent possible, accept reports in fulfillment of the requirements under this paragraph that the supervised investment bank holding company or its affiliates have been required to provide to another appropriate regulatory agency or self-regulatory organization.

**(ii) Availability**

A supervised investment bank holding company or an affiliate of such company shall provide to the Commission, at the request of the Commission, any report referred to in clause (i).

**(C) Examination authority**

**(i) Focus of examination authority**

The Commission may make examinations of any supervised investment bank holding company and any affiliate of such company in order to—

(I) inform the Commission regarding—

(aa) the nature of the operations and financial condition of the supervised investment bank holding company and its affiliates;

(bb) the financial and operational risks within the supervised investment bank holding company that may affect any broker or dealer controlled by such supervised investment bank holding company; and

(cc) the systems of the supervised investment bank holding company and its affiliates for monitoring and controlling those risks; and

(II) monitor compliance with the provisions of this subsection, provisions governing transactions and relationships between any broker or dealer affiliated with the supervised investment bank holding company and any of the company's other affiliates, and applicable provisions of subchapter II of chapter 53, title 31 (commonly referred to as the ''Bank Secrecy Act'') and regulations thereunder.

**(ii) Restricted focus of examinations**

The Commission shall limit the focus and scope of any examination of a supervised investment bank holding company to—

(I) the company; and

(II) any affiliate of the company that, because of its size, condition, or activities, the nature or size of the transactions between such affiliate and any affiliated broker or dealer, or the centralization of functions within the holding company system, could, in the discretion of the Commission, have a materially adverse effect on the operational or financial condition of the broker or dealer.

**(iii) Deference to other examinations**

For purposes of this subparagraph, the Commission shall, to the fullest extent possible, use the reports of examination of an institution described in subparagraph (D), (F), or (G) of section 1841(c)(2), or held under section 1843(f), of title 12 made by the appropriate regulatory agency, or of a licensed insurance company made by the appropriate State insurance regulator.

**(4) Functional regulation of banking and insurance activities of supervised investment bank holding companies**

The Commission shall defer to—

(A) the appropriate regulatory agency with regard to all interpretations of, and the enforcement of, applicable banking laws relating to the activities, conduct, ownership, and operations of banks, and institutions described in subparagraph (D), (F), and (G) of section 1841(c)(2), or held under section 1843(f), of title 12; and

(B) the appropriate State insurance regulators with regard to all interpretations of, and the enforcement of, applicable State insurance laws relating to the activities, conduct, and operations of insurance companies and insurance agents.

**(5) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection:

(A) The term ''investment bank holding company'' means—

(i) any person other than a natural person that owns or controls one or more brokers or dealers; and

(ii) the associated persons of the investment bank holding company.

(B) The term ''supervised investment bank holding company'' means any investment bank holding company that is supervised by the Commission pursuant to this subsection.

(C) The terms ''affiliate'', ''bank'', ''bank holding company'', ''company'', ''control'', and ''savings association'' have the same meanings as given in section 1841 of title 12.

(D) The term ''insured bank'' has the same meaning as given in section 1813 of title 12.

(E) The term ''foreign bank'' has the same meaning as given in section 3101(7) of title 12.

(F) The terms ''person associated with an investment bank holding company'' and ''associated person of an investment bank holding company'' mean any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with, an investment bank holding company.

**(j) Authority to limit disclosure of information**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be reported under subsection (h) or (i) of this section or any information supplied to the Commission by any domestic or foreign regulatory agency that relates to the financial or operational condition of any associated person of a broker or dealer, investment bank holding company, or any affiliate of an investment bank holding company. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency or any self-regulatory organization requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552. In prescribing regulations to carry out the requirements of this subsection, the Commission shall designate information described in or obtained pursuant to subparagraphs (A), (B), and (C) of subsection (i)(5)[4] of this section as confidential information for purposes of section 78x(b)(2) of this title.

**(k) Coordination of examining authorities**

**(1) Elimination of duplication**

The Commission and the examining authorities, through cooperation and coordination of examination and oversight activities, shall eliminate any unnecessary and burdensome duplication in the examination process.

**(2) Coordination of examinations**

The Commission and the examining authorities shall share such information, including

[4] So in original. Probably should be subsection ''(i)(3)''.

reports of examinations, customer complaint information, and other nonpublic regulatory information, as appropriate to foster a coordinated approach to regulatory oversight of brokers and dealers that are subject to examination by more than one examining authority.

**(3) Examinations for cause**

At any time, any examining authority may conduct an examination for cause of any broker or dealer subject to its jurisdiction.

**(4) Confidentiality**

**(A) In general**

Section 78x of this title shall apply to the sharing of information in accordance with this subsection. The Commission shall take appropriate action under section 78x(c) of this title to ensure that such information is not inappropriately disclosed.

**(B) Appropriate disclosure not prohibited**

Nothing in this paragraph authorizes the Commission or any examining authority to withhold information from the Congress, or prevent the Commission or any examining authority from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission.

**(5) "Examining authority" defined**

For purposes of this subsection, the term ''examining authority'' means a self-regulatory organization registered with the Commission under this chapter (other than a registered clearing agency) with the authority to examine, inspect, and otherwise oversee the activities of a registered broker or dealer.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §17, 48 Stat. 897; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §4, 49 Stat. 1379; June 25, 1938, ch. 677, §5, 52 Stat. 1076; Pub. L. 94–29, §14, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 137; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, §102(h), (i), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3219; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §321, title VIII, §801(b), Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1257, 1265; Pub. L. 101–432, §4(a), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 966; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, §108, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3425; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(5), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §231(a), Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1402; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §204], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–424; Pub. L. 107–204, title II, §205(c)(2), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 774; Pub. L. 108–386, §8(f)(5), (6), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2232.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (b), (d)(1)(A), (B), (e)(2), (g), (i)(3)(A)(ii)(IV), and (k)(5), was in the original ''this title'', and this chapter, referred to in subsec. (i)(3)(A)(i)(II), was in the original ''this Act''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Subchapter VIII of chapter 3 of title 12, referred to in subsec. (h)(3)(B), was in the original ''section 9 of the Federal Reserve Act'', meaning section 9 of act Dec. 23, 1913, ch. 6, 38 Stat. 251, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter VIII (§321 et seq.) of chapter 3 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Section 3401(6) of title 12, referred to in subsec. (h)(4)(A), was redesignated section 3401(7) of title 12 by Pub. L. 101–73, title IX, §941(1), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 496.

Section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (i)(1)(A)(iii), is classified to subchapter II (§611 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

The Bank Secrecy Act, referred to in subsec. (i)(3)(C)(i)(II), is also the popular name of title I of Pub. L. 91–508, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1114, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 21 (§1951 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1951 of Title 12 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2004—Subsec. (f)(4)(A). Pub. L. 108–386, §8(f)(5), struck out ''and banks operating under the Code of Law for the District of Columbia'' before semicolon.

Subsec. (f)(4)(B). Pub. L. 108–386, §8(f)(6), struck out ''or a bank operating under the Code of Law for the District of Columbia'' before semicolon.

2002—Subsecs. (e)(1)(A), (i)(3)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 107–204 substituted ''a registered public accounting firm'' for ''an independent public accountant''.

2000—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §204(5)], which directed amendment of subsec. (b) by adding at the end pars. (2) to (4)(B), was executed by making the addition after par. (1), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §204(1) to (4), (6)], inserted subsec. heading, inserted par. (1) designation and heading before ''All'', substituted ''prior to conducting any such examination of a—'' for ''prior to conducting any such examination of a'', inserted subpar. (A) designation before ''registered clearing'', added subpar. (B), designated last sentence as par. (4)(C) and substituted ''Nothing in the proviso in paragraph (1)'' for ''Nothing in the proviso to the preceding sentence''.

1999—Subsecs. (i) to (k). Pub. L. 106–102 added subsecs. (i) and (j) and redesignated former subsec. (i) as (k).

1998—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted ''Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System'' for ''Federal Reserve Board'' in first sentence.

1996—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 104–290 added subsec. (i).

1990—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101–432 added subsec. (h).

1987—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, §321(1), substituted new par. (2) for former par. (2) which read as follows: ''The appropriate regulatory agency for a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency shall file with the Commission notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by such appropriate regulatory agency against such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer, and the Commission shall file with such appropriate regulatory agency notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the Commission against such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer.''

Subsec. (f)(1)(A). Pub. L. 100–181, §801(b), substituted ''securities issued pursuant to chapter 31 of title 31'' for ''government securities''.

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, §321(2), inserted at end ''Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in providing identification and processing functions, the Attorney General shall provide the Commission and self-regulatory organizations designated by the Commission with access to all criminal history record information.''

Subsec. (f)(3)(A). Pub. L. 100–181, §321(3), substituted ''paragraph (1)'' for ''paragraphs (1) and (2)''.

1986—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(h), added par. (4).

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(i)(1), inserted ''government securities broker, government securities dealer,'' in introductory provisions and in subpar. (A).

Subsec. (f)(1)(A). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(i)(2), inserted ''and, in the case of government securities, to the Secretary of the Treasury''.

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(i)(3), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B).

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 designated existing provisions as par. (1), expanded the coverage to require registered municipal securities dealers, the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, registered securities information processors, and registered clearing agencies to make and keep such records, to furnish copies thereof, and to make such reports as the Commission may prescribe and clarified the Commission's authority to require the dissemination of reports submitted pursuant to the rules of the Commission, and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsecs. (b) to (g). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsecs. (b) to (f) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (g).

1938—Subsec. (a). Act June 25, 1938, inserted ''every registered securities association''.

1936—Subsec. (a). Act May 27, 1936, substituted ''every broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78*o* of this title'' for ''every broker or dealer making or creating a market for both the purchase and sale of securities through the use of the mails or of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2004 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 108–386 effective Oct. 30, 2004, and, except as otherwise provided, applicable with respect to fiscal year 2005 and each succeeding fiscal year, see sections 8(i) and 9 of Pub. L. 108–386, set out as notes under section 321 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78q–1. National system for clearance and settlement of securities transactions

### (a) Congressional findings; facilitating establishment of system

(1) The Congress finds that—

(A) The prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, including the transfer of record ownership and the safeguarding of securities and funds related thereto, are necessary for the protection of investors and persons facilitating transactions by and acting on behalf of investors.

(B) Inefficient procedures for clearance and settlement impose unnecessary costs on investors and persons facilitating transactions by and acting on behalf of investors.

(C) New data processing and communications techniques create the opportunity for more efficient, effective, and safe procedures for clearance and settlement.

(D) The linking of all clearance and settlement facilities and the development of uniform standards and procedures for clearance and settlement will reduce unnecessary costs and increase the protection of investors and persons facilitating transactions by and acting on behalf of investors.

(2)(A) The Commission is directed, therefore, having due regard for the public interest, the protection of investors, the safeguarding of securities and funds, and maintenance of fair competition among brokers and dealers, clearing agencies, and transfer agents, to use its authority under this chapter—

(i) to facilitate the establishment of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of transactions in securities (other than exempt securities); and

(ii) to facilitate the establishment of linked or coordinated facilities for clearance and settlement of transactions in securities, securities options, contracts of sale for future delivery and options thereon, and commodity options;

in accordance with the findings and to carry out the objectives set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(B) The Commission shall use its authority under this chapter to assure equal regulation under this chapter of registered clearing agencies and registered transfer agents. In carrying out its responsibilities set forth in subparagraph (A)(ii) of this paragraph, the Commission shall coordinate with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission and consult with the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

### (b) Registration of clearing agencies; application; determinations by Commission requisite to registration of applicant as clearing agency; denial of participation; discipline; summary proceedings; exemption; facilities for handling derivatives

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, it shall be unlawful for any clearing agency, unless registered in accordance with this subsection, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to perform the functions of a clearing agency with respect to any security (other than an exempted security). The Commission, by rule or order, upon its own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any clearing agency or security or any class of clearing agencies or securities from any provisions of this section or the rules or regulations thereunder, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this section, including the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and the safeguarding of securities and funds. A clearing agency or transfer agent shall not perform the functions of both a clearing agency and a transfer agent unless such clearing agency or transfer agent is registered in accordance with this subsection and subsection (c) of this section.

(2) A clearing agency may be registered under the terms and conditions hereinafter provided in this subsection and in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(a) of this title, by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the rules of the clearing agency and such other information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions.

(3) A clearing agency shall not be registered unless the Commission determines that—

(A) Such clearing agency is so organized and has the capacity to be able to facilitate the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and derivative agreements, contracts, and transactions for which it is responsible, to safeguard securities and funds in its custody or control or for which it is responsible, to comply with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, to enforce (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) compliance by its participants with the rules of the clearing agency, and to carry out the purposes of this section.

(B) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (4) of this subsection, the rules of the clearing agency provide that any (i) registered broker or dealer, (ii) other registered clearing agency, (iii) registered investment company, (iv) bank, (v) insurance company, or (vi) other person or class of persons as the Commission, by rule, may from time to time designate as appropriate to the development of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions may become a participant in such clearing agency.

(C) The rules of the clearing agency assure a fair representation of its shareholders (or members) and participants in the selection of its directors and administration of its affairs. (The Commission may determine that the representation of participants is fair if they are afforded a reasonable opportunity to acquire voting stock of the clearing agency, directly or indirectly, in reasonable proportion to their use of such clearing agency.)

(D) The rules of the clearing agency provide for the equitable allocation of reasonable dues, fees, and other charges among its participants.

(E) The rules of the clearing agency do not impose any schedule of prices, or fix rates or other fees, for services rendered by its participants.

(F) The rules of the clearing agency are designed to promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and, to the extent applicable, derivative agreements, contracts, and transactions, to assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of the clearing agency or for which it is responsible, to foster cooperation and coordination with persons engaged in the clearance and settlement of securities transactions, to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, and, in general, to protect investors and the public interest; and are not designed to permit unfair discrimination in the admission of participants or among participants in the use of the clearing agency, or to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this section or the administration of the clearing agency.

(G) The rules of the clearing agency provide that (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) its participants shall be appropriately disciplined for violation of any provision of the rules of the clearing agency by expulsion, suspension, limitation of activities, functions, and operations, fine, censure, or any other fitting sanction.

(H) The rules of the clearing agency are in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (5) of this subsection, and, in general, provide a fair procedure with respect to the disciplining of participants, the denial of participation to any person seeking participation therein, and the prohibition or limitation by the clearing agency of any person with respect to access to services offered by the clearing agency.

(I) The rules of the clearing agency do not impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(4)(A) A registered clearing agency may, and in cases in which the Commission, by order, directs as appropriate in the public interest shall, deny participation to any person subject to a statutory disqualification. A registered clearing agency shall file notice with the Commission not less than thirty days prior to admitting any person to participation, if the clearing agency knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, that such person was subject to a statutory disqualification. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) A registered clearing agency may deny participation to, or condition the participation of, any person if such person does not meet such standards of financial responsibility, operational capability, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the clearing agency. A registered clearing agency may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to be a participant in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the clearing agency.

(5)(A) In any proceeding by a registered clearing agency to determine whether a participant should be disciplined (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to subparagraph (C) of this paragraph), the clearing agency shall bring specific charges, notify such participant of, and give him an opportunity to defend against such charges, and keep a record. A determination by the clearing agency to impose a disciplinary sanction shall be supported by a statement setting forth—

(i) any act or practice in which such participant has been found to have engaged, or which such participant has been found to have omitted;

(ii) the specific provisions of the rules of the clearing agency which any such act or practice, or omission to act, is deemed to violate; and

(iii) the sanction imposed and the reasons therefor.

(B) In any proceeding by a registered clearing agency to determine whether a person shall be denied participation or prohibited or limited

with respect to access to services offered by the clearing agency, the clearing agency shall notify such person of, and give him an opportunity to be heard upon, the specific grounds for denial or prohibition or limitation under consideration and keep a record. A determination by the clearing agency to deny participation or prohibit or limit a person with respect to access to services offered by the clearing agency shall be supported by a statement setting forth the specific grounds on which the denial or prohibition or limitation is based.

(C) A registered clearing agency may summarily suspend and close the accounts of a participant who (i) has been and is expelled or suspended from any self-regulatory organization, (ii) is in default of any delivery of funds or securities to the clearing agency, or (iii) is in such financial or operating difficulty that the clearing agency determines and so notifies the appropriate regulatory agency for such participant that such suspension and closing of accounts are necessary for the protection of the clearing agency, its participants, creditors, or investors. A participant so summarily suspended shall be promptly afforded an opportunity for a hearing by the clearing agency in accordance with the provisions of subparagraph (A) of this paragraph. The appropriate regulatory agency for such participant, by order, may stay any such summary suspension on its own motion or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby, if such appropriate regulatory agency determines summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments) that such stay is consistent with the public interest and protection of investors.

(6) No registered clearing agency shall prohibit or limit access by any person to services offered by any participant therein.

(7)(A) A clearing agency that is regulated directly or indirectly by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission through its association with a designated contract market for security futures products that is a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, and that would be required to register pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection only because it performs the functions of a clearing agency with respect to security futures products effected pursuant to the rules of the designated contract market with which such agency is associated, is exempted from the provisions of this section and the rules and regulations thereunder, except that if such a clearing agency performs the functions of a clearing agency with respect to a security futures product that is not cash settled, it must have arrangements in place with a registered clearing agency to effect the payment and delivery of the securities underlying the security futures product.

(B) Any clearing agency that performs the functions of a clearing agency with respect to security futures products must coordinate with and develop fair and reasonable links with any and all other clearing agencies that perform the functions of a clearing agency with respect to security futures products, in order to permit, as of the compliance date (as defined in section 78f(h)(6)(C)[1] of this title), security futures products to be purchased on one market and offset on another market that trades such products.

(8) A registered clearing agency shall be permitted to provide facilities for the clearance and settlement of any derivative agreements, contracts, or transactions that are excluded from the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], subject to the requirements of this section and to such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

**(c) Registration of transfer agents**

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, it shall be unlawful for any transfer agent, unless registered in accordance with this section, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to perform the function of a transfer agent with respect to any security registered under section 78*l* of this title or which would be required to be registered except for the exemption from registration provided by subsection (g)(2)(B) or (g)(2)(G) of that section. The appropriate regulatory agency, by rule or order, upon its own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any person or security or class of persons or securities from any provision of this section or any rule or regulation prescribed under this section, if the appropriate regulatory agency finds (A) that such exemption is in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes of this section, including the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and the safeguarding of securities and funds, and (B) the Commission does not object to such exemption.

(2) A transfer agent may be registered by filing with the appropriate regulatory agency for such transfer agent an application for registration in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such transfer agent and any persons associated with the transfer agent as such appropriate regulatory agency may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section. Except as hereinafter provided, such registration shall become effective 45 days after receipt of such application by such appropriate regulatory agency or within such shorter period of time as such appropriate regulatory agency may determine.

(3) The appropriate regulatory agency for a transfer agent, by order, shall deny registration to, censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or revoke the registration of such transfer agent, if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such denial, censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such transfer agent, whether prior or subsequent to becoming such, or any person associated with such transfer agent, whether prior or subsequent to becoming so associated—

[1] So in original. Probably should be ''section 78f(h)(7)(C)''.

(A) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78*o*(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4); or

(B) is subject to an order entered pursuant to subparagraph (C) of paragraph (4) of this subsection barring or suspending the right of such person to be associated with a transfer agent.

(4)(A) Pending final determination whether any registration by a transfer agent under this subsection shall be denied, the appropriate regulatory agency for such transfer agent, by order, may postpone the effective date of such registration for a period not to exceed fifteen days, but if, after notice and opportunity for hearing (which may consist solely of affidavits and oral arguments), it shall appear to such appropriate regulatory agency to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to postpone the effective date of such registration until final determination, such appropriate regulatory agency shall so order. Pending final determination whether any registration under this subsection shall be revoked, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, may suspend such registration, if such suspension appears to such appropriate regulatory agency, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) A registered transfer agent may, upon such terms and conditions as the appropriate regulatory agency for such transfer agent deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or in furtherance of the purposes of this section, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with such appropriate regulatory agency. If such appropriate regulatory agency finds that any transfer agent for which it is the appropriate regulatory agency, is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a transfer agent, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, shall cancel or deny the registration.

(C) The appropriate regulatory agency for a transfer agent, by order, shall censure or place limitations on the activities or functions of any person associated, seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated with the transfer agent, or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or bar any such person from being associated with the transfer agent, if the appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) or[2] paragraph (4) of section 78*o*(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4). It shall be unlawful for any person as to whom such an order suspending or barring him from being associated with a transfer agent is in effect willfully to become, or to be, associated with a transfer agent without the consent of the appropriate regulatory agency that entered the order and the appropriate regulatory agency for that transfer agent. It shall be unlawful for any transfer agent to permit such a person to become, or remain, a person associated with it without the consent of such appropriate regulatory agencies, if the transfer agent knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order. The Commission may establish, by rule, procedures by which a transfer agent reasonably can determine whether a person associated or seeking to become associated with it is subject to any such order, and may require, by rule, that any transfer agent comply with such procedures.

**(d) Activities of clearing agencies and transfer agents; enforcement by appropriate regulatory agencies**

(1) No registered clearing agency or registered transfer agent shall, directly or indirectly, engage in any activity as clearing agency or transfer agent in contravention of such rules and regulations (A) as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, or (B) as the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency or transfer agent may prescribe as necessary or appropriate for the safeguarding of securities and funds.

(2) With respect to any clearing agency or transfer agent for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency or transfer agent may, in accordance with section 1818 of title 12, enforce compliance by such clearing agency or transfer agent with the provisions of this section, sections 78q and 78s of this title, and the rules and regulations thereunder. For purposes of the preceding sentence, any violation of any such provision shall constitute adequate basis for the issuance of an order under section 1818(b) or 1818(c) of title 12, and the participants in any such clearing agency and the persons doing business with any such transfer agent shall be deemed to be ''depositors'' as that term is used in section 1818(c) of title 12.

(3)(A) With respect to any clearing agency or transfer agent for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, the Commission and the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency or transfer agent shall consult and cooperate with each other, and, as may be appropriate, with State banking authorities having supervision over such clearing agency or transfer agent toward the end that, to the maximum extent practicable, their respective regulatory responsibilities may be fulfilled and the

[2] So in original. Probably should be ''of''.

rules and regulations applicable to such clearing agency or transfer agent may be in accord with both sound banking practices and a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. In accordance with this objective—

(i) the Commission and such appropriate regulatory agency shall, at least fifteen days prior to the issuance for public comment of any proposed rule or regulation or adoption of any rule or regulation concerning such clearing agency or transfer agent, consult and request the views of the other; and

(ii) such appropriate regulatory agency shall assume primary responsibility to examine and enforce compliance by such clearing agency or transfer agent with the provisions of this section and sections 78q and 78s of this title.

(B) Nothing in the preceding subparagraph or elsewhere in this chapter shall be construed to impair or limit (other than by the requirement of notification) the Commission's authority to make rules under any provision of this chapter or to enforce compliance pursuant to any provision of this chapter by any clearing agency, transfer agent, or person associated with a transfer agent with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder.

(4) Nothing in this section shall be construed to impair the authority of any State banking authority or other State or Federal regulatory authority having jurisdiction over a person registered as a clearing agency, transfer agent, or person associated with a transfer agent, to make and enforce rules governing such person which are not inconsistent with this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder.

(5) A registered transfer agent may not, directly or indirectly, engage in any activity in connection with the guarantee of a signature of an endorser of a security, including the acceptance or rejection of such guarantee, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, to facilitate the equitable treatment of financial institutions which issue such guarantees, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

**(e) Physical movement of securities certificates**

The Commission shall use its authority under this chapter to end the physical movement of securities certificates in connection with the settlement among brokers and dealers of transactions in securities consummated by means of the mails or any means or instrumentalities of interstate commerce.

**(f) Rules concerning transfer of securities and rights and obligations of involved or affected parties**

(1) Notwithstanding any provision of State law, except as provided in paragraph (3), if the Commission makes each of the findings described in paragraph (2)(A), the Commission may adopt rules concerning—

(A) the transfer of certificated or uncertificated securities (other than government securities issued pursuant to chapter 31 of title 31 or securities otherwise processed within a book-entry system operated by the Federal Reserve banks pursuant to a Federal book-entry regulation) or limited interests (including security interests) therein; and

(B) rights and obligations of purchasers, sellers, owners, lenders, borrowers, and financial intermediaries (including brokers, dealers, banks, and clearing agencies) involved in or affected by such transfers, and the rights of third parties whose interests in such securities devolve from such transfers.

(2)(A) The findings described in this paragraph are findings by the Commission that—

(i) such rule is necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors or in the public interest and is reasonably designed to promote the prompt, accurate, and safe clearance and settlement of securities transactions;

(ii) in the absence of a uniform rule, the safe and efficient operation of the national system for clearance and settlement of securities transactions will be, or is, substantially impeded; and

(iii) to the extent such rule will impair or diminish, directly or indirectly, rights of persons specified in paragraph (1)(B) under State law concerning transfers of securities (or limited interests therein), the benefits of such rule outweigh such impairment or diminution of rights.

(B) In making the findings described in subparagraph (A), the Commission shall give consideration to the recommendations of the Advisory Committee established under paragraph (4), and it shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System. If the Secretary of the Treasury objects, in writing, to any proposed rule of the Commission on the basis of the Secretary's view on the issues described in clauses (i), (ii), and (iii) of subparagraph (A), the Commission shall consider all feasible alternatives to the proposed rule, and it shall not adopt any such rule unless the Commission makes an explicit finding that the rule is the most practicable method for achieving safe and efficient operation of the national clearance and settlement system.

(3) Any State may, prior to the expiration of 2 years after the Commission adopts a rule under this subsection, enact a statute that specifically refers to this subsection and the specific rule thereunder and establishes, prospectively from the date of enactment of the State statute, a provision that differs from that applicable under the Commission's rule.

(4)(A) Within 90 days after October 16, 1990, the Commission shall (and at such times thereafter as the Commission may determine, the Commission may), after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, establish an advisory committee under the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.). The Advisory Committee shall be directed to consider and report to the Commission on such matters as the Commission, after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, determines, including the areas, if any, in which

State commercial laws and related Federal laws concerning the transfer of certificated or uncertificated securities, limited interests (including security interests) in such securities, or the creation or perfection of security interests in such securities do not provide the necessary certainty, uniformity, and clarity for purchasers, sellers, owners, lenders, borrowers, and financial intermediaries concerning their respective rights and obligations.

(B) The Advisory Committee shall consist of 15 members, of which—

(i) 11 shall be designated by the Commission in accordance with the Federal Advisory Committee Act; and

(ii) 2 each shall be designated by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System and the Secretary of the Treasury.

(C) The Advisory Committee shall conduct its activities in accordance with the Federal Advisory Committee Act. Within 6 months of its designation, or such longer time as the Commission may designate, the Advisory Committee shall issue a report to the Commission, and shall cause copies of that report to be delivered to the Secretary of the Treasury and the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 17A, as added Pub. L. 94–29, § 15, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 141; amended Pub. L. 100–181, title III, § 322, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1257; Pub. L. 101–429, title II, § 206, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 941; Pub. L. 101–432, § 5, Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 973; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, § 203(c)(1), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2718; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, §§ 206(d), 207], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–431, 2763A–434; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, § 604(c)(1)(C), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 796.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2), (b)(3)(A), (F), (I), (8), (d)(1), (3)(B), (4), (5), and (e), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(8), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§ 1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(4), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, as amended, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (c)(3)(A), (4)(C). Pub. L. 107–204 inserted '', or is subject to an order or finding,'' before ''enumerated'' and substituted ''(H), or (G)'' for ''or (G)''.

2000—Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 207(1)], inserted ''and derivative agreements, contracts, and transactions'' after ''prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions''.

Subsec. (b)(3)(F). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 207(2)], inserted ''and, to the extent applicable, derivative agreements, contracts, and transactions'' after ''designed to promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions''.

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(d)], added par. (7).

Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 207(3)], added par. (8).

1990—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101–432, § 5(a), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: ''The Commission is directed, therefore, having due regard for the public interest, the protection of investors, the safeguarding of securities and funds, and maintenance of fair competition among brokers and dealers, clearing agencies, and transfer agents, to use its authority under this chapter to facilitate the establishment of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of transactions in securities (other than exempted securities) in accordance with the findings and to carry out the objectives set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection. The Commission shall use its authority under this chapter to assure equal regulation under this chapter of registered clearing agencies and registered transfer agents.''

Subsec. (c)(3)(A), (4)(C). Pub. L. 101–550 substituted ''(A), (D), (E), or (G)'' for ''(A), (D), or (E)''.

Subsec. (d)(5). Pub. L. 101–429 added par. (5).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101–432, § 5(b), added subsec. (f).

1987—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, § 322(1), (2), inserted ''and any persons associated with the transfer agent'' in first sentence and substituted ''45'' for ''thirty'' in second sentence.

Subsec. (c)(3), (4). Pub. L. 100–181, § 322(3)–(5), added par. (3), struck out former par. (3)(A) which read as follows: ''The appropriate regulatory agency for a transfer agent, by order, shall deny registration to, censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoke the registration of such transfer agent, if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such denial, censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such transfer agent has willfully violated or is unable to comply with any provision of this section or section 78q of this title or the rules or regulations thereunder.'', redesignated subpars. (B) and (C) of former par. (3) as subpars. (A) and (B), respectively, of new par. (4), and added subpar. (C) to such par. (4).

Subsec. (d)(3)(B). Pub. L. 100–181, § 322(6), substituted ''clearing agency, transfer agent, or person associated with a transfer agent'' for ''clearing agency or transfer agent''.

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 100–181, § 322(7), substituted '', transfer agent, or person associated with a transfer agent,'' for ''or transfer agent''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective June 4, 1975, except for subsecs. (b) and (c) which are effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

CLEARANCE AND SETTLEMENT OF TRANSACTIONS; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 8(b) of Pub. L. 101–432 directed Securities and Exchange Commission, in consultation with Commodity Futures Trading Commission, Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and other relevant regulatory authorities, to examine progress toward establishing linked or coordinated facilities for clearance and settlement of transactions in securities, securities options, contracts of sale for future delivery and options thereon, and commodity options, and to submit to Congress, not later than 2 years from Oct. 16, 1990, a report detailing and evaluating such progress.

## § 78q–2. Automated quotation systems for penny stocks

### (a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) the market for penny stocks suffers from a lack of reliable and accurate quotation and last sale information available to investors and regulators;

(2) it is in the public interest and appropriate for the protection of investors and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets to improve significantly the information available to brokers, dealers, investors, and regulators with respect to quotations for and transactions in penny stocks; and

(3) a fully implemented automated quotation system for penny stocks would meet the information needs of investors and market participants and would add visibility and regulatory and surveillance data to that market.

**(b) Mandate to facilitate establishment of automated quotation systems**

**(1) In general**

The Commission shall facilitate the widespread dissemination of reliable and accurate last sale and quotation information with respect to penny stocks in accordance with the findings set forth in subsection (a) of this section, with a view toward establishing, at the earliest feasible time, one or more automated quotation systems that will collect and disseminate information regarding all penny stocks.

**(2) Characteristics of systems**

Each such automated quotation system shall—

(A) be operated by a registered securities association or a national securities exchange in accordance with such rules as the Commission and these entities shall prescribe;

(B) collect and disseminate quotation and transaction information;

(C) except as provided in subsection (c) of this section, provide bid and ask quotations of participating brokers or dealers, or comparably accurate and reliable pricing information, which shall constitute firm bids or offers for at least such minimum numbers of shares or minimum dollar amounts as the Commission and the registered securities association or national securities exchange shall require; and

(D) provide for the reporting of the volume of penny stock transactions, including last sale reporting, when the volume reaches appropriate levels that the Commission shall specify by rule or order.

**(c) Exemptive authority**

The Commission may, by rule or order, grant such exemptions, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, to any penny stock or class of penny stocks from the requirements of subsection (b) of this section as the Commission determines to be consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets.

**(d) Commission reporting requirements**

The Commission shall, in each of the first 5 annual reports (under section 78w(b)(1) of this title) submitted more than 12 months after October 15, 1990, include a description of the status of the penny stock automated quotation system or systems required by subsection (b) of this section. Such description shall include—

(1) a review of the development, implementation, and progress of the project, including achievement of significant milestones and current project schedule; and

(2) a review of the activities of registered securities associations and national securities exchanges in the development of the system.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 17B, as added Pub. L. 101–429, title V, § 506, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 955.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 78w(b)(1) of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was omitted from the Code. For further details related to reports referred to in subsec. (d), see Codification note set out under section 78w of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in an Effective Date of 1990 Amendment note under section 77g of this title.

## § 78r. Liability for misleading statements

**(a) Persons liable; persons entitled to recover; defense of good faith; suit at law or in equity; costs, etc.**

Any person who shall make or cause to be made any statement in any application, report, or document filed pursuant to this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title, which statement was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, shall be liable to any person (not knowing that such statement was false or misleading) who, in reliance upon such statement, shall have purchased or sold a security at a price which was affected by such statement, for damages caused by such reliance, unless the person sued shall prove that he acted in good faith and had no knowledge that such statement was false or misleading. A person seeking to enforce such liability may sue at law or in equity in any court of competent jurisdiction. In any such suit the court may, in its discretion, require an undertaking for the payment of the costs of such suit, and assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against either party litigant.

**(b) Contribution**

Every person who becomes liable to make payment under this section may recover contribution as in cases of contract from any person who, if joined in the original suit, would have been liable to make the same payment.

**(c) Period of limitations**

No action shall be maintained to enforce any liability created under this section unless brought within one year after the discovery of the facts constituting the cause of action and within three years after such cause of action accrued.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 18, 48 Stat. 897; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 5, 49 Stat. 1379.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1936—Subsec. (a). Act May 27, 1936, inserted ''or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title''.

## § 78s. Registration, responsibilities, and oversight of self-regulatory organizations

### (a) Registration procedures; notice of filing; other regulatory agencies

(1) The Commission shall, upon the filing of an application for registration as a national securities exchange, registered securities association, or registered clearing agency, pursuant to section 78f, 78*o*–3, or 78q–1 of this title, respectively, publish notice of such filing and afford interested persons an opportunity to submit written data, views, and arguments concerning such application. Within ninety days of the date of publication of such notice (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents), the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant such registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred eighty days of the date of a publication of notice of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for up to ninety days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant such registration if it finds that the requirements of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder with respect to the applicant are satisfied. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such finding.

(2) With respect to an application for registration filed by a clearing agency for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency—

(A) The Commission shall not grant registration prior to the sixtieth day after the date of publication of notice of the filing of such application unless the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency has notified the Commission of such appropriate regulatory agency's determination that such clearing agency is so organized and has the capacity to be able to safeguard securities and funds in its custody or control or for which it is responsible and that the rules of such clearing agency are designed to assure the safeguarding of such securities and funds.

(B) The Commission shall institute proceedings in accordance with paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection to determine whether registration should be denied if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission within sixty days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of such application of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that such clearing agency may not be so organized or have the capacity to be able to safeguard securities or funds in its custody or control or for which it is responsible or that the rules of such clearing agency may not be designed to assure the safeguarding of such securities and funds and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(C) The Commission shall deny registration if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission prior to the conclusion of proceedings instituted in accordance with paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that such clearing agency is not so organized or does not have the capacity to be able to safeguard securities or funds in its custody or control or for which it is responsible or that the rules of such clearing agency are not designed to assure the safeguarding of such securities or funds and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(3) A self-regulatory organization may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission, by rule, deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any self-regulatory organization is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business in the capacity specified in its application for registration, the Commission, by order, shall cancel its registration. Upon the withdrawal of a national securities association from registration or the cancellation, suspension, or revocation of the registration of a national securities association, the registration of any association affiliated therewith shall automatically terminate.

### (b) Proposed rule changes; notice; proceedings

(1) Each self-regulatory organization shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules as the Commission may prescribe, copies of any proposed rule or any proposed change in, addition to, or deletion from the rules of such self-regulatory organization (hereinafter in this subsection collectively referred to as a ''proposed rule change'') accompanied by a concise general statement of the basis and purpose of such proposed rule change. The Commission shall, upon the filing of any proposed rule change, publish notice thereof together with the terms of substance of the proposed rule change or a description of the subjects and issues involved. The Commission shall give interested persons an opportunity to submit written data, views, and arguments concerning such proposed rule change. No proposed rule change shall take effect unless approved by the Commission or otherwise permitted in accordance with the provisions of this subsection.

(2) Within thirty-five days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of a proposed rule change in accordance with paragraph (1) of this subsection, or within such longer period as the Commission may designate up to ninety days of

such date if it finds such longer period to be appropriate and publishes its reasons for so finding or as to which the self-regulatory organization consents, the Commission shall—

(A) by order approve such proposed rule change, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether the proposed rule change should be disapproved. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for disapproval under consideration and opportunity for hearing and be concluded within one hundred eighty days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of the proposed rule change. At the conclusion of such proceedings the Commission, by order, shall approve or disapprove such proposed rule change. The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for up to sixty days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the self-regulatory organization consents.

The Commission shall approve a proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization if it finds that such proposed rule change is consistent with the requirements of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder applicable to such organization. The Commission shall disapprove a proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization if it does not make such finding. The Commission shall not approve any proposed rule change prior to the thirtieth day after the date of publication of notice of the filing thereof, unless the Commission finds good cause for so doing and publishes its reasons for so finding.

(3)(A) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (2) of this subsection, a proposed rule change may take effect upon filing with the Commission if designated by the self-regulatory organization as (i) constituting a stated policy, practice, or interpretation with respect to the meaning, administration, or enforcement of an existing rule of the self-regulatory organization, (ii) establishing or changing a due, fee, or other charge imposed by the self-regulatory organization, or (iii) concerned solely with the administration of the self-regulatory organization or other matters which the Commission, by rule, consistent with the public interest and the purposes of this subsection, may specify as without the provisions of such paragraph (2).

(B) Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, a proposed rule change may be put into effect summarily if it appears to the Commission that such action is necessary for the protection of investors, the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, or the safeguarding of securities or funds. Any proposed rule change so put into effect shall be filed promptly thereafter in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(C) Any proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization which has taken effect pursuant to subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph may be enforced by such organization to the extent it is not inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and applicable Federal and State law. At any time within sixty days of the date of filing of such a proposed rule change in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Commission summarily may abrogate the change in the rules of the self-regulatory organization made thereby and require that the proposed rule change be refiled in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection and reviewed in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (2) of this subsection, if it appears to the Commission that such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. Commission action pursuant to the preceding sentence shall not affect the validity or force of the rule change during the period it was in effect and shall not be reviewable under section 78y of this title nor deemed to be ''final agency action'' for purposes of section 704 of title 5.

(4) With respect to a proposed rule change filed by a registered clearing agency for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency—

(A) The Commission shall not approve any such proposed rule change prior to the thirtieth day after the date of publication of notice of the filing whereof unless the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency has notified the Commission of such appropriate regulatory agency's determination that the proposed rule change is consistent with the safeguarding of securities and funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible.

(B) The Commission shall institute proceedings in accordance with paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection to determine whether any such proposed rule change should be disapproved, if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission within thirty days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of the proposed rule change of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that the proposed rule change may be inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(C) The Commission shall disapprove any such proposed rule change if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission prior to the conclusion of proceedings instituted in accordance with paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that the proposed rule change is inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(D) The Commission shall abrogate any change in the rules of such a clearing agency made by a proposed rule change which has taken effect pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection, require that the proposed rule change be refiled in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection, and reviewed in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (2) of this subsection, if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing

agency notifies the Commission within thirty days of the date of filing of such proposed rule change of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that the rules of such clearing agency as so changed may be inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(5) The Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury prior to approving a proposed rule filed by a registered securities association that primarily concerns conduct related to transactions in government securities, except where the Commission determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious or summary action and publishes its reasons therefor. If the Secretary of the Treasury comments in writing to the Commission on a proposed rule that has been published for comment, the Commission shall respond in writing to such written comment before approving the proposed rule. If the Secretary of the Treasury determines, and notifies the Commission, that such rule, if implemented, would, or as applied does (i) adversely affect the liquidity or efficiency of the market for government securities; or (ii) impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section, the Commission shall, prior to adopting the proposed rule, find that such rule is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section notwithstanding the Secretary's determination.

(6) In approving rules described in paragraph (5), the Commission shall consider the sufficiency and appropriateness of then existing laws and rules applicable to government securities brokers, government securities dealers, and persons associated with government securities brokers and government securities dealers.

(7) SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCT RULE CHANGES.—

(A) FILING REQUIRED.—A self-regulatory organization that is an exchange registered with the Commission pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title or that is a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules as the Commission may prescribe, copies of any proposed rule change or any proposed change in, addition to, or deletion from the rules of such self-regulatory organization (hereinafter in this paragraph collectively referred to as a ''proposed rule change'') that relates to higher margin levels, fraud or manipulation, recordkeeping, reporting, listing standards, or decimal pricing for security futures products, sales practices for security futures products for persons who effect transactions in security futures products, or rules effectuating such self-regulatory organization's obligation to enforce the securities laws. Such proposed rule change shall be accompanied by a concise general statement of the basis and purpose of such proposed rule change. The Commission shall, upon the filing of any proposed rule change, promptly publish notice thereof together with the terms of substance of the proposed rule change or a description of the subjects and issues involved. The Commission shall give interested persons an opportunity to submit data, views, and arguments concerning such proposed rule change.

(B) FILING WITH CFTC.—A proposed rule change filed with the Commission pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall be filed concurrently with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission. Such proposed rule change may take effect upon filing of a written certification with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission under section 7a–2(c) of title 7, upon a determination by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission that review of the proposed rule change is not necessary, or upon approval of the proposed rule change by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(C) ABROGATION OF RULE CHANGES.—Any proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization that has taken effect pursuant to subparagraph (B) may be enforced by such self-regulatory organization to the extent such rule is not inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and applicable Federal law. At any time within 60 days of the date of the filing of a written certification with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission under section 7a–2(c) of title 7, the date the Commodity Futures Trading Commission determines that review of such proposed rule change is not necessary, or the date the Commodity Futures Trading Commission approves such proposed rule change, the Commission, after consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, may summarily abrogate the proposed rule change and require that the proposed rule change be refiled in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1), if it appears to the Commission that such proposed rule change unduly burdens competition or efficiency, conflicts with the securities laws, or is inconsistent with the public interest and the protection of investors. Commission action pursuant to the preceding sentence shall not affect the validity or force of the rule change during the period it was in effect and shall not be reviewable under section 78y of this title nor deemed to be a final agency action for purposes of section 704 of title 5.

(D) REVIEW OF RESUBMITTED ABROGATED RULES.—

(i) PROCEEDINGS.—Within 35 days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of a proposed rule change that is abrogated in accordance with subparagraph (C) and refiled in accordance with paragraph (1), or within such longer period as the Commission may designate up to 90 days after such date if the Commission finds such longer period to be appropriate and publishes its reasons for so finding or as to which the self-regulatory organization consents, the Commission shall—

(I) by order approve such proposed rule change; or

(II) after consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, institute proceedings to determine whether the proposed rule change should be disapproved.

Proceedings under subclause (II) shall include notice of the grounds for disapproval under consideration and opportunity for hearing and be concluded within 180 days after the date of publication of notice of the filing of the proposed rule change. At the conclusion of such proceedings, the Commission, by order, shall approve or disapprove such proposed rule change. The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for up to 60 days if the Commission finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the self-regulatory organization consents.

(ii) GROUNDS FOR APPROVAL.—The Commission shall approve a proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization under this subparagraph if the Commission finds that such proposed rule change does not unduly burden competition or efficiency, does not conflict with the securities laws, and is not inconsistent with the public interest or the protection of investors. The Commission shall disapprove such a proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization if it does not make such finding. The Commission shall not approve any proposed rule change prior to the 30th day after the date of publication of notice of the filing thereof, unless the Commission finds good cause for so doing and publishes its reasons for so finding.

(8) DECIMAL PRICING.—Not later than 9 months after the date on which trading in any security futures product commences under this chapter, all self-regulatory organizations listing or trading security futures products shall file proposed rule changes necessary to implement decimal pricing of security futures products. The Commission may not require such rules to contain equal minimum increments in such decimal pricing.

(9) CONSULTATION WITH CFTC.—

(A) CONSULTATION REQUIRED.—The Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission prior to approving or disapproving a proposed rule change filed by a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(a) of this title or a national securities exchange subject to the provisions of subsection (a) of this section that primarily concerns conduct related to transactions in security futures products, except where the Commission determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious or summary action and publishes its reasons therefor.

(B) RESPONSES TO CFTC COMMENTS AND FINDINGS.—If the Commodity Futures Trading Commission comments in writing to the Commission on a proposed rule that has been published for comment, the Commission shall respond in writing to such written comment before approving or disapproving the proposed rule. If the Commodity Futures Trading Commission determines, and notifies the Commission, that such rule, if implemented or as applied, would—

(i) adversely affect the liquidity or efficiency of the market for security futures products; or

(ii) impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section,

the Commission shall, prior to approving or disapproving the proposed rule, find that such rule is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section notwithstanding the Commodity Futures Trading Commission's determination.

**(c) Amendment by Commission of rules of self-regulatory organizations**

The Commission, by rule, may abrogate, add to, and delete from (hereinafter in this subsection collectively referred to as ''amend'') the rules of a self-regulatory organization (other than a registered clearing agency) as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate to insure the fair administration of the self-regulatory organization, to conform its rules to requirements of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder applicable to such organization, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, in the following manner:

(1) The Commission shall notify the self-regulatory organization and publish notice of the proposed rulemaking in the Federal Register. The notice shall include the text of the proposed amendment to the rules of the self-regulatory organization and a statement of the Commission's reasons, including any pertinent facts, for commencing such proposed rulemaking.

(2) The Commission shall give interested persons an opportunity for the oral presentation of data, views, and arguments, in addition to an opportunity to make written submissions. A transcript shall be kept of any oral presentation.

(3) A rule adopted pursuant to this subsection shall incorporate the text of the amendment to the rules of the self-regulatory organization and a statement of the Commission's basis for and purpose in so amending such rules. This statement shall include an identification of any facts on which the Commission considers its determination so to amend the rules of the self-regulatory agency to be based, including the reasons for the Commission's conclusions as to any of such facts which were disputed in the rulemaking.

(4)(A) Except as provided in paragraphs (1) through (3) of this subsection, rulemaking under this subsection shall be in accordance with the procedures specified in section 553 of title 5 for rulemaking not on the record.

(B) Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to impair or limit the Commission's power to make, or to modify or alter the procedures the Commission may follow in making, rules and regulations pursuant to any other authority under this chapter.

(C) Any amendment to the rules of a self-regulatory organization made by the Commission pursuant to this subsection shall be considered for all purposes of this chapter to be part of the rules of such self-regulatory organization and shall not be considered to be a rule of the Commission.

(5) With respect to rules described in subsection (b)(5) of this section, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury before abrogating, adding to, and deleting from such rules, except where the Commission determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious or summary action and publishes its reasons therefor.

**(d) Notice of disciplinary action taken by self-regulatory organization against a member or participant; review of action by appropriate regulatory agency; procedure**

(1) If any self-regulatory organization imposes any final disciplinary sanction on any member thereof or participant therein, denies membership or participation to any applicant, or prohibits or limits any person in respect to access to services offered by such organization or member thereof or if any self-regulatory organization (other than a registered clearing agency) imposes any final disciplinary sanction on any person associated with a member or bars any person from becoming associated with a member, the self-regulatory organization shall promptly file notice thereof with the appropriate regulatory agency for the self-regulatory organization and (if other than the appropriate regulatory agency for the self-regulatory organization) the appropriate regulatory agency for such member, participant, applicant, or other person. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the appropriate regulatory agency for the self-regulatory organization, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(2) Any action with respect to which a self-regulatory organization is required by paragraph (1) of this subsection to file notice shall be subject to review by the appropriate regulatory agency for such member, participant, applicant, or other person, on its own motion, or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby filed within thirty days after the date such notice was filed with such appropriate regulatory agency and received by such aggrieved person, or within such longer period as such appropriate regulatory agency may determine. Application to such appropriate regulatory agency for review, or the institution of review by such appropriate regulatory agency on its own motion, shall not operate as a stay of such action unless such appropriate regulatory agency otherwise orders, summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing on the question of a stay (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments). Each appropriate regulatory agency shall establish for appropriate cases an expedited procedure for consideration and determination of the question of a stay.

(3) The provisions of this subsection shall apply to an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title only to the extent that such exchange or association imposes any final disciplinary sanction for—

(A) a violation of the Federal securities laws or the rules and regulations thereunder; or

(B) a violation of a rule of such exchange or association, as to which a proposed change would be required to be filed under this section, except that, to the extent that the exchange or association rule violation relates to any account, agreement, contract, or transaction, this subsection shall apply only to the extent such violation involves a security futures product.

**(e) Disposition of review; cancellation, reduction, or remission of sanction**

(1) In any proceeding to review a final disciplinary sanction imposed by a self-regulatory organization on a member thereof or participant therein or a person associated with such a member, after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of consideration of the record before the self-regulatory organization and opportunity for the presentation of supporting reasons to affirm, modify, or set aside the sanction)—

(A) if the appropriate regulatory agency for such member, participant, or person associated with a member finds that such member, participant, or person associated with a member has engaged in such acts or practices, or has omitted such acts, as the self-regulatory organization has found him to have engaged in or omitted, that such acts or practices, or omissions to act, are in violation of such provisions of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of the self-regulatory organization, or, in the case of a registered securities association, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board as have been specified in the determination of the self-regulatory organization, and that such provisions are, and were applied in a manner, consistent with the purposes of this chapter, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, shall so declare and, as appropriate, affirm the sanction imposed by the self-regulatory organization, modify the sanction in accordance with paragraph (2) of this subsection, or remand to the self-regulatory organization for further proceedings; or

(B) if such appropriate regulatory agency does not make any such finding it shall, by order, set aside the sanction imposed by the self-regulatory organization and, if appropriate, remand to the self-regulatory organization for further proceedings.

(2) If the appropriate regulatory agency for a member, participant, or person associated with a member, having due regard for the public interest and the protection of investors, finds after a proceeding in accordance with paragraph (1) of this subsection that a sanction imposed by a self-regulatory organization upon such member, participant, or person associated with a member imposes any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter or is excessive or oppressive, the appropriate regulatory agency may cancel, reduce, or require the remission of such sanction.

**(f) Dismissal of review proceeding**

In any proceeding to review the denial of membership or participation in a self-regulatory

organization to any applicant, the barring of any person from becoming associated with a member of a self-regulatory organization, or the prohibition or limitation by a self-regulatory organization of any person with respect to access to services offered by the self-regulatory organization or any member thereof, if the appropriate regulatory agency for such applicant or person, after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of consideration of the record before the self-regulatory organization and opportunity for the presentation of supporting reasons to dismiss the proceeding or set aside the action of the self-regulatory organization) finds that the specific grounds on which such denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation is based exist in fact, that such denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation is in accordance with the rules of the self-regulatory organization, and that such rules are, and were applied in a manner, consistent with the purposes of this chapter, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, shall dismiss the proceeding. If such appropriate regulatory agency does not make any such finding or if it finds that such denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation imposes any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, shall set aside the action of the self-regulatory organization and require it to admit such applicant to membership or participation, permit such person to become associated with a member, or grant such person access to services offered by the self-regulatory organization or member thereof.

**(g) Compliance with rules and regulations**

(1) Every self-regulatory organization shall comply with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its own rules, and (subject to the provisions of section 78q(d) of this title, paragraph (2) of this subsection, and the rules thereunder) absent reasonable justification or excuse enforce compliance—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, with such provisions by its members and persons associated with its members;

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, with such provisions and the provisions of the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board by its members and persons associated with its members; and

(C) in the case of a registered clearing agency, with its own rules by its participants.

(2) The Commission, by rule, consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the other purposes of this chapter, may relieve any self-regulatory organization of any responsibility under this chapter to enforce compliance with any specified provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder by any member of such organization or person associated with such a member, or any class of such members or persons associated with a member.

**(h) Suspension or revocation of self-regulatory organization's registration; censure; other sanctions**

(1) The appropriate regulatory agency for a self-regulatory organization is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or revoke the registration of such self-regulatory organization, or to censure or impose limitations upon the activities, functions, and operations of such self-regulatory organization, if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such self-regulatory organization has violated or is unable to comply with any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or its own rules or without reasonable justification or excuse has failed to enforce compliance—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, with any such provision by a member thereof or a person associated with a member thereof;

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, with any such provision or any provision of the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board by a member thereof or a person associated with a member thereof; or

(C) in the case of a registered clearing agency, with any provision of its own rules by a participant therein.

(2) The appropriate regulatory agency for a self-regulatory organization is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or expel from such self-regulatory organization any member thereof or participant therein, if such member or participant is subject to an order of the Commission pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(4) of this title or if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such member or participant has willfully violated or has effected any transaction for any other person who, such member or participant had reason to believe, was violating with respect to such transaction—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, any provision of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.], the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], this chapter, or the rules or regulations under any of such statutes;

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, this chapter, the rules or regulations under any of such statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board; or

(C) in the case of a registered clearing agency, any provision of the rules of the clearing agency.

(3) The appropriate regulatory agency for a national securities exchange or registered securities association is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to suspend for a period

not exceeding twelve months or to bar any person from being associated with a member of such national securities exchange or registered securities association, if such person is subject to an order of the Commission pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(6) of this title or if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such person has willfully violated or has effected any transaction for any other person who, such person associated with a member had reason to believe, was violating with respect to such transaction—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, this chapter, or the rules or regulations under any of such statutes; or

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, this chapter, the rules or regulations under any of the statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

(4) The appropriate regulatory agency for a self-regulatory organization is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to remove from office or censure any officer or director of such self-regulatory organization, if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such officer or director has willfully violated any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of such self-regulatory organization, willfully abused his authority, or without reasonable justification or excuse has failed to enforce compliance—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, with any such provision by any member or person associated with a member;

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, with any such provision or any provision of the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board by any member or person associated with a member; or

(C) in the case of a registered clearing agency, with any provision of the rules of the clearing agency by any participant.

**(i) Appointment of trustee**

If a proceeding under subsection (h)(1) of this section results in the suspension or revocation of the registration of a clearing agency, the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency may, upon notice to such clearing agency, apply to any court of competent jurisdiction specified in section 78u(d) or 78aa of this title for the appointment of a trustee. In the event of such an application, the court may, to the extent it deems necessary or appropriate, take exclusive jurisdiction of such clearing agency and the records and assets thereof, wherever located; and the court shall appoint the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency or a person designated by such appropriate regulatory agency as trustee with power to take possession and continue to operate or terminate the operations of such clearing agency in an orderly manner for the protection of participants and investors, subject to such terms and conditions as the court may prescribe.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 19, 48 Stat. 898; Pub. L. 87–196, Sept. 5, 1961, 75 Stat. 465; Pub. L. 87–561, July 27, 1962, 76 Stat. 247; Pub. L. 90–438, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 453; Pub. L. 91–94, Oct. 20, 1969, 83 Stat. 141; Pub. L. 91–410, Sept. 25, 1970, 84 Stat. 862; Pub. L. 94–29, § 16, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 146; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, § 106(c), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2350; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, § 301(b)(11), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 202(b), (c)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–418, 2763A–421.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (b)(2), (3)(C), (7)(C), (8), (c), (d)(1), (e)(1)(A), (2), (f), (g), and (h), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (h), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Investment Advisers Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (h), is title II of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 847, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§ 80b–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80b–20 of this title and Tables.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (h), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 202(b)(1)], added par. (7).

Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 202(b)(2)], added par. (8).

Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 202(b)(3)], added par. (9).

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 202(c)], added par. (3).

1998—Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 105–353 realigned margins.

1993—Subsec. (b)(5), (6). Pub. L. 103–202, § 106(c)(1), added pars. (5) and (6).

Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 103–202, § 106(c)(2), added par. (5).

1975—Pub. L. 94–29 amended section generally, substituting provisions covering the registration, responsibilities, and oversight of self-regulatory organizations by the Commission for provisions covering only the Commission's powers with respect to exchanges and securities, with a view to consolidating and expanding the Commission's oversight powers with respect to self-regulatory organizations, their members, participants, and officers, and with a view to giving the Commission identical powers over all self-regulatory organizations, including registered clearing agencies, and substantially strengthening the Commission's ability to assure that these organizations carry out their statutory responsibilities.

1970—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 91–410 substituted ''December 31, 1970'' for ''September 1, 1970''.

1969—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 91–94 substituted ''September 1, 1970'' for ''September 1, 1969'' in par. (1), and ''$945,000'' for ''$875,000'' in par. (4).

1968—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90–438 added subsec. (e).

1962—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 87–561 substituted ''April 3, 1963'' for ''January 3, 1963'' and ''$950,000'' for ''$750,000''.

1961—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 87–196 added subsec. (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, except for amendment of subsec. (g) by Pub. L. 94–29 which is effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

REVIEW OF REGULATORY STRUCTURES AND PROCEDURES WITH RESPECT TO PENNY STOCKS; REPORT

Pub. L. 101–429, title V, §510, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 957, directed Comptroller General, in consultation with Securities and Exchange Commission, to conduct a review of rules, procedures, facilities, and oversight and enforcement activities of self-regulatory organizations under Securities Exchange Act of 1934, with respect to penny stocks (within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(51)), and, within one year after Oct. 15, 1990, to submit a report on the review including a statement of findings and such recommendations as the Comptroller General considered appropriate with respect to legislative or administrative changes.

## § 78t. Liability of controlling persons and persons who aid and abet violations

### (a) Joint and several liability; good faith defense

Every person who, directly or indirectly, controls any person liable under any provision of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder shall also be liable jointly and severally with and to the same extent as such controlled person to any person to whom such controlled person is liable, unless the controlling person acted in good faith and did not directly or indirectly induce the act or acts constituting the violation or cause of action.

### (b) Unlawful activity through or by means of any other person

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, to do any act or thing which it would be unlawful for such person to do under the provisions of this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder through or by means of any other person.

### (c) Hindering, delaying, or obstructing the making or filing of any document, report, or information

It shall be unlawful for any director or officer of, or any owner of any securities issued by, any issuer required to file any document, report, or information under this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder without just cause to hinder, delay, or obstruct the making or filing of any such document, report, or information.

### (d) Liability for trading in securities while in possession of material nonpublic information

Wherever communicating, or purchasing or selling a security while in possession of, material nonpublic information would violate, or result in liability to any purchaser or seller of the security under any provisions of this chapter, or any rule or regulation thereunder, such conduct in connection with a purchase or sale of a put, call, straddle, option, privilege or security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security or with respect to a group or index of securities including such security, shall also violate and result in comparable liability to any purchaser or seller of that security under such provision, rule, or regulation.

### (e) Prosecution of persons who aid and abet violations

For purposes of any action brought by the Commission under paragraph (1) or (3) of section 78u(d) of this title, any person that knowingly provides substantial assistance to another person in violation of a provision of this chapter, or of any rule or regulation issued under this chapter, shall be deemed to be in violation of such provision to the same extent as the person to whom such assistance is provided.

### (f) Limitation on Commission authority

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c–1(b) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §20, 48 Stat. 899; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §6, 49 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 88–467, §9, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 579; Pub. L. 98–376, §5, Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 104–67, title I, §104, Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 757; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(12), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(3), title III, §303(i), (j)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–426, 2763A–456.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsecs. (d) and (f), is section 206B of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out in a note under section 78c of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(i)], amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (d) read as follows: ''Wherever communicating, or purchasing or selling a security while in possession of, material nonpublic information would violate, or result in liability to any purchaser or seller of the security under any provision of this chapter, or any rule or regulation thereunder, such conduct in connection with a purchase or sale of a put, call, straddle, option,, privilege, or security futures product with respect to such security or with respect to a group or index of securities including such security, shall also violate and result in comparable liability to any purchaser or seller of that security under such provision, rule, or regulation.''

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(3)], substituted ‘‘, privilege, or security futures product’’ for ‘‘or privilege’’.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(j)], added subsec. (f).

1998—Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 105–353 redesignated subsec. (f) as (e).

1995—Pub. L. 104–67, §104(1), substituted ‘‘liability of controlling persons and persons who aid and abet violations’’ for ‘‘Liabilities of controlling persons’’ in section catchline.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–67, §104(2), added subsec. (f).

1984—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–376 added subsec. (d).

1964—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88–467 extended application of provisions of subsec. (c) by substituting the prohibition against any officer or director of, or an owner of securities issued by, a company from hindering, delaying, or obstructing the preparation or filing of any report, document, or information required to be filed under this chapter for existing provisions applicable only to filings by companies with securities registered on a national securities exchange or subject to the provisions of section 78*o*(d) of this title.

1936—Subsec. (c). Act May 27, 1936, inserted ‘‘or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title’’.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 77*l* of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–376 effective Aug. 10, 1984, see section 7 of Pub. L. 98–376, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Nothing in amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a Construction note under section 78j–1 of this title.

### § 78t–1. Liability to contemporaneous traders for insider trading

#### (a) Private rights of action based on contemporaneous trading

Any person who violates any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder by purchasing or selling a security while in possession of material, nonpublic information shall be liable in an action in any court of competent jurisdiction to any person who, contemporaneously with the purchase or sale of securities that is the subject of such violation, has purchased (where such violation is based on a sale of securities) or sold (where such violation is based on a purchase of securities) securities of the same class.

#### (b) Limitations on liability

##### (1) Contemporaneous trading actions limited to profit gained or loss avoided

The total amount of damages imposed under subsection (a) of this section shall not exceed the profit gained or loss avoided in the transaction or transactions that are the subject of the violation.

##### (2) Offsetting disgorgements against liability

The total amount of damages imposed against any person under subsection (a) of this section shall be diminished by the amounts, if any, that such person may be required to disgorge, pursuant to a court order obtained at the instance of the Commission, in a proceeding brought under section 78u(d) of this title relating to the same transaction or transactions.

##### (3) Controlling person liability

No person shall be liable under this section solely by reason of employing another person who is liable under this section, but the liability of a controlling person under this section shall be subject to section 78t(a) of this title.

##### (4) Statute of limitations

No action may be brought under this section more than 5 years after the date of the last transaction that is the subject of the violation.

#### (c) Joint and several liability for communicating

Any person who violates any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder by communicating material, nonpublic information shall be jointly and severally liable under subsection (a) of this section with, and to the same extent as, any person or persons liable under subsection (a) of this section to whom the communication was directed.

#### (d) Authority not to restrict other express or implied rights of action

Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit or condition the right of any person to bring an action to enforce a requirement of this chapter or the availability of any cause of action implied from a provision of this chapter.

#### (e) Provisions not to affect public prosecutions

This section shall not be construed to bar or limit in any manner any action by the Commission or the Attorney General under any other provision of this chapter, nor shall it bar or limit in any manner any action to recover penalties, or to seek any other order regarding penalties.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §20A, as added Pub. L. 100–704, §5, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4680.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (c), (d), and (e), was in the original ‘‘this title’’. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 78*o* of this title.

### § 78u. Investigations and actions

#### (a) Authority and discretion of Commission to investigate violations

(1) The Commission may, in its discretion, make such investigations as it deems necessary

to determine whether any person has violated, is violating, or is about to violate any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such person is a member or a person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and may require or permit any person to file with it a statement in writing, under oath or otherwise as the Commission shall determine, as to all the facts and circumstances concerning the matter to be investigated. The Commission is authorized in its discretion, to publish information concerning any such violations, and to investigate any facts, conditions, practices, or matters which it may deem necessary or proper to aid in the enforcement of such provisions, in the prescribing of rules and regulations under this chapter, or in securing information to serve as a basis for recommending further legislation concerning the matters to which this chapter relates.

(2) On request from a foreign securities authority, the Commission may provide assistance in accordance with this paragraph if the requesting authority states that the requesting authority is conducting an investigation which it deems necessary to determine whether any person has violated, is violating, or is about to violate any laws or rules relating to securities matters that the requesting authority administers or enforces. The Commission may, in its discretion, conduct such investigation as the Commission deems necessary to collect information and evidence pertinent to the request for assistance. Such assistance may be provided without regard to whether the facts stated in the request would also constitute a violation of the laws of the United States. In deciding whether to provide such assistance, the Commission shall consider whether (A) the requesting authority has agreed to provide reciprocal assistance in securities matters to the Commission; and (B) compliance with the request would prejudice the public interest of the United States.

**(b) Attendance of witnesses; production of records**

For the purpose of any such investigation, or any other proceeding under this chapter, any member of the Commission or any officer designated by it is empowered to administer oaths and affirmations, subpena witnesses, compel their attendance, take evidence, and require the production of any books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, or other records which the Commission deems relevant or material to the inquiry. Such attendance of witnesses and the production of any such records may be required from any place in the United States or any State at any designated place of hearing.

**(c) Judicial enforcement of investigative power of Commission; refusal to obey subpena; criminal sanctions**

In case of contumacy by, or refusal to obey a subpena issued to, any person, the Commission may invoke the aid of any court of the United States within the jurisdiction of which such investigation or proceeding is carried on, or where such person resides or carries on business, in requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, and other records. And such court may issue an order requiring such person to appear before the Commission or member or officer designated by the Commission, there to produce records, if so ordered, or to give testimony touching the matter under investigation or in question; and any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof. All process in any such case may be served in the judicial district whereof such person is an inhabitant or wherever he may be found. Any person who shall, without just cause, fail or refuse to attend and testify or to answer any lawful inquiry or to produce books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, and other records, if in his power so to do, in obedience to the subpena of the Commission, shall be guilty of a misdemeanor and, upon conviction, shall be subject to a fine of not more than $1,000 or to imprisonment for a term of not more than one year, or both.

**(d) Injunction proceedings; authority of court to prohibit persons from serving as officers and directors; money penalties in civil actions**

(1) Whenever it shall appear to the Commission that any person is engaged or is about to engage in acts or practices constituting a violation of any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such person is a member or a person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, it may in its discretion bring an action in the proper district court of the United States, the United States District Court for the District of Columbia, or the United States courts of any territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, to enjoin such acts or practices, and upon a proper showing a permanent or temporary injunction or restraining order shall be granted without bond. The Commission may transmit such evidence as may be available concerning such acts or practices as may constitute a violation of any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder to the Attorney General, who may, in his discretion, institute the necessary criminal proceedings under this chapter.

(2) AUTHORITY OF COURT TO PROHIBIT PERSONS FROM SERVING AS OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS.—In any proceeding under paragraph (1) of this subsection, the court may prohibit, conditionally or

unconditionally, and permanently or for such period of time as it shall determine, any person who violated section 78j(b) of this title or the rules or regulations thereunder from acting as an officer or director of any issuer that has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78*o*(d) of this title if the person's conduct demonstrates unfitness to serve as an officer or director of any such issuer.

(3) MONEY PENALTIES IN CIVIL ACTIONS.—

(A) AUTHORITY OF COMMISSION.—Whenever it shall appear to the Commission that any person has violated any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or a cease-and-desist order entered by the Commission pursuant to section 78u–3 of this title, other than by committing a violation subject to a penalty pursuant to section 78u–1 of this title, the Commission may bring an action in a United States district court to seek, and the court shall have jurisdiction to impose, upon a proper showing, a civil penalty to be paid by the person who committed such violation.

(B) AMOUNT OF PENALTY.—

(i) FIRST TIER.—The amount of the penalty shall be determined by the court in light of the facts and circumstances. For each violation, the amount of the penalty shall not exceed the greater of (I) $5,000 for a natural person or $50,000 for any other person, or (II) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation.

(ii) SECOND TIER.—Notwithstanding clause (i), the amount of penalty for each such violation shall not exceed the greater of (I) $50,000 for a natural person or $250,000 for any other person, or (II) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation, if the violation described in subparagraph (A) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement.

(iii) THIRD TIER.—Notwithstanding clauses (i) and (ii), the amount of penalty for each such violation shall not exceed the greater of (I) $100,000 for a natural person or $500,000 for any other person, or (II) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation, if—

(aa) the violation described in subparagraph (A) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement; and

(bb) such violation directly or indirectly resulted in substantial losses or created a significant risk of substantial losses to other persons.

(C) PROCEDURES FOR COLLECTION.—

(i) PAYMENT OF PENALTY TO TREASURY.—A penalty imposed under this section shall be payable into the Treasury of the United States, except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title.

(ii) COLLECTION OF PENALTIES.—If a person upon whom such a penalty is imposed shall fail to pay such penalty within the time prescribed in the court's order, the Commission may refer the matter to the Attorney General who shall recover such penalty by action in the appropriate United States district court.

(iii) REMEDY NOT EXCLUSIVE.—The actions authorized by this paragraph may be brought in addition to any other action that the Commission or the Attorney General is entitled to bring.

(iv) JURISDICTION AND VENUE.—For purposes of section 78aa of this title, actions under this paragraph shall be actions to enforce a liability or a duty created by this chapter.

(D) SPECIAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO A VIOLATION OF A CEASE-AND-DESIST ORDER.—In an action to enforce a cease-and-desist order entered by the Commission pursuant to section 78u–3 of this title, each separate violation of such order shall be a separate offense, except that in the case of a violation through a continuing failure to comply with the order, each day of the failure to comply shall be deemed a separate offense.

(4) PROHIBITION OF ATTORNEYS' FEES PAID FROM COMMISSION DISGORGEMENT FUNDS.—Except as otherwise ordered by the court upon motion by the Commission, or, in the case of an administrative action, as otherwise ordered by the Commission, funds disgorged as the result of an action brought by the Commission in Federal court, or as a result of any Commission administrative action, shall not be distributed as payment for attorneys' fees or expenses incurred by private parties seeking distribution of the disgorged funds.

(5) EQUITABLE RELIEF.—In any action or proceeding brought or instituted by the Commission under any provision of the securities laws, the Commission may seek, and any Federal court may grant, any equitable relief that may be appropriate or necessary for the benefit of investors.

(6) AUTHORITY OF A COURT TO PROHIBIT PERSONS FROM PARTICIPATING IN AN OFFERING OF PENNY STOCK.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—In any proceeding under paragraph (1) against any person participating in, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct who was participating in, an offering of penny stock, the court may prohibit that person from participating in an offering of penny stock, conditionally or unconditionally, and permanently or for such period of time as the court shall determine.

(B) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this paragraph, the term ''person participating in an offering of penny stock'' includes any person engaging in activities with a broker, dealer, or issuer for purposes of issuing, trading, or inducing or attempting to induce the purchase or sale of, any penny stock. The Commission may, by rule or regulation, define such term to include other activities, and may, by rule, regulation, or order, exempt any person or class of persons, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, from inclusion in such term.

**(e) Mandamus**

Upon application of the Commission the district courts of the United States and the United States courts of any territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States

shall have jurisdiction to issue writs of mandamus, injunctions, and orders commanding (1) any person to comply with the provisions of this chapter, the rules, regulations, and orders thereunder, the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such person is a member or person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title, (2) any national securities exchange or registered securities association to enforce compliance by its members and persons associated with its members with the provisions of this chapter, the rules, regulations, and orders thereunder, and the rules of such exchange or association, or (3) any registered clearing agency to enforce compliance by its participants with the provisions of the rules of such clearing agency.

**(f) Rules of self-regulatory organizations or Board**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Commission shall not bring any action pursuant to subsection (d) or (e) of this section against any person for violation of, or to command compliance with, the rules of a self-regulatory organization or the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board unless it appears to the Commission that (1) such self-regulatory organization or the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board is unable or unwilling to take appropriate action against such person in the public interest and for the protection of investors, or (2) such action is otherwise necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(g) Consolidation of actions; consent of Commission**

Notwithstanding the provisions of section 1407(a) of title 28, or any other provision of law, no action for equitable relief instituted by the Commission pursuant to the securities laws shall be consolidated or coordinated with other actions not brought by the Commission, even though such other actions may involve common questions of fact, unless such consolidation is consented to by the Commission.

**(h) Access to records**

(1) The Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] shall apply with respect to the Commission, except as otherwise provided in this subsection.

(2) Notwithstanding section 1105 or 1107 of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3405 or 3407], the Commission may have access to and obtain copies of, or the information contained in financial records of a customer from a financial institution without prior notice to the customer upon an ex parte showing to an appropriate United States district court that the Commission seeks such financial records pursuant to a subpena issued in conformity with the requirements of section 19(b)[1] of the Securities Act of 1933, section 21(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78u(b)], section 18(c) of the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935,[1] section 42(b) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–41(b)], or section 209(b) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b–9(b)], and that the Commission has reason to believe that—

(A) delay in obtaining access to such financial records, or the required notice, will result in—

(i) flight from prosecution;

(ii) destruction of or tampering with evidence;

(iii) transfer of assets or records outside the territorial limits of the United States;

(iv) improper conversion of investor assets; or

(v) impeding the ability of the Commission to identify or trace the source or disposition of funds involved in any securities transaction;

(B) such financial records are necessary to identify or trace the record or beneficial ownership interest in any security;

(C) the acts, practices or course of conduct under investigation involve—

(i) the dissemination of materially false or misleading information concerning any security, issuer, or market, or the failure to make disclosures required under the securities laws, which remain uncorrected; or

(ii) a financial loss to investors or other persons protected under the securities laws which remains substantially uncompensated; or

(D) the acts, practices or course of conduct under investigation—

(i) involve significant financial speculation in securities; or

(ii) endanger the stability of any financial or investment intermediary.

(3) Any application under paragraph (2) for a delay in notice shall be made with reasonable specificity.

(4)(A) Upon a showing described in paragraph (2), the presiding judge or magistrate judge shall enter an ex parte order granting the requested delay for a period not to exceed ninety days and an order prohibiting the financial institution involved from disclosing that records have been obtained or that a request for records has been made.

(B) Extensions of the period of delay of notice provided in subparagraph (A) of up to ninety days each may be granted by the court upon application, but only in accordance with this subsection or section 1109(a), (b)(1), or (b)(2) of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3409(a), (b)(1), or (b)(2)].

(C) Upon expiration of the period of delay of notification ordered under subparagraph (A) or (B), the customer shall be served with or mailed a copy of the subpena insofar as it applies to the customer together with the following notice which shall describe with reasonable specificity the nature of the investigation for which the Commission sought the financial records:

[1] See References in Text note below.

''Records or information concerning your transactions which are held by the financial institution named in the attached subpena were supplied to the Securities and Exchange Commission on (date). Notification was withheld pursuant to a determination by the (title of court so ordering) under section 21(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that (state reason). The purpose of the investigation or official proceeding was (state purpose).''

(5) Upon application by the Commission, all proceedings pursuant to paragraphs (2) and (4) shall be held in camera and the records thereof sealed until expiration of the period of delay or such other date as the presiding judge or magistrate judge may permit.

(6) The Commission shall compile an annual tabulation of the occasions on which the Commission used each separate subparagraph or clause of paragraph (2) of this subsection or the provisions of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] to obtain access to financial records of a customer and include it in its annual report to the Congress. Section 1121(b)[1] of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 shall not apply with respect to the Commission.

(7)(A) Following the expiration of the period of delay of notification ordered by the court pursuant to paragraph (4) of this subsection, the customer may, upon motion, reopen the proceeding in the district court which issued the order. If the presiding judge or magistrate judge finds that the movant is the customer to whom the records obtained by the Commission pertain, and that the Commission has obtained financial records or information contained therein in violation of this subsection, other than paragraph (1), it may order that the customer be granted civil penalties against the Commission in an amount equal to the sum of—

(i) $100 without regard to the volume of records involved;

(ii) any out-of-pocket damages sustained by the customer as a direct result of the disclosure; and

(iii) if the violation is found to have been willful, intentional, and without good faith, such punitive damages as the court may allow, together with the costs of the action and reasonable attorney's fees as determined by the court.

(B) Upon a finding that the Commission has obtained financial records or information contained therein in violation of this subsection, other than paragraph (1), the court, in its discretion, may also or in the alternative issue injunctive relief to require the Commission to comply with this subsection with respect to any subpena which the Commission issues in the future for financial records of such customer for purposes of the same investigation.

(C) Whenever the court determines that the Commission has failed to comply with this subsection, other than paragraph (1), and the court finds that the circumstances raise questions of whether an officer or employee of the Commission acted in a willful and intentional manner and without good faith with respect to the violation, the Office of Personnel Management shall promptly initiate a proceeding to determine whether disciplinary action is warranted against the agent or employee who was primarily responsible for the violation. After investigating and considering the evidence submitted, the Office of Personnel Management shall submit its findings and recommendations to the Commission and shall send copies of the findings and recommendations to the officer or employee or his representative. The Commission shall take the corrective action that the Office of Personnel Management recommends.

(8) The relief described in paragraphs (7) and (10) shall be the only remedies or sanctions available to a customer for a violation of this subsection, other than paragraph (1), and nothing herein or in the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] shall be deemed to prohibit the use in any investigation or proceeding of financial records, or the information contained therein, obtained by a subpena issued by the Commission. In the case of an unsuccessful action under paragraph (7), the court shall award the costs of the action and attorney's fees to the Commission if the presiding judge or magistrate judge finds that the customer's claims were made in bad faith.

(9)(A) The Commission may transfer financial records or the information contained therein to any government authority if the Commission proceeds as a transferring agency in accordance with section 1112 of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3412], except that the customer notice required under section 1112(b) or (c) of such Act [12 U.S.C. 3412(b) or (c)] may be delayed upon a showing by the Commission, in accordance with the procedure set forth in paragraphs (4) and (5), that one or more of subparagraphs (A) through (D) of paragraph (2) apply.

(B) The Commission may, without notice to the customer pursuant to section 1112 or the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3412], transfer financial records or the information contained therein to a State securities agency or to the Department of Justice. Financial records or information transferred by the Commission to the Department of Justice or to a State securities agency pursuant to the provisions of this subparagraph may be disclosed or used only in an administrative, civil, or criminal action or investigation by the Department of Justice or the State securities agency which arises out of or relates to the acts, practices, or courses of conduct investigated by the Commission, except that if the Department of Justice or the State securities agency determines that the information should be disclosed or used for any other purpose, it may do so if it notifies the customer, except as otherwise provided in the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.], within 30 days of its determination, or complies with the requirements of section 1109 of such Act [12 U.S.C. 3409] regarding delay of notice.

(10) Any government authority violating paragraph (9) shall be subject to the procedures and penalties applicable to the Commission under paragraph (7)(A) with respect to a violation by the Commission in obtaining financial records.

(11) Notwithstanding the provisions of this subsection, the Commission may obtain finan-

cial records from a financial institution or transfer such records in accordance with provisions of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.].

(12) Nothing in this subsection shall enlarge or restrict any rights of a financial institution to challenge requests for records made by the Commission under existing law. Nothing in this subsection shall entitle a customer to assert any rights of a financial institution.

(13) Unless the context otherwise requires, all terms defined in the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] which are common to this subsection shall have the same meaning as in such Act.

**(i) Information to CFTC**

The Commission shall provide the Commodity Futures Trading Commission with notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the Commission against any broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78*o*(b)(11) of this title, any exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or any national securities association registered pursuant to section 78*o*–3(k) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 21, 48 Stat. 899; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 7, 49 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 91–452, title II, § 212, Oct. 15, 1970, 84 Stat. 929; Pub. L. 94–29, § 17, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 154; Pub. L. 96–433, §§ 3, 4, Oct. 10, 1980, 94 Stat. 1855, 1858; Pub. L. 98–376, § 2, Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1264; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, § 323, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259; Pub. L. 100–704, §§ 3(a)(1), 6(b), Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4677, 4681; Pub. L. 101–429, title II, § 201, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 935; Pub. L. 101–650, title III, § 321, Dec. 1, 1990, 104 Stat. 5117; Pub. L. 104–67, title I, § 103(b)(2), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 756; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 205(a)(5)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–426; Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(2), title III, §§ 305(a)(1), (b), 308(d)(1), title VI, § 603(a), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 749, 778, 779, 785, 794.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (b), (d), (e), and (f), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (h)(1), (6), (8), (9)(B), (11), and (13), is title XI of Pub. L. 95–630, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3697, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§ 3401 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. Section 1121(b) of the Act, which was classified to section 3421(b) of Title 12, was repealed by Pub. L. 104–66, title III, § 3001(d), Dec. 21, 1995, 109 Stat. 734. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3401 of Title 12 and Tables.

Section 19(b) of the Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (h)(2), was redesignated section 19(c) by Pub. L. 107–204, title I, § 108(a)(1), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 768, and is classified to section 77s(c) of this title.

Section 18(c) of the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935, referred to in subsec. (h)(2), was classified to section 79r(c) of this title, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 109–58, title XII, § 1263, Aug. 8, 2005, 119 Stat. 974.

Section 21(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in the paragraph within quotation marks following subsec. (h)(4)(C), is classified to subsection (h) of this section.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(2)(A), inserted ''the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm,'' after ''is a participant,''.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(2)(B), inserted ''the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm,'' after ''is a participant,''.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 107–204, § 305(a)(1), substituted ''unfitness'' for ''substantial unfitness''.

Subsec. (d)(3)(C)(i). Pub. L. 107–204, § 308(d)(1), inserted '', except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title'' before period at end.

Subsec. (d)(5). Pub. L. 107–204, § 305(b), added par. (5).

Subsec. (d)(6). Pub. L. 107–204, § 603(a), added par. (6).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(2)(C), inserted ''the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm,'' after ''is a participant,''.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(2)(D), inserted ''or the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board'' after ''self-regulatory organization'' in two places.

2000—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 106–554 added subsec. (i).

1995—Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 104–67 added par. (4).

1990—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101–429 designated existing provision as par. (1) and added pars. (2) and (3).

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–704, § 6(b), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–704, § 3(a)(1), redesignated par. (1) as entire subsec. (d) and struck out par. (2) which provided civil penalties for purchasing or selling securities while in possession of material nonpublic information.

1987—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–181, § 323(1), substituted ''Whenever'' for ''Wherever''.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–181, § 323(2), struck out '', the United States District Court for the District of Columbia,'' after ''the district courts of the United States''.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100–181, § 323(3), struck out ''The term 'securities laws' as used herein and in subsection (h) of this section includes the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.), the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935 (15 U.S.C. 79 et seq.), the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S.C. 77aaa et seq.), the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.), the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.), and the Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970 (15 U.S.C. 78aaa et seq.).'' See 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(47).

1984—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–376 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

1980—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96–433, § 4, inserted ''and in subsection (h) of this section.''

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 96–433, § 3, added subsec. (h).

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29, § 17(1), expanded the Commission's power to conduct investigations to include violations of the rules of a national securities exchange, registered securities association, registered clearing agency, or the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94–29, § 17(2), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d) and amended it generally, substituting ''has engaged, is engaged, or is about to engage'' for ''is engaged or about to engage'', ''any provision'' for ''the provisions'', ''the rules or regulations'' for ''or of any rule or regulation'', and ''such a showing'' for ''a proper showing'', and inserting ''the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such persons is a member or a person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board,'' in first sentence and inserting ''as may constitute a violation of any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder'' in second sentence. Former subsec. (d) was repealed by Pub. L. 91–452. See 1970 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94–29, § 17(2), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e) and amended it generally, substituting ''man-

damus, injunctions, and orders commanding (1) any person to comply with the provisions of this chapter, the rules, regulations, and orders thereunder, the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such person is a member or person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title'' for ''mandamus commanding any person to comply with the provisions of this chapter or any order of the Commission made in pursuance thereof or with any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title'' and adding cls. (2) and (3). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (d).

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 94–29, § 17(3), added subsecs. (f) and (g). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (e).

1970—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91–452 struck out subsec. (d) which related to immunity from prosecution of any individual compelled to testify or produce evidence, documentary or otherwise, after claiming his privilege against self-incrimination.

1936—Subsec. (f). Act May 27, 1936, inserted ''or with any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title''.

CHANGE OF NAME

Words ''magistrate judge'' substituted for ''magistrate'' wherever appearing in subsec. (h)(4)(A), (5), (7)(A), (8) pursuant to section 321 of Pub. L. 101–650, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 77*l* of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 3(a)(1) of Pub. L. 100–704 not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 set out as a note under section 78*o* of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–376 effective Aug. 10, 1984, see section 7 of Pub. L. 98–376, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Section 5 of Pub. L. 96–433 provided that:

''(a) The amendments made by section 1 of this Act [amending section 78fff–3 of this title] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 10, 1980].

''(b) The amendments made by sections 2, 3, and 4 of this Act [amending this section and section 3422 of Title 12, Banks and Banking] shall take effect on November 10, 1980. Nothing in this Act [amending this section and section 78fff–3 of this title and section 3422 of Title 12] or in the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] shall apply to any Securities and Exchange Commission subpena issued prior to such date.''

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–452 effective on sixtieth day following Oct. 15, 1970, see section 260 of Pub. L. 91–452, set out as an Effective Date; Savings Provision note under section 6001 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

SAVINGS PROVISION

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–452 not to affect any immunity to which any individual is entitled under this section by reason of any testimony given before the sixtieth day following Oct. 15, 1970, see section 260 of Pub. L. 91–452, set out as an Effective Date; Savings Provision note under section 6001 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

CONSTRUCTION OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Nothing in amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a Construction note under section 78j–1 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

PROMOTION OF RECIPROCAL SUBPOENA ENFORCEMENT

Pub. L. 105–353, title I, § 102, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3233, provided that:

''(a) COMMISSION ACTION.—The Securities and Exchange Commission, in consultation with State securities commissions (or any agencies or offices performing like functions), shall seek to encourage the adoption of State laws providing for reciprocal enforcement by State securities commissions of subpoenas issued by another State securities commission seeking to compel persons to attend, testify in, or produce documents or records in connection with an action or investigation by a State securities commission of an alleged violation of State securities laws.

''(b) REPORT.—Not later than 24 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 3, 1998], the Securities and Exchange Commission (hereafter in this section referred to as the 'Commission') shall submit a report to the Congress—

''(1) identifying the States that have adopted laws described in subsection (a);

''(2) describing the actions undertaken by the Commission and State securities commissions to promote the adoption of such laws; and

''(3) identifying any further actions that the Commission recommends for such purposes.''

## § 78u–1. Civil penalties for insider trading

### (a) Authority to impose civil penalties

#### (1) Judicial actions by Commission authorized

Whenever it shall appear to the Commission that any person has violated any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder by purchasing or selling a security or security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) while in possession of material, nonpublic information in, or has violated any such provision by communicating such information in connection with, a transaction on or through the facilities of a national securities exchange or from or through a broker or dealer, and which is not part of a public offering by an issuer of securities other than standardized op-

tions or security futures products, the Commission—

(A) may bring an action in a United States district court to seek, and the court shall have jurisdiction to impose, a civil penalty to be paid by the person who committed such violation; and

(B) may, subject to subsection (b)(1) of this section, bring an action in a United States district court to seek, and the court shall have jurisdiction to impose, a civil penalty to be paid by a person who, at the time of the violation, directly or indirectly controlled the person who committed such violation.

**(2) Amount of penalty for person who committed violation**

The amount of the penalty which may be imposed on the person who committed such violation shall be determined by the court in light of the facts and circumstances, but shall not exceed three times the profit gained or loss avoided as a result of such unlawful purchase, sale, or communication.

**(3) Amount of penalty for controlling person**

The amount of the penalty which may be imposed on any person who, at the time of the violation, directly or indirectly controlled the person who committed such violation, shall be determined by the court in light of the facts and circumstances, but shall not exceed the greater of $1,000,000, or three times the amount of the profit gained or loss avoided as a result of such controlled person's violation. If such controlled person's violation was a violation by communication, the profit gained or loss avoided as a result of the violation shall, for purposes of this paragraph only, be deemed to be limited to the profit gained or loss avoided by the person or persons to whom the controlled person directed such communication.

**(b) Limitations on liability**

**(1) Liability of controlling persons**

No controlling person shall be subject to a penalty under subsection (a)(1)(B) of this section unless the Commission establishes that—

(A) such controlling person knew or recklessly disregarded the fact that such controlled person was likely to engage in the act or acts constituting the violation and failed to take appropriate steps to prevent such act or acts before they occurred; or

(B) such controlling person knowingly or recklessly failed to establish, maintain, or enforce any policy or procedure required under section 78*o*(f) of this title or section 80b–4a of this title and such failure substantially contributed to or permitted the occurrence of the act or acts constituting the violation.

**(2) Additional restrictions on liability**

No person shall be subject to a penalty under subsection (a) of this section solely by reason of employing another person who is subject to a penalty under such subsection, unless such employing person is liable as a controlling person under paragraph (1) of this subsection. Section 78t(a) of this title shall not apply to actions under subsection (a) of this section.

**(c) Authority of Commission**

The Commission, by such rules, regulations, and orders as it considers necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may exempt, in whole or in part, either unconditionally or upon specific terms and conditions, any person or transaction or class of persons or transactions from this section.

**(d) Procedures for collection**

**(1) Payment of penalty to Treasury**

A penalty imposed under this section shall (subject to subsection (e) of this section) be payable into the Treasury of the United States, except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title.

**(2) Collection of penalties**

If a person upon whom such a penalty is imposed shall fail to pay such penalty within the time prescribed in the court's order, the Commission may refer the matter to the Attorney General who shall recover such penalty by action in the appropriate United States district court.

**(3) Remedy not exclusive**

The actions authorized by this section may be brought in addition to any other actions that the Commission or the Attorney General are entitled to bring.

**(4) Jurisdiction and venue**

For purposes of section 78aa of this title, actions under this section shall be actions to enforce a liability or a duty created by this chapter.

**(5) Statute of limitations**

No action may be brought under this section more than 5 years after the date of the purchase or sale. This section shall not be construed to bar or limit in any manner any action by the Commission or the Attorney General under any other provision of this chapter, nor shall it bar or limit in any manner any action to recover penalties, or to seek any other order regarding penalties, imposed in an action commenced within 5 years of such transaction.

**(e) Authority to award bounties to informants**

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (d)(1) of this section, there shall be paid from amounts imposed as a penalty under this section and recovered by the Commission or the Attorney General, such sums, not to exceed 10 percent of such amounts, as the Commission deems appropriate, to the person or persons who provide information leading to the imposition of such penalty. Any determinations under this subsection, including whether, to whom, or in what amount to make payments, shall be in the sole discretion of the Commission, except that no such payment shall be made to any member, officer, or employee of any appropriate regulatory agency, the Department of Justice, or a self-regulatory organization. Any such determination shall be final and not subject to judicial review.

**(f) Definition**

For purposes of this section, ''profit gained'' or ''loss avoided'' is the difference between the

purchase or sale price of the security and the value of that security as measured by the trading price of the security a reasonable period after public dissemination of the nonpublic information.

**(g) Limitation on Commission authority**

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c–1(b) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 21A, as added Pub. L. 100–704, § 3(a)(2), Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4677; amended Pub. L. 101–429, title II, § 202(b), Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 938; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 205(a)(4), title III, § 303(k), (*l*)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–426, 2763A–456, 2763A–457; Pub. L. 107–204, title III, § 308(d)(2), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 785.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d)(4), (5), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (g), is section 206B of Pub. L. 106–102, which is set out in a note under section 78c of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 107–204 inserted '', except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title'' before period at end.

2000—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title III, § 303(k)], inserted ''or security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)'' after ''purchasing or selling a security'' in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 205(a)(4)], substituted ''standardized options or security futures products, the Commission—'' for ''standardized options, the Commission—'' in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title III, § 303(*l*)], added subsec. (g).

1990—Pub. L. 101–429 inserted ''for insider trading'' in section catchline.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 78*o* of this title.

CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS

Section 2 of Pub. L. 100–704 provided that: ''The Congress finds that—

''(1) the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.] governing trading while in possession of material, nonpublic information are, as required by such Act, necessary and appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors;

''(2) the Commission has, within the limits of accepted administrative and judicial construction of such rules and regulations, enforced such rules and regulations vigorously, effectively, and fairly; and

''(3) nonetheless, additional methods are appropriate to deter and prosecute violations of such rules and regulations.''

COMMISSION RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ADDITIONAL CIVIL PENALTY AUTHORITY REQUIRED

Section 3(c) of Pub. L. 100–704 provided that: ''The Securities and Exchange Commission shall, within 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 19, 1988], submit to each House of the Congress any recommendations the Commission considers appropriate with respect to the extension of the Commission's authority to seek civil penalties or impose administrative fines for violations other than those described in section 21A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78u–1] (as added by this section).''

## § 78u–2. Civil remedies in administrative proceedings

**(a) Commission authority to assess money penalties**

In any proceeding instituted pursuant to sections 78*o*(b)(4), 78*o*(b)(6), 78*o*–6, 78*o*–4, 78*o*–5, or 78q–1 of this title against any person, the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may impose a civil penalty if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such person—

(1) has willfully violated any provision of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.], or this chapter, or the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board;

(2) has willfully aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured such a violation by any other person;

(3) has willfully made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with the Commission or with any other appropriate regulatory agency under this chapter, or in any proceeding before the Commission with respect to registration, any statement which was, at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such application or report any material fact which is required to be stated therein; or

(4) has failed reasonably to supervise, within the meaning of section 78*o*(b)(4)(E) of this title, with a view to preventing violations of the provisions of such statutes, rules and regulations, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision;

and that such penalty is in the public interest.

**(b) Maximum amount of penalty**

**(1) First tier**

The maximum amount of penalty for each act or omission described in subsection (a) of this section shall be $5,000 for a natural person or $50,000 for any other person.

**(2) Second tier**

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), the maximum amount of penalty for each such act or omission shall be $50,000 for a natural person or $250,000 for any other person if the act or omission described in subsection (a) of this section involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement.

**(3) Third tier**

Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), the maximum amount of penalty for each such act or omission shall be $100,000 for a natural person or $500,000 for any other person if—

(A) the act or omission described in subsection (a) of this section involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement; and

(B) such act or omission directly or indirectly resulted in substantial losses or created a significant risk of substantial losses to other persons or resulted in substantial pecuniary gain to the person who committed the act or omission.

**(c) Determination of public interest**

In considering under this section whether a penalty is in the public interest, the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may consider—

(1) whether the act or omission for which such penalty is assessed involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement;

(2) the harm to other persons resulting either directly or indirectly from such act or omission;

(3) the extent to which any person was unjustly enriched, taking into account any restitution made to persons injured by such behavior;

(4) whether such person previously has been found by the Commission, another appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to have violated the Federal securities laws, State securities laws, or the rules of a self-regulatory organization, has been enjoined by a court of competent jurisdiction from violations of such laws or rules, or has been convicted by a court of competent jurisdiction of violations of such laws or of any felony or misdemeanor described in section 78*o*(b)(4)(B) of this title;

(5) the need to deter such person and other persons from committing such acts or omissions; and

(6) such other matters as justice may require.

**(d) Evidence concerning ability to pay**

In any proceeding in which the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may impose a penalty under this section, a respondent may present evidence of the respondent's ability to pay such penalty. The Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may, in its discretion, consider such evidence in determining whether such penalty is in the public interest. Such evidence may relate to the extent of such person's ability to continue in business and the collectability of a penalty, taking into account any other claims of the United States or third parties upon such person's assets and the amount of such person's assets.

**(e) Authority to enter order requiring accounting and disgorgement**

In any proceeding in which the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may impose a penalty under this section, the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may enter an order requiring accounting and disgorgement, including reasonable interest. The Commission is authorized to adopt rules, regulations, and orders concerning payments to investors, rates of interest, periods of accrual, and such other matters as it deems appropriate to implement this subsection.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 21B, as added Pub. L. 101–429, title II, § 202(a), Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 937; amended Pub. L. 107–204, title V, § 501(b), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 793.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

The Investment Advisers Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), is title II of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 847, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§ 80b–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80b–20 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), (3), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–204 inserted ''78*o*–6,'' before ''78*o*–4,'' in introductory provisions.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in an Effective Date of 1990 Amendment note under section 77*g* of this title.

## § 78u–3. Cease-and-desist proceedings

**(a) Authority of Commission**

If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that any person is violating, has violated, or is about to violate any provision of this chapter, or any rule or regulation thereunder, the Commission may publish its findings and enter an order requiring such person, and any other person that is, was, or would be a cause of the violation, due to an act or omission the person knew or should have known would contribute to such violation, to cease and desist from committing or causing such violation and any future violation of the same provision, rule, or regulation. Such order may, in addition to requiring a person to cease and desist from committing or causing a violation, require such person to comply, or to take steps to effect compliance, with such provision, rule, or regulation, upon such terms and conditions and within such time as the Commission may specify in such order. Any such order may, as the Commission deems appropriate, require future compliance or steps to effect future compliance, either permanently or for such period of time as the Commission may specify, with such provision, rule, or regulation with respect to any security, any issuer, or any other person.

**(b) Hearing**

The notice instituting proceedings pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall fix a hearing date not earlier than 30 days nor later than 60 days after service of the notice unless an earlier or a later date is set by the Commission with the consent of any respondent so served.

**(c) Temporary order**

**(1) In general**

Whenever the Commission determines that the alleged violation or threatened violation specified in the notice instituting proceedings pursuant to subsection (a) of this section, or the continuation thereof, is likely to result in significant dissipation or conversion of assets, significant harm to investors, or substantial harm to the public interest, including, but not limited to, losses to the Securities Investor Protection Corporation, prior to the completion of the proceedings, the Commission may enter a temporary order requiring the respondent to cease and desist from the violation or threatened violation and to take such action to prevent the violation or threatened violation and to prevent dissipation or conversion of assets, significant harm to investors, or substantial harm to the public interest as the Commission deems appropriate pending completion of such proceedings. Such an order shall be entered only after notice and opportunity for a hearing, unless the Commission determines that notice and hearing prior to entry would be impracticable or contrary to the public interest. A temporary order shall become effective upon service upon the respondent and, unless set aside, limited, or suspended by the Commission or a court of competent jurisdiction, shall remain effective and enforceable pending the completion of the proceedings.

**(2) Applicability**

paragraph (1) subsection[1] shall apply only to a respondent that acts, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct acted, as a broker, dealer, investment adviser, investment company, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, registered public accounting firm (as defined in section 7201 of this title), or transfer agent, or is, or was at the time of the alleged misconduct, an associated person of, or a person seeking to become associated with, any of the foregoing.

**(3) Temporary freeze**

**(A) In general**

**(i) Issuance of temporary order**

Whenever, during the course of a lawful investigation involving possible violations of the Federal securities laws by an issuer of publicly traded securities or any of its directors, officers, partners, controlling persons, agents, or employees, it shall appear to the Commission that it is likely that the issuer will make extraordinary payments (whether compensation or otherwise) to any of the foregoing persons, the Commission may petition a Federal district court for a temporary order requiring the issuer to escrow, subject to court supervision, those payments in an interest-bearing account for 45 days.

**(ii) Standard**

A temporary order shall be entered under clause (i), only after notice and opportunity for a hearing, unless the court determines that notice and hearing prior to entry of the order would be impracticable or contrary to the public interest.

**(iii) Effective period**

A temporary order issued under clause (i) shall—

(I) become effective immediately;

(II) be served upon the parties subject to it; and

(III) unless set aside, limited or suspended by a court of competent jurisdiction, shall remain effective and enforceable for 45 days.

**(iv) Extensions authorized**

The effective period of an order under this subparagraph may be extended by the court upon good cause shown for not longer than 45 additional days, provided that the combined period of the order shall not exceed 90 days.

**(B) Process on determination of violations**

**(i) Violations charged**

If the issuer or other person described in subparagraph (A) is charged with any violation of the Federal securities laws before the expiration of the effective period of a temporary order under subparagraph (A) (including any applicable extension period), the order shall remain in effect, subject to court approval, until the conclusion of any legal proceedings related thereto, and the affected issuer or other person, shall have the right to petition the court for review of the order.

**(ii) Violations not charged**

If the issuer or other person described in subparagraph (A) is not charged with any violation of the Federal securities laws before the expiration of the effective period of a temporary order under subparagraph (A) (including any applicable extension period), the escrow shall terminate at the expiration of the 45-day effective period (or the expiration of any extension period, as applicable), and the disputed payments (with accrued interest) shall be returned to the issuer or other affected person.

**(d) Review of temporary orders**

**(1) Commission review**

At any time after the respondent has been served with a temporary cease-and-desist order pursuant to subsection (c) of this section, the respondent may apply to the Commission to have the order set aside, limited, or suspended. If the respondent has been served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing, the

[1] So in original.

respondent may, within 10 days after the date on which the order was served, request a hearing on such application and the Commission shall hold a hearing and render a decision on such application at the earliest possible time.

**(2) Judicial review**

Within—

(A) 10 days after the date the respondent was served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered with a prior Commission hearing, or

(B) 10 days after the Commission renders a decision on an application and hearing under paragraph (1), with respect to any temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing,

the respondent may apply to the United States district court for the district in which the respondent resides or has its principal place of business, or for the District of Columbia, for an order setting aside, limiting, or suspending the effectiveness or enforcement of the order, and the court shall have jurisdiction to enter such an order. A respondent served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing may not apply to the court except after hearing and decision by the Commission on the respondent's application under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

**(3) No automatic stay of temporary order**

The commencement of proceedings under paragraph (2) of this subsection shall not, unless specifically ordered by the court, operate as a stay of the Commission's order.

**(4) Exclusive review**

Section 78y of this title shall not apply to a temporary order entered pursuant to this section.

**(e) Authority to enter order requiring accounting and disgorgement**

In any cease-and-desist proceeding under subsection (a) of this section, the Commission may enter an order requiring accounting and disgorgement, including reasonable interest. The Commission is authorized to adopt rules, regulations, and orders concerning payments to investors, rates of interest, periods of accrual, and such other matters as it deems appropriate to implement this subsection.

**(f) Authority of the Commission to prohibit persons from serving as officers or directors**

In any cease-and-desist proceeding under subsection (a) of this section, the Commission may issue an order to prohibit, conditionally or unconditionally, and permanently or for such period of time as it shall determine, any person who has violated section 78j(b) of this title or the rules or regulations thereunder, from acting as an officer or director of any issuer that has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title, or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78*o*(d) of this title, if the conduct of that person demonstrates unfitness to serve as an officer or director of any such issuer.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 21C, as added Pub. L. 101–429, title II, § 203, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 939; amended Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(3), title XI, §§ 1103, 1105(a), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 749, 807, 809.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Section 7201 of this title, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), was in the original ''section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002'', Pub. L. 107–204, which enacted section 7201 of this title and amended section 78c of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 107–204, § 1103(b), substituted ''paragraph (1)'' for ''This''.

Pub. L. 107–204, § 3(b)(3), inserted ''registered public accounting firm (as defined in section 7201 of this title),'' after ''government securities dealer,''.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 107–204, § 1103(a), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–204, § 1105(a), added subsec. (f).

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in an Effective Date of 1990 Amendment note under section 77g of this title.

## § 78u–4. Private securities litigation

**(a) Private class actions**

**(1) In general**

The provisions of this subsection shall apply in each private action arising under this chapter that is brought as a plaintiff class action pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(2) Certification filed with complaint**

**(A) In general**

Each plaintiff seeking to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class shall provide a sworn certification, which shall be personally signed by such plaintiff and filed with the complaint, that—

(i) states that the plaintiff has reviewed the complaint and authorized its filing;

(ii) states that the plaintiff did not purchase the security that is the subject of the complaint at the direction of plaintiff's counsel or in order to participate in any private action arising under this chapter;

(iii) states that the plaintiff is willing to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class, including providing testimony at deposition and trial, if necessary;

(iv) sets forth all of the transactions of the plaintiff in the security that is the subject of the complaint during the class period specified in the complaint;

(v) identifies any other action under this chapter, filed during the 3-year period preceding the date on which the certification is signed by the plaintiff, in which the plaintiff has sought to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class; and

(vi) states that the plaintiff will not accept any payment for serving as a representative party on behalf of a class beyond the plaintiff's pro rata share of any recovery, except as ordered or approved by the court in accordance with paragraph (4).

**(B) Nonwaiver of attorney-client privilege**

The certification filed pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall not be construed to be a waiver of the attorney-client privilege.

**(3) Appointment of lead plaintiff**

**(A) Early notice to class members**

**(i) In general**

Not later than 20 days after the date on which the complaint is filed, the plaintiff or plaintiffs shall cause to be published, in a widely circulated national business-oriented publication or wire service, a notice advising members of the purported plaintiff class—

(I) of the pendency of the action, the claims asserted therein, and the purported class period; and

(II) that, not later than 60 days after the date on which the notice is published, any member of the purported class may move the court to serve as lead plaintiff of the purported class.

**(ii) Multiple actions**

If more than one action on behalf of a class asserting substantially the same claim or claims arising under this chapter is filed, only the plaintiff or plaintiffs in the first filed action shall be required to cause notice to be published in accordance with clause (i).

**(iii) Additional notices may be required under Federal rules**

Notice required under clause (i) shall be in addition to any notice required pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(B) Appointment of lead plaintiff**

**(i) In general**

Not later than 90 days after the date on which a notice is published under subparagraph (A)(i), the court shall consider any motion made by a purported class member in response to the notice, including any motion by a class member who is not individually named as a plaintiff in the complaint or complaints, and shall appoint as lead plaintiff the member or members of the purported plaintiff class that the court determines to be most capable of adequately representing the interests of class members (hereafter in this paragraph referred to as the ''most adequate plaintiff'') in accordance with this subparagraph.

**(ii) Consolidated actions**

If more than one action on behalf of a class asserting substantially the same claim or claims arising under this chapter has been filed, and any party has sought to consolidate those actions for pretrial purposes or for trial, the court shall not make the determination required by clause (i) until after the decision on the motion to consolidate is rendered. As soon as practicable after such decision is rendered, the court shall appoint the most adequate plaintiff as lead plaintiff for the consolidated actions in accordance with this paragraph.

**(iii) Rebuttable presumption**

**(I) In general**

Subject to subclause (II), for purposes of clause (i), the court shall adopt a presumption that the most adequate plaintiff in any private action arising under this chapter is the person or group of persons that—

(aa) has either filed the complaint or made a motion in response to a notice under subparagraph (A)(i);

(bb) in the determination of the court, has the largest financial interest in the relief sought by the class; and

(cc) otherwise satisfies the requirements of Rule 23 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(II) Rebuttal evidence**

The presumption described in subclause (I) may be rebutted only upon proof by a member of the purported plaintiff class that the presumptively most adequate plaintiff—

(aa) will not fairly and adequately protect the interests of the class; or

(bb) is subject to unique defenses that render such plaintiff incapable of adequately representing the class.

**(iv) Discovery**

For purposes of this subparagraph, discovery relating to whether a member or members of the purported plaintiff class is the most adequate plaintiff may be conducted by a plaintiff only if the plaintiff first demonstrates a reasonable basis for a finding that the presumptively most adequate plaintiff is incapable of adequately representing the class.

**(v) Selection of lead counsel**

The most adequate plaintiff shall, subject to the approval of the court, select and retain counsel to represent the class.

**(vi) Restrictions on professional plaintiffs**

Except as the court may otherwise permit, consistent with the purposes of this section, a person may be a lead plaintiff, or an officer, director, or fiduciary of a lead plaintiff, in no more than 5 securities class actions brought as plaintiff class actions pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure during any 3-year period.

**(4) Recovery by plaintiffs**

The share of any final judgment or of any settlement that is awarded to a representative party serving on behalf of a class shall be equal, on a per share basis, to the portion of the final judgment or settlement awarded to all other members of the class. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to limit the award of reasonable costs and expenses (including lost wages) directly relating to the representation of the class to any representative party serving on behalf of a class.

**(5) Restrictions on settlements under seal**

The terms and provisions of any settlement agreement of a class action shall not be filed under seal, except that on motion of any party to the settlement, the court may order filing under seal for those portions of a settlement agreement as to which good cause is shown for such filing under seal. For purposes of this paragraph, good cause shall exist only if publication of a term or provision of a settlement agreement would cause direct and substantial harm to any party.

**(6) Restrictions on payment of attorneys' fees and expenses**

Total attorneys' fees and expenses awarded by the court to counsel for the plaintiff class shall not exceed a reasonable percentage of the amount of any damages and prejudgment interest actually paid to the class.

**(7) Disclosure of settlement terms to class members**

Any proposed or final settlement agreement that is published or otherwise disseminated to the class shall include each of the following statements, along with a cover page summarizing the information contained in such statements:

**(A) Statement of plaintiff recovery**

The amount of the settlement proposed to be distributed to the parties to the action, determined in the aggregate and on an average per share basis.

**(B) Statement of potential outcome of case**

**(i) Agreement on amount of damages**

If the settling parties agree on the average amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the plaintiff prevailed on each claim alleged under this chapter, a statement concerning the average amount of such potential damages per share.

**(ii) Disagreement on amount of damages**

If the parties do not agree on the average amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the plaintiff prevailed on each claim alleged under this chapter, a statement from each settling party concerning the issue or issues on which the parties disagree.

**(iii) Inadmissibility for certain purposes**

A statement made in accordance with clause (i) or (ii) concerning the amount of damages shall not be admissible in any Federal or State judicial action or administrative proceeding, other than an action or proceeding arising out of such statement.

**(C) Statement of attorneys' fees or costs sought**

If any of the settling parties or their counsel intend to apply to the court for an award of attorneys' fees or costs from any fund established as part of the settlement, a statement indicating which parties or counsel intend to make such an application, the amount of fees and costs that will be sought (including the amount of such fees and costs determined on an average per share basis), and a brief explanation supporting the fees and costs sought. Such information shall be clearly summarized on the cover page of any notice to a party of any proposed or final settlement agreement.

**(D) Identification of lawyers' representatives**

The name, telephone number, and address of one or more representatives of counsel for the plaintiff class who will be reasonably available to answer questions from class members concerning any matter contained in any notice of settlement published or otherwise disseminated to the class.

**(E) Reasons for settlement**

A brief statement explaining the reasons why the parties are proposing the settlement.

**(F) Other information**

Such other information as may be required by the court.

**(8) Security for payment of costs in class actions**

In any private action arising under this chapter that is certified as a class action pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the court may require an undertaking from the attorneys for the plaintiff class, the plaintiff class, or both, or from the attorneys for the defendant, the defendant, or both, in such proportions and at such times as the court determines are just and equitable, for the payment of fees and expenses that may be awarded under this subsection.

**(9) Attorney conflict of interest**

If a plaintiff class is represented by an attorney who directly owns or otherwise has a beneficial interest in the securities that are the subject of the litigation, the court shall make a determination of whether such ownership or other interest constitutes a conflict of interest sufficient to disqualify the attorney from representing the plaintiff class.

**(b) Requirements for securities fraud actions**

**(1) Misleading statements and omissions**

In any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff alleges that the defendant—

(A) made an untrue statement of a material fact; or

(B) omitted to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements made, in the light of the circumstances in which they were made, not misleading;

the complaint shall specify each statement alleged to have been misleading, the reason or reasons why the statement is misleading, and, if an allegation regarding the statement or omission is made on information and belief, the complaint shall state with particularity all facts on which that belief is formed.

**(2) Required state of mind**

In any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff may recover money damages only on proof that the defend-

ant acted with a particular state of mind, the complaint shall, with respect to each act or omission alleged to violate this chapter, state with particularity facts giving rise to a strong inference that the defendant acted with the required state of mind.

**(3) Motion to dismiss; stay of discovery**

**(A) Dismissal for failure to meet pleading requirements**

In any private action arising under this chapter, the court shall, on the motion of any defendant, dismiss the complaint if the requirements of paragraphs (1) and (2) are not met.

**(B) Stay of discovery**

In any private action arising under this chapter, all discovery and other proceedings shall be stayed during the pendency of any motion to dismiss, unless the court finds upon the motion of any party that particularized discovery is necessary to preserve evidence or to prevent undue prejudice to that party.

**(C) Preservation of evidence**

**(i) In general**

During the pendency of any stay of discovery pursuant to this paragraph, unless otherwise ordered by the court, any party to the action with actual notice of the allegations contained in the complaint shall treat all documents, data compilations (including electronically recorded or stored data), and tangible objects that are in the custody or control of such person and that are relevant to the allegations, as if they were the subject of a continuing request for production of documents from an opposing party under the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(ii) Sanction for willful violation**

A party aggrieved by the willful failure of an opposing party to comply with clause (i) may apply to the court for an order awarding appropriate sanctions.

**(D) Circumvention of stay of discovery**

Upon a proper showing, a court may stay discovery proceedings in any private action in a State court, as necessary in aid of its jurisdiction, or to protect or effectuate its judgments, in an action subject to a stay of discovery pursuant to this paragraph.

**(4) Loss causation**

In any private action arising under this chapter, the plaintiff shall have the burden of proving that the act or omission of the defendant alleged to violate this chapter caused the loss for which the plaintiff seeks to recover damages.

**(c) Sanctions for abusive litigation**

**(1) Mandatory review by court**

In any private action arising under this chapter, upon final adjudication of the action, the court shall include in the record specific findings regarding compliance by each party and each attorney representing any party with each requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure as to any complaint, responsive pleading, or dispositive motion.

**(2) Mandatory sanctions**

If the court makes a finding under paragraph (1) that a party or attorney violated any requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure as to any complaint, responsive pleading, or dispositive motion, the court shall impose sanctions on such party or attorney in accordance with Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. Prior to making a finding that any party or attorney has violated Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the court shall give such party or attorney notice and an opportunity to respond.

**(3) Presumption in favor of attorneys' fees and costs**

**(A) In general**

Subject to subparagraphs (B) and (C), for purposes of paragraph (2), the court shall adopt a presumption that the appropriate sanction—

(i) for failure of any responsive pleading or dispositive motion to comply with any requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure is an award to the opposing party of the reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred as a direct result of the violation; and

(ii) for substantial failure of any complaint to comply with any requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure is an award to the opposing party of the reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred in the action.

**(B) Rebuttal evidence**

The presumption described in subparagraph (A) may be rebutted only upon proof by the party or attorney against whom sanctions are to be imposed that—

(i) the award of attorneys' fees and other expenses will impose an unreasonable burden on that party or attorney and would be unjust, and the failure to make such an award would not impose a greater burden on the party in whose favor sanctions are to be imposed; or

(ii) the violation of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure was de minimis.

**(C) Sanctions**

If the party or attorney against whom sanctions are to be imposed meets its burden under subparagraph (B), the court shall award the sanctions that the court deems appropriate pursuant to Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(d) Defendant's right to written interrogatories**

In any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff may recover money damages, the court shall, when requested by a defendant, submit to the jury a written interrogatory on the issue of each such defendant's state of mind at the time the alleged violation occurred.

**(e) Limitation on damages**

**(1) In general**

Except as provided in paragraph (2), in any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff seeks to establish damages by reference to the market price of a security, the award of damages to the plaintiff shall not exceed the difference between the purchase or sale price paid or received, as appropriate, by the plaintiff for the subject security and the mean trading price of that security during the 90-day period beginning on the date on which the information correcting the misstatement or omission that is the basis for the action is disseminated to the market.

**(2) Exception**

In any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff seeks to establish damages by reference to the market price of a security, if the plaintiff sells or repurchases the subject security prior to the expiration of the 90-day period described in paragraph (1), the plaintiff's damages shall not exceed the difference between the purchase or sale price paid or received, as appropriate, by the plaintiff for the security and the mean trading price of the security during the period beginning immediately after dissemination of information correcting the misstatement or omission and ending on the date on which the plaintiff sells or repurchases the security.

**(3) "Mean trading price" defined**

For purposes of this subsection, the ''mean trading price'' of a security shall be an average of the daily trading price of that security, determined as of the close of the market each day during the 90-day period referred to in paragraph (1).

**(f) Proportionate liability**

**(1) Applicability**

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to create, affect, or in any manner modify, the standard for liability associated with any action arising under the securities laws.

**(2) Liability for damages**

**(A) Joint and several liability**

Any covered person against whom a final judgment is entered in a private action shall be liable for damages jointly and severally only if the trier of fact specifically determines that such covered person knowingly committed a violation of the securities laws.

**(B) Proportionate liability**

**(i) In general**

Except as provided in subparagraph (A), a covered person against whom a final judgment is entered in a private action shall be liable solely for the portion of the judgment that corresponds to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person, as determined under paragraph (3).

**(ii) Recovery by and costs of covered person**

In any case in which a contractual relationship permits, a covered person that prevails in any private action may recover the attorney's fees and costs of that covered person in connection with the action.

**(3) Determination of responsibility**

**(A) In general**

In any private action, the court shall instruct the jury to answer special interrogatories, or if there is no jury, shall make findings, with respect to each covered person and each of the other persons claimed by any of the parties to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff, including persons who have entered into settlements with the plaintiff or plaintiffs, concerning—

(i) whether such person violated the securities laws;

(ii) the percentage of responsibility of such person, measured as a percentage of the total fault of all persons who caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff; and

(iii) whether such person knowingly committed a violation of the securities laws.

**(B) Contents of special interrogatories or findings**

The responses to interrogatories, or findings, as appropriate, under subparagraph (A) shall specify the total amount of damages that the plaintiff is entitled to recover and the percentage of responsibility of each covered person found to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs.

**(C) Factors for consideration**

In determining the percentage of responsibility under this paragraph, the trier of fact shall consider—

(i) the nature of the conduct of each covered person found to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs; and

(ii) the nature and extent of the causal relationship between the conduct of each such person and the damages incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs.

**(4) Uncollectible share**

**(A) In general**

Notwithstanding paragraph (2)(B), upon[1] motion made not later than 6 months after a final judgment is entered in any private action, the court determines that all or part of the share of the judgment of the covered person is not collectible against that covered person, and is also not collectible against a covered person described in paragraph (2)(A), each covered person described in paragraph (2)(B) shall be liable for the uncollectible share as follows:

**(i) Percentage of net worth**

Each covered person shall be jointly and severally liable for the uncollectible share if the plaintiff establishes that—

(I) the plaintiff is an individual whose recoverable damages under the final

[1] So in original. Probably should be preceded by ''if,''.

judgment are equal to more than 10 percent of the net worth of the plaintiff; and

(II) the net worth of the plaintiff is equal to less than $200,000.

**(ii) Other plaintiffs**

With respect to any plaintiff not described in subclauses (I) and (II) of clause (i), each covered person shall be liable for the uncollectible share in proportion to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person, except that the total liability of a covered person under this clause may not exceed 50 percent of the proportionate share of that covered person, as determined under paragraph (3)(B).

**(iii) Net worth**

For purposes of this subparagraph, net worth shall be determined as of the date immediately preceding the date of the purchase or sale (as applicable) by the plaintiff of the security that is the subject of the action, and shall be equal to the fair market value of assets, minus liabilities, including the net value of the investments of the plaintiff in real and personal property (including personal residences).

**(B) Overall limit**

In no case shall the total payments required pursuant to subparagraph (A) exceed the amount of the uncollectible share.

**(C) Covered persons subject to contribution**

A covered person against whom judgment is not collectible shall be subject to contribution and to any continuing liability to the plaintiff on the judgment.

**(5) Right of contribution**

To the extent that a covered person is required to make an additional payment pursuant to paragraph (4), that covered person may recover contribution—

(A) from the covered person originally liable to make the payment;

(B) from any covered person liable jointly and severally pursuant to paragraph (2)(A);

(C) from any covered person held proportionately liable pursuant to this paragraph who is liable to make the same payment and has paid less than his or her proportionate share of that payment; or

(D) from any other person responsible for the conduct giving rise to the payment that would have been liable to make the same payment.

**(6) Nondisclosure to jury**

The standard for allocation of damages under paragraphs (2) and (3) and the procedure for reallocation of uncollectible shares under paragraph (4) shall not be disclosed to members of the jury.

**(7) Settlement discharge**

**(A) In general**

A covered person who settles any private action at any time before final verdict or judgment shall be discharged from all claims for contribution brought by other persons. Upon entry of the settlement by the court, the court shall enter a bar order constituting the final discharge of all obligations to the plaintiff of the settling covered person arising out of the action. The order shall bar all future claims for contribution arising out of the action—

(i) by any person against the settling covered person; and

(ii) by the settling covered person against any person, other than a person whose liability has been extinguished by the settlement of the settling covered person.

**(B) Reduction**

If a covered person enters into a settlement with the plaintiff prior to final verdict or judgment, the verdict or judgment shall be reduced by the greater of—

(i) an amount that corresponds to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person; or

(ii) the amount paid to the plaintiff by that covered person.

**(8) Contribution**

A covered person who becomes jointly and severally liable for damages in any private action may recover contribution from any other person who, if joined in the original action, would have been liable for the same damages. A claim for contribution shall be determined based on the percentage of responsibility of the claimant and of each person against whom a claim for contribution is made.

**(9) Statute of limitations for contribution**

In any private action determining liability, an action for contribution shall be brought not later than 6 months after the entry of a final, nonappealable judgment in the action, except that an action for contribution brought by a covered person who was required to make an additional payment pursuant to paragraph (4) may be brought not later than 6 months after the date on which such payment was made.

**(10) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection—

(A) a covered person ''knowingly commits a violation of the securities laws''—

(i) with respect to an action that is based on an untrue statement of material fact or omission of a material fact necessary to make the statement not misleading, if—

(I) that covered person makes an untrue statement of a material fact, with actual knowledge that the representation is false, or omits to state a fact necessary in order to make the statement made not misleading, with actual knowledge that, as a result of the omission, one of the material representations of the covered person is false; and

(II) persons are likely to reasonably rely on that misrepresentation or omission; and

(ii) with respect to an action that is based on any conduct that is not described in clause (i), if that covered person engages in that conduct with actual knowledge of the facts and circumstances that

make the conduct of that covered person a violation of the securities laws;

(B) reckless conduct by a covered person shall not be construed to constitute a knowing commission of a violation of the securities laws by that covered person;

(C) the term ''covered person'' means—

(i) a defendant in any private action arising under this chapter; or

(ii) a defendant in any private action arising under section 77k of this title, who is an outside director of the issuer of the securities that are the subject of the action; and

(D) the term ''outside director'' shall have the meaning given such term by rule or regulation of the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 21D, as added and amended Pub. L. 104–67, title I, § 101(b), title II, § 201(a), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 743, 758; Pub. L. 105–353, title I, § 101(b)(2), title III, § 301(b)(13), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3233, 3236.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (3)(A)(iii), (B)(iii)(I)(cc), (vi), (8), (b)(3)(C)(i), and (c), are set out in the Appendix to Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (b)(3)(D). Pub. L. 105–353, § 101(b)(2), added subpar. (D).

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(13)(B), redesignated subsec. (g) as (f).

Subsec. (g)(2)(B)(i). Pub. L. 105–353, § 301(b)(13)(A), substituted ''subparagraph (A)'' for ''paragraph (1)''.

1995—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 104–67, § 201(a), added subsec. (g).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 101(b)(2) of Pub. L. 105–353 not to affect or apply to any action commenced before and pending on Nov. 3, 1998, see section 101(c) of Pub. L. 105–353, set out as a note under section 77p of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 not to affect or apply to any private action arising under securities laws commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 202 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 77k of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

This section not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as an Effective Date of 1995 Amendment note under section 77*l* of this title.

CONSTRUCTION

Nothing in section to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 78j–1 of this title.

## § 78u–5. Application of safe harbor for forward-looking statements

### (a) Applicability

This section shall apply only to a forward-looking statement made by—

(1) an issuer that, at the time that the statement is made, is subject to the reporting requirements of section 78m(a) of this title or section 78*o*(d) of this title;

(2) a person acting on behalf of such issuer;

(3) an outside reviewer retained by such issuer making a statement on behalf of such issuer; or

(4) an underwriter, with respect to information provided by such issuer or information derived from information provided by such issuer.

### (b) Exclusions

Except to the extent otherwise specifically provided by rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, this section shall not apply to a forward-looking statement—

(1) that is made with respect to the business or operations of the issuer, if the issuer—

(A) during the 3-year period preceding the date on which the statement was first made—

(i) was convicted of any felony or misdemeanor described in clauses (i) through (iv) of section 78*o*(b)(4)(B) of this title; or

(ii) has been made the subject of a judicial or administrative decree or order arising out of a governmental action that—

(I) prohibits future violations of the antifraud provisions of the securities laws;

(II) requires that the issuer cease and desist from violating the antifraud provisions of the securities laws; or

(III) determines that the issuer violated the antifraud provisions of the securities laws;

(B) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with an offering of securities by a blank check company;

(C) issues penny stock;

(D) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with a rollup transaction; or

(E) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with a going private transaction; or

(2) that is—

(A) included in a financial statement prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;

(B) contained in a registration statement of, or otherwise issued by, an investment company;

(C) made in connection with a tender offer;

(D) made in connection with an initial public offering;

(E) made in connection with an offering by, or relating to the operations of, a partnership, limited liability company, or a direct participation investment program; or

(F) made in a disclosure of beneficial ownership in a report required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to section 78m(d) of this title.

### (c) Safe harbor

#### (1) In general

Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, in any private action arising under

this chapter that is based on an untrue statement of a material fact or omission of a material fact necessary to make the statement not misleading, a person referred to in subsection (a) of this section shall not be liable with respect to any forward-looking statement, whether written or oral, if and to the extent that—

(A) the forward-looking statement is—

(i) identified as a forward-looking statement, and is accompanied by meaningful cautionary statements identifying important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those in the forward-looking statement; or

(ii) immaterial; or

(B) the plaintiff fails to prove that the forward-looking statement—

(i) if made by a natural person, was made with actual knowledge by that person that the statement was false or misleading; or

(ii) if made by a business entity;[1] was—

(I) made by or with the approval of an executive officer of that entity; and

(II) made or approved by such officer with actual knowledge by that officer that the statement was false or misleading.

**(2) Oral forward-looking statements**

In the case of an oral forward-looking statement made by an issuer that is subject to the reporting requirements of section 78m(a) of this title or section 78*o*(d) of this title, or by a person acting on behalf of such issuer, the requirement set forth in paragraph (1)(A) shall be deemed to be satisfied—

(A) if the oral forward-looking statement is accompanied by a cautionary statement—

(i) that the particular oral statement is a forward-looking statement; and

(ii) that the actual results might differ materially from those projected in the forward-looking statement; and

(B) if—

(i) the oral forward-looking statement is accompanied by an oral statement that additional information concerning factors that could cause actual results to materially differ from those in the forward-looking statement is contained in a readily available written document, or portion thereof;

(ii) the accompanying oral statement referred to in clause (i) identifies the document, or portion thereof, that contains the additional information about those factors relating to the forward-looking statement; and

(iii) the information contained in that written document is a cautionary statement that satisfies the standard established in paragraph (1)(A).

**(3) Availability**

Any document filed with the Commission or generally disseminated shall be deemed to be readily available for purposes of paragraph (2).

**(4) Effect on other safe harbors**

The exemption provided for in paragraph (1) shall be in addition to any exemption that the Commission may establish by rule or regulation under subsection (g) of this section.

**(d) Duty to update**

Nothing in this section shall impose upon any person a duty to update a forward-looking statement.

**(e) Dispositive motion**

On any motion to dismiss based upon subsection (c)(1) of this section, the court shall consider any statement cited in the complaint and any cautionary statement accompanying the forward-looking statement, which are not subject to material dispute, cited by the defendant.

**(f) Stay pending decision on motion**

In any private action arising under this chapter, the court shall stay discovery (other than discovery that is specifically directed to the applicability of the exemption provided for in this section) during the pendency of any motion by a defendant for summary judgment that is based on the grounds that—

(1) the statement or omission upon which the complaint is based is a forward-looking statement within the meaning of this section; and

(2) the exemption provided for in this section precludes a claim for relief.

**(g) Exemption authority**

In addition to the exemptions provided for in this section, the Commission may, by rule or regulation, provide exemptions from or under any provision of this chapter, including with respect to liability that is based on a statement or that is based on projections or other forward-looking information, if and to the extent that any such exemption is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, as determined by the Commission.

**(h) Effect on other authority of Commission**

Nothing in this section limits, either expressly or by implication, the authority of the Commission to exercise similar authority or to adopt similar rules and regulations with respect to forward-looking statements under any other statute under which the Commission exercises rulemaking authority.

**(i) Definitions**

For purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

**(1) Forward-looking statement**

The term ''forward-looking statement'' means—

(A) a statement containing a projection of revenues, income (including income loss), earnings (including earnings loss) per share, capital expenditures, dividends, capital structure, or other financial items;

(B) a statement of the plans and objectives of management for future operations, including plans or objectives relating to the products or services of the issuer;

(C) a statement of future economic performance, including any such statement

[1] So in original. The semicolon probably should be a comma.

contained in a discussion and analysis of financial condition by the management or in the results of operations included pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Commission;

(D) any statement of the assumptions underlying or relating to any statement described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C);

(E) any report issued by an outside reviewer retained by an issuer, to the extent that the report assesses a forward-looking statement made by the issuer; or

(F) a statement containing a projection or estimate of such other items as may be specified by rule or regulation of the Commission.

**(2) Investment company**

The term ''investment company'' has the same meaning as in section 80a–3(a) of this title.

**(3) Going private transaction**

The term ''going private transaction'' has the meaning given that term under the rules or regulations of the Commission issued pursuant to section 78m(e) of this title.

**(4) Person acting on behalf of an issuer**

The term ''person acting on behalf of an issuer'' means any officer, director, or employee of such issuer.

**(5) Other terms**

The terms ''blank check company'', ''rollup transaction'', ''partnership'', ''limited liability company'', ''executive officer of an entity'' and ''direct participation investment program'', have the meanings given those terms by rule or regulation of the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 21E, as added Pub. L. 104–67, title I, § 102(b), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 753.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (c)(1), (f), and (g), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

This section not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as an Effective Date of 1995 Amendment note under section 77*l* of this title.

CONSTRUCTION

Nothing in section to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 78j–1 of this title.

## § 78v. Hearings by Commission

Hearings may be public and may be held before the Commission, any member or members thereof, or any officer or officers of the Commission designated by it, and appropriate records thereof shall be kept.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 22, 48 Stat. 901.)

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78w. Rules, regulations, and orders; annual reports

### (a) Power to make rules and regulations; considerations; public disclosure

(1) The Commission, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the other agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title shall each have power to make such rules and regulations as may be necessary or appropriate to implement the provisions of this chapter for which they are responsible or for the execution of the functions vested in them by this chapter, and may for such purposes classify persons, securities, transactions, statements, applications, reports, and other matters within their respective jurisdictions, and prescribe greater, lesser, or different requirements for different classes thereof. No provision of this chapter imposing any liability shall apply to any act done or omitted in good faith in conformity with a rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, other agency enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title, or any self-regulatory organization, notwithstanding that such rule, regulation, or order may thereafter be amended or rescinded or determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason.

(2) The Commission and the Secretary of the Treasury, in making rules and regulations pursuant to any provisions of this chapter, shall consider among other matters the impact any such rule or regulation would have on competition. The Commission and the Secretary of the Treasury shall not adopt any such rule or regulation which would impose a burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. The Commission and the Secretary of the Treasury shall include in the statement of basis and purpose incorporated in any rule or regulation adopted under this chapter, the reasons for the Commission's or the Secretary's determination that any burden on competition imposed by such rule or regulation is necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(3) The Commission and the Secretary, in making rules and regulations pursuant to any provision of this chapter, considering any application for registration in accordance with section 78s(a) of this title, or reviewing any proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization in accordance with section 78s(b) of this title, shall keep in a public file and make available for copying all written statements filed with the Commission and the Secretary and all written communications between the Commission or the Secretary and any person relating to the proposed rule, regulation, application, or proposed rule change: *Provided, however*, That the Commission and the Secretary shall not be required to keep in a public file or make available for copying any such statement or communication which it may withhold from the public in accordance with the provisions of section 552 of title 5.

**(b) Omitted**

**(c) Procedure for adjudication**

The Commission, by rule, shall prescribe the procedure applicable to every case pursuant to this chapter of adjudication (as defined in section 551 of title 5) not required to be determined on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing. Such rules shall, as a minimum, provide that prompt notice shall be given of any adverse action or final disposition and that such notice and the entry of any order shall be accompanied by a statement of written reasons.

**(d) Cease-and-desist procedures**

Within 1 year after October 15, 1990, the Commission shall establish regulations providing for the expeditious conduct of hearings and rendering of decisions under section 78u–3 of this title, section 77h–1 of this title, section 80a–9(f) of this title, and section 80b–3(k) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 23, 48 Stat. 901; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, § 203(a), 49 Stat. 704; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 8, 49 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 88–467, § 10, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 580; Pub. L. 94–29, § 18, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 155; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, § 102(j), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3220; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§ 324, 325, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259; Pub. L. 101–429, title II, § 204, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 940; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, § 107, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2351.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (c), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

CODIFICATION

Subsection (b), which required the Commission, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and other agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title, to each make an annual report to Congress on its work for the preceding year, and to include certain specified information in the reports, terminated, effective May 15, 2000, pursuant to section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance. See, also, pages 143, 167, 172, and 190 of House Document No. 103–7.

AMENDMENTS

1993—Subsec. (b)(4)(C) to (K). Pub. L. 103–202, § 107, redesignated subpars. (E) to (G) and (I) to (K) as (C) to (E) and (F) to (H), respectively, added a new subpar. (I), and struck out former subpars. (C), (D), and (H). Prior to amendment, subpars. (C), (D), and (H) read as follows:

''(C) beginning in 1975 and ending in 1980, information, data, and recommendations with respect to the development of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, including a summary of the regulatory activities, operational capabilities, financial resources, and plans of self-regulatory organizations and registered transfer agents with respect thereto;

''(D) beginning in 1975 and ending in 1980, a description of the steps taken, and an evaluation of the progress made, toward the establishment of a national market system, and recommendations for further legislation it considers advisable with respect to such system;

''(H) beginning in 1975 and ending in 1980, a description of the effect the absence of any schedule or fixed rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by members for effecting transactions on a national securities exchange is having on the maintenance of fair and orderly markets and the development of a national market system for securities;''.

1990—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101–429 added subsec. (d).

1987—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 100–181, § 324(1), inserted ''or'' before ''any self-regulatory organization'' in last sentence.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 100–181, § 324(2), inserted ''shall'' after ''section 78s(b) of this title,''.

Subsec. (b)(4)(F). Pub. L. 100–181, § 325, substituted ''the'' for ''The''.

1986—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 99–571, § 102(j)(1), (2), inserted ''and the Secretary of the Treasury'' in three places and ''or the Secretary's'' in one place.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 99–571, § 102(j)(3), (4), inserted ''and the Secretary'' in three places and ''or the Secretary'' in one place.

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted references to other agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title, regulations appropriate to implement the provisions of this chapter for which the agencies are responsible, the classification of persons, transactions, statements, applications, and reports, the prescribing of greater, lesser, or different requirements for different classifications, and the non-liability of self-regulatory organization, and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29 designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted ''The Commission, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the other agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title, shall each make an annual report to the Congress on its work for the preceding year, and shall include in each such report whatever information, data, and recommendations for further legislation it considers advisable with regard to matters within its respective jurisdiction under this chapter'' for ''The Commission and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, respectively, shall include in their annual reports to Congress such information, data, and recommendation for further legislation as they may deem advisable with regard to matters within their respective jurisdictions under this chapter. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to the Congress for the fiscal years ended on June 30 of 1965, 1966, and 1967 information, data, and recommendations specifically related to the operation of the amendments to this chapter made by the Securities Acts Amendments of 1964'', and added pars. (2) to (4).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsec. (c).

1964—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88–467 required the Commission in its annual reports to Congress for fiscal years ending June 30, 1965, 1966, and 1967, to furnish information, data, and recommendations specifically related to the operations of the amendments to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 made by the Securities Act Amendments of 1964.

1936—Subsec. (a). Act May 27, 1936, inserted second sentence.

CHANGE OF NAME

Section 203(a) of act Aug. 23, 1935, substituted ''Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System'' for ''Federal Reserve Board''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78x. Public availability of information

### (a) "Records" defined

For purposes of section 552 of title 5 the term ''records'' includes all applications, statements, reports, contracts, correspondence, notices, and other documents filed with or otherwise obtained by the Commission pursuant to this chapter or otherwise.

### (b) Disclosure or personal use

It shall be unlawful for any member, officer, or employee of the Commission to disclose to any person other than a member, officer, or employee of the Commission, or to use for personal benefit, any information contained in any application, statement, report, contract, correspondence, notice, or other document filed with or otherwise obtained by the Commission (1) in contravention of the rules and regulations of the Commission under section 552 of title 5, or (2) in circumstances where the Commission has determined pursuant to such rules to accord confidential treatment to such information.

### (c) Confidential disclosures

The Commission may, in its discretion and upon a showing that such information is needed, provide all ''records'' (as defined in subsection (a) of this section) and other information in its possession to such persons, both domestic and foreign, as the Commission by rule deems appropriate if the person receiving such records or information provides such assurances of confidentiality as the Commission deems appropriate.

### (d) Records obtained from foreign securities authorities

Except as provided in subsection (e) of this section, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose records obtained from a foreign securities authority if (1) the foreign securities authority has in good faith determined and represented to the Commission that public disclosure of such records would violate the laws applicable to that foreign securities authority, and (2) the Commission obtains such records pursuant to (A) such procedure as the Commission may authorize for use in connection with the administration or enforcement of the securities laws, or (B) a memorandum of understanding. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

### (e) Savings provision

Nothing in this section shall—

(1) alter the Commission's responsibilities under the Right to Financial Privacy Act (12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.), as limited by section 78u(h) of this title, with respect to transfers of records covered by such statutes, or

(2) authorize the Commission to withhold information from the Congress or prevent the Commission from complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action commenced by the United States or the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §24, 48 Stat. 901; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, §203(a), 49 Stat. 704; Pub. L. 94–29, §19, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 158; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §202(a), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2715.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Right to Financial Privacy Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), probably means the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978, title XI of Pub. L. 95–630, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3697, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§3401 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3401 of Title 12 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–550, §202(a)(1), struck out at end ''Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from the Congress.''

Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 101–550, §202(a)(2), added subsecs. (c) to (e).

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 substituted ''For purposes of section 552 of title 5, the term 'records' includes all applications, statements, reports, contracts, correspondence, notices, and other documents filed with or otherwise obtained by the Commission pursuant to this chapter or otherwise'' for ''Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to require, or to authorize the Commission to require, the revealing of trade secrets or processes in any application, report, or document filed with the Commission under this chapter''.

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 94–29 redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and substituted ''application, statement, report, contract, correspondence, notice, or other document filed with or otherwise obtained by the Commission (1) in contravention of the rules and regulations of the Commission under section 552 of title 5, or (2) in circumstances where the Commission has determined pursuant to such rules to accord confidential treatment for such information. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress'' for ''application, report, or document filed with the Commission which is not made available to the public pursuant to subsection (b) of this section: Provided, That the Commission may make available to the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System any information requested by the Board for the purpose of enabling it to perform its duties under this chapter''. Former subsec. (b), providing for written objection to public disclosure of information, was struck out.

CHANGE OF NAME

Section 203(a) of act Aug. 23, 1935, substituted ''Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System'' for ''Federal Reserve Board''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78y. Court review of orders and rules

### (a) Final Commission orders; persons aggrieved; petition; record; findings; affirmance, modification, enforcement, or setting aside of orders; remand to adduce additional evidence

(1) A person aggrieved by a final order of the Commission entered pursuant to this chapter may obtain review of the order in the United States Court of Appeals for the circuit in which he resides or has his principal place of business, or for the District of Columbia Circuit, by filing in such court, within sixty days after the entry of the order, a written petition requesting that the order be modified or set aside in whole or in part.

(2) A copy of the petition shall be transmitted forthwith by the clerk of the court to a member of the Commission or an officer designated by the Commission for that purpose. Thereupon the Commission shall file in the court the record on which the order complained of is entered, as provided in section 2112 of title 28 and the Federal Rules of Appellate Procedure.

(3) On the filing of the petition, the court has jurisdiction, which becomes exclusive on the filing of the record, to affirm or modify and enforce or to set aside the order in whole or in part.

(4) The findings of the Commission as to the facts, if supported by substantial evidence, are conclusive.

(5) If either party applies to the court for leave to adduce additional evidence and shows to the satisfaction of the court that the additional evidence is material and that there was reasonable ground for failure to adduce it before the Commission, the court may remand the case to the Commission for further proceedings, in whatever manner and on whatever conditions the court considers appropriate. If the case is remanded to the Commission, it shall file in the court a supplemental record containing any new evidence, any further or modified findings, and any new order.

### (b) Commission rules; persons adversely affected; petition; record; affirmance, enforcement, or setting aside of rules; findings; transfer of proceedings

(1) A person adversely affected by a rule of the Commission promulgated pursuant to section 78f, 78i(h)(2), 78k, 78k–1, 78*o*(c)(5) or (6), 78*o*–3, 78q, 78q–1, or 78s of this title may obtain review of this rule in the United States Court of Appeals for the circuit in which he resides or has his principal place of business or for the District of Columbia Circuit, by filing in such court, within sixty days after the promulgation of the rule, a written petition requesting that the rule be set aside.

(2) A copy of the petition shall be transmitted forthwith by the clerk of the court to a member of the Commission or an officer designated for that purpose. Thereupon, the Commission shall file in the court the rule under review and any documents referred to therein, the Commission's notice of proposed rulemaking and any documents referred to therein, all written submissions and the transcript of any oral presentations in the rulemaking, factual information not included in the foregoing that was considered by the Commission in the promulgation of the rule or proffered by the Commission as pertinent to the rule, the report of any advisory committee received or considered by the Commission in the rulemaking, and any other materials prescribed by the court.

(3) On the filing of the petition, the court has jurisdiction, which becomes exclusive on the filing of the materials set forth in paragraph (2) of this subsection, to affirm and enforce or to set aside the rule.

(4) The findings of the Commission as to the facts identified by the Commission as the basis, in whole or in part, of the rule, if supported by substantial evidence, are conclusive. The court shall affirm and enforce the rule unless the Commission's action in promulgating the rule is found to be arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law; contrary to constitutional right, power, privilege, or immunity; in excess of statutory jurisdiction, authority, or limitations, or short of statutory right; or without observance of procedure required by law.

(5) If proceedings have been instituted under this subsection in two or more courts of appeals with respect to the same rule, the Commission shall file the materials set forth in paragraph (2) of this subsection in that court in which a proceeding was first instituted. The other courts shall thereupon transfer all such proceedings to the court in which the materials have been filed. For the convenience of the parties in the interest of justice that court may thereafter transfer all the proceedings to any other court of appeals.

### (c) Objections not urged before Commission; stay of orders and rules; transfer of enforcement or review proceedings

(1) No objection to an order or rule of the Commission, for which review is sought under this section, may be considered by the court unless it was urged before the Commission or there was reasonable ground for failure to do so.

(2) The filing of a petition under this section does not operate as a stay of the Commission's order or rule. Until the court's jurisdiction becomes exclusive, the Commission may stay its order or rule pending judicial review if it finds that justice so requires. After the filing of a petition under this section, the court, on whatever conditions may be required and to the extent necessary to prevent irreparable injury, may issue all necessary and appropriate process to

stay the order or rule or to preserve status or rights pending its review; but (notwithstanding section 705 of title 5) no such process may be issued by the court before the filing of the record or the materials set forth in subsection (b)(2) of this section unless: (A) the Commission has denied a stay or failed to grant requested relief, (B) a reasonable period has expired since the filing of an application for a stay without a decision by the Commission, or (C) there was reasonable ground for failure to apply to the Commission.

(3) When the same order or rule is the subject of one or more petitions for review filed under this section and an action for enforcement filed in a district court of the United States under section 78u(d) or (e) of this title, that court in which the petition or the action is first filed has jurisdiction with respect to the order or rule to the exclusion of any other court, and thereupon all such proceedings shall be transferred to that court; but, for the convenience of the parties in the interest of justice, that court may thereafter transfer all the proceedings to any other court of appeals or district court of the United States, whether or not a petition for review or an action for enforcement was originally filed in the transferee court. The scope of review by a district court under section 78u(d) or (e) of this title is in all cases the same as by a court of appeals under this section.

**(d) Other appropriate regulatory agencies**

(1) For purposes of the preceding subsections of this section, the term ''Commission'' includes the agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title insofar as such agencies are acting pursuant to this chapter and the Secretary of the Treasury insofar as he is acting pursuant to section 78*o*–5 of this title.

(2) For purposes of subsection (a)(4) of this section and section 706 of title 5, an order of the Commission pursuant to section 78s(a) of this title denying registration to a clearing agency for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency or pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title disapproving a proposed rule change by such a clearing agency shall be deemed to be an order of the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency insofar as such order was entered by reason of a determination by such appropriate regulatory agency pursuant to section 78s(a)(2)(C) or 78s(b)(4)(C) of this title that such registration or proposed rule change would be inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 25, 48 Stat. 901; June 7, 1934, ch. 426, 48 Stat. 926; June 25, 1948, ch. 646, § 32(a), 62 Stat. 991; May 24, 1949, ch. 139, § 127, 63 Stat. 107; Pub. L. 85–791, § 10, Aug. 28, 1958, 72 Stat. 945; Pub. L. 94–29, § 20, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 158; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, § 102(k), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3220; Pub. L. 101–432, § 6(b), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 975.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (d)(1), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Federal Rules of Appellate Procedure, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), are set out in the Appendix to Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 101–432 inserted ''78i(h)(2),'' after ''section 78f,''.

1986—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 99–571 inserted ''and the Secretary of the Treasury insofar as he is acting pursuant to section 78*o*–5 of this title''.

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 revised existing provisions into five numbered paragraphs.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29 substituted provisions permitting persons adversely affected by any rule promulgated by the Commission pursuant to sections 78f, 78k, 78k–1, 78*o*(c)(5) or (6), 78*o*–3, 78q, 78q–1, or 78s of this title to obtain direct review in an appropriate Court of Appeals for provisions that commencement of proceedings under subsec. (a) shall not, unless specifically ordered by the court, operate as a stay of the Commission's order.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1958—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 85–791, in second sentence, substituted ''transmitted by the clerk of the court to'' for ''served upon'', struck out ''certify and'' before ''file in the court'', struck out ''a transcript of'' after ''file in the court'', and inserted ''as provided in section 2112 of title 28'', and, in third sentence, substituted ''petition'' for ''transcript'', and ''jurisdiction, which upon the filing of the record shall be exclusive'' for ''exclusive jurisdiction''.

CHANGE OF NAME

Act June 25, 1948, eff. Sept. 1, 1948, as amended by act May 24, 1949, substituted ''court of appeals'' for ''circuit court of appeals''.

Act June 7, 1934, substituted ''United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia'' for ''Court of Appeals for District of Columbia''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78*o*–5 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78z. Unlawful representations

No action or failure to act by the Commission or the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the administration of this chapter shall be construed to mean that the particular authority has in any way passed upon the merits of, or given approval to, any security or any transaction or transactions therein, nor shall such action or failure to act with regard to any statement or report filed with or examined by such authority pursuant to this chapter or rules and regulations thereunder, be deemed a finding by such authority that such statement or report is true and accurate on its face or that it is not false or misleading. It shall be unlawful to make, or cause to be made, to any prospective purchaser or seller of a security any representation that any such action or failure to act by any such authority is to be so construed or has such effect.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 26, 48 Stat. 902; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, § 301(b)(5), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Pub. L. 105–353 substituted ''Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System'' for ''Federal Reserve Board''.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### § 78aa. Jurisdiction of offenses and suits

The district courts of the United States and the United States courts of any Territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States shall have exclusive jurisdiction of violations of this chapter or the rules and regulations thereunder, and of all suits in equity and actions at law brought to enforce any liability or duty created by this chapter or the rules and regulations thereunder. Any criminal proceeding may be brought in the district wherein any act or transaction constituting the violation occurred. Any suit or action to enforce any liability or duty created by this chapter or rules and regulations thereunder, or to enjoin any violation of such chapter or rules and regulations, may be brought in any such district or in the district wherein the defendant is found or is an inhabitant or transacts business, and process in such cases may be served in any other district of which the defendant is an inhabitant or wherever the defendant may be found. Judgments and decrees so rendered shall be subject to review as provided in sections 1254, 1291, 1292, and 1294 of title 28. No costs shall be assessed for or against the Commission in any proceeding under this chapter brought by or against it in the Supreme Court or such other courts.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §27, 48 Stat. 902; June 25, 1936, ch. 804, 49 Stat. 1921; June 25, 1948, ch. 646, §32(b), 62 Stat. 991; May 24, 1949, ch. 139, §127, 63 Stat. 107; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §326, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

CODIFICATION

As originally enacted section contained references to the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia. Act June 25, 1936, substituted ''the district court of the United States for the District of Columbia'' for ''the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia'', and act June 25, 1948, as amended by act May 24, 1949, substituted ''United States District Court for the District of Columbia'' for ''district court of the United States for the District of Columbia''. Pub. L. 100–181 struck out reference to the United States District Court for the District of Columbia. Previously, such words had been editorially eliminated as superfluous in view of section 132(a) of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, which provides that ''There shall be in each judicial district a district court which shall be a court of record known as the United States District Court for the district'', and section 88 of Title 28 which provides that ''the District of Columbia constitutes one judicial district''.

AMENDMENTS

1987—Pub. L. 100–181 struck out '', the United States District Court for the District of Columbia,'' after ''district courts of the United States'' and substituted ''sections 1254, 1291, 1292, and 1294 of title 28'' for ''sections 128 and 240 of the Judicial Code, as amended (U.S.C., title 28, secs. 225 and 347)''. See Codification note above.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### § 78aa–1. Special provision relating to statute of limitations on private causes of action

#### (a) Effect on pending causes of action

The limitation period for any private civil action implied under section 78j(b) of this title that was commenced on or before June 19, 1991, shall be the limitation period provided by the laws applicable in the jurisdiction, including principles of retroactivity, as such laws existed on June 19, 1991.

#### (b) Effect on dismissed causes of action

Any private civil action implied under section 78j(b) of this title that was commenced on or before June 19, 1991—

(1) which was dismissed as time barred subsequent to June 19, 1991, and

(2) which would have been timely filed under the limitation period provided by the laws applicable in the jurisdiction, including principles of retroactivity, as such laws existed on June 19, 1991,

shall be reinstated on motion by the plaintiff not later than 60 days after December 19, 1991.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §27A, as added Pub. L. 102–242, title IV, §476, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2387.)

### § 78bb. Effect on existing law

#### (a) Addition of rights and remedies; recovery of actual damages; State securities commissions

Except as provided in subsection (f) of this section, the rights and remedies provided by this chapter shall be in addition to any and all other rights and remedies that may exist at law or in equity; but no person permitted to maintain a suit for damages under the provisions of this chapter shall recover, through satisfaction of judgment in one or more actions, a total amount in excess of his actual damages on account of the act complained of. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this chapter, nothing in this chapter shall affect the jurisdiction of the securities commission (or any agency or officer performing like functions) of any State over any security or any person insofar as it does not conflict with the provisions of this chapter or the rules and regulations thereunder. No State law which prohibits or regulates the making or promoting of wagering or gaming contracts, or the operation of ''bucket shops'' or other similar or related activities, shall invali-

date any put, call, straddle, option, privilege, or other security subject to this chapter, or apply to any activity which is incidental or related to the offer, purchase, sale, exercise, settlement, or closeout of any such security. No provision of State law regarding the offer, sale, or distribution of securities shall apply to any transaction in a security futures product, except that this sentence shall not be construed as limiting any State antifraud law of general applicability.

**(b) Modification of disciplinary procedures**

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to modify existing law with regard to the binding effect (1) on any member of or participant in any self-regulatory organization of any action taken by the authorities of such organization to settle disputes between its members or participants, (2) on any municipal securities dealer or municipal securities broker of any action taken pursuant to a procedure established by the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board to settle disputes between municipal securities dealers and municipal securities brokers, or (3) of any action described in paragraph (1) or (2) on any person who has agreed to be bound thereby.

**(c) Continuing validity of disciplinary sanctions**

The stay, setting aside, or modification pursuant to section 78s(e) of this title of any disciplinary sanction imposed by a self-regulatory organization on a member thereof, person associated with a member, or participant therein, shall not affect the validity or force of any action taken as a result of such sanction by the self-regulatory organization prior to such stay, setting aside, or modification: *Provided*, That such action is not inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder. The rights of any person acting in good faith which arise out of any such action shall not be affected in any way by such stay, setting aside, or modification.

**(d) Physical location of facilities of registered clearing agencies or registered transfer agents not to subject changes in beneficial or record ownership of securities to State or local taxes**

No State or political subdivision thereof shall impose any tax on any change in beneficial or record ownership of securities effected through the facilities of a registered clearing agency or registered transfer agent or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor or upon the delivery or transfer of securities to or through or receipt from such agency or agent or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor, unless such change in beneficial or record ownership or such transfer or delivery or receipt would otherwise be taxable by such State or political subdivision if the facilities of such registered clearing agency, registered transfer agent, or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor were not physically located in the taxing State or political subdivision. No State or political subdivision thereof shall impose any tax on securities which are deposited in or retained by a registered clearing agency, registered transfer agent, or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor, unless such securities would otherwise be taxable by such State or political subdivision if the facilities of such registered clearing agency, registered transfer agent, or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor were not physically located in the taxing State or political subdivision.

**(e) Exchange, broker, and dealer commissions; brokerage and research services**

(1) No person using the mails, or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, in the exercise of investment discretion with respect to an account shall be deemed to have acted unlawfully or to have breached a fiduciary duty under State or Federal law unless expressly provided to the contrary by a law enacted by the Congress or any State subsequent to June 4, 1975, solely by reason of his having caused the account to pay a member of an exchange, broker, or dealer an amount of commission for effecting a securities transaction in excess of the amount of commission another member of an exchange, broker, or dealer would have charged for effecting that transaction, if such person determined in good faith that such amount of commission was reasonable in relation to the value of the brokerage and research services provided by such member, broker, or dealer, viewed in terms of either that particular transaction or his overall responsibilities with respect to the accounts as to which he exercises investment discretion. This subsection is exclusive and plenary insofar as conduct is covered by the foregoing, unless otherwise expressly provided by contract: *Provided, however*, That nothing in this subsection shall be construed to impair or limit the power of the Commission under any other provision of this chapter or otherwise.

(2) A person exercising investment discretion with respect to an account shall make such disclosure of his policies and practices with respect to commissions that will be paid for effecting securities transactions, at such times and in such manner, as the appropriate regulatory agency, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3) For purposes of this subsection a person provides brokerage and research services insofar as he—

(A) furnishes advice, either directly or through publications or writings, as to the value of securities, the advisability of investing in, purchasing, or selling securities, and the availability of securities or purchasers or sellers of securities;

(B) furnishes analyses and reports concerning issuers, industries, securities, economic factors and trends, portfolio strategy, and the performance of accounts; or

(C) effects securities transactions and performs functions incidental thereto (such as clearance, settlement, and custody) or required in connection therewith by rules of the Commission or a self-regulatory organization of which such person is a member or person associated with a member or in which such person is a participant.

(4) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply with regard to securities that are security futures products.

**(f) Limitations on remedies**

**(1) Class action limitations**

No covered class action based upon the statutory or common law of any State or subdivision thereof may be maintained in any State or Federal court by any private party alleging—

(A) a misrepresentation or omission of a material fact in connection with the purchase or sale of a covered security; or

(B) that the defendant used or employed any manipulative or deceptive device or contrivance in connection with the purchase or sale of a covered security.

**(2) Removal of covered class actions**

Any covered class action brought in any State court involving a covered security, as set forth in paragraph (1), shall be removable to the Federal district court for the district in which the action is pending, and shall be subject to paragraph (1).

**(3) Preservation of certain actions**

**(A) Actions under State law of State of incorporation**

**(i) Actions preserved**

Notwithstanding paragraph (1) or (2), a covered class action described in clause (ii) of this subparagraph that is based upon the statutory or common law of the State in which the issuer is incorporated (in the case of a corporation) or organized (in the case of any other entity) may be maintained in a State or Federal court by a private party.

**(ii) Permissible actions**

A covered class action is described in this clause if it involves—

(I) the purchase or sale of securities by the issuer or an affiliate of the issuer exclusively from or to holders of equity securities of the issuer; or

(II) any recommendation, position, or other communication with respect to the sale of securities of an issuer that—

(aa) is made by or on behalf of the issuer or an affiliate of the issuer to holders of equity securities of the issuer; and

(bb) concerns decisions of such equity holders with respect to voting their securities, acting in response to a tender or exchange offer, or exercising dissenters' or appraisal rights.

**(B) State actions**

**(i) In general**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, nothing in this subsection may be construed to preclude a State or political subdivision thereof or a State pension plan from bringing an action involving a covered security on its own behalf, or as a member of a class comprised solely of other States, political subdivisions, or State pension plans that are named plaintiffs, and that have authorized participation, in such action.

**(ii) State pension plan defined**

For purposes of this subparagraph, the term ''State pension plan'' means a pension plan established and maintained for its employees by the government of a State or political subdivision thereof, or by any agency or instrumentality thereof.

**(C) Actions under contractual agreements between issuers and indenture trustees**

Notwithstanding paragraph (1) or (2), a covered class action that seeks to enforce a contractual agreement between an issuer and an indenture trustee may be maintained in a State or Federal court by a party to the agreement or a successor to such party.

**(D) Remand of removed actions**

In an action that has been removed from a State court pursuant to paragraph (2), if the Federal court determines that the action may be maintained in State court pursuant to this subsection, the Federal court shall remand such action to such State court.

**(4) Preservation of State jurisdiction**

The securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of any State shall retain jurisdiction under the laws of such State to investigate and bring enforcement actions.

**(5) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection, the following definitions shall apply:

**(A) Affiliate of the issuer**

The term ''affiliate of the issuer'' means a person that directly or indirectly, through one or more intermediaries, controls or is controlled by or is under common control with, the issuer.

**(B) Covered class action**

The term ''covered class action'' means—

(i) any single lawsuit in which—

(I) damages are sought on behalf of more than 50 persons or prospective class members, and questions of law or fact common to those persons or members of the prospective class, without reference to issues of individualized reliance on an alleged misstatement or omission, predominate over any questions affecting only individual persons or members; or

(II) one or more named parties seek to recover damages on a representative basis on behalf of themselves and other unnamed parties similarly situated, and questions of law or fact common to those persons or members of the prospective class predominate over any questions affecting only individual persons or members; or

(ii) any group of lawsuits filed in or pending in the same court and involving common questions of law or fact, in which—

(I) damages are sought on behalf of more than 50 persons; and

(II) the lawsuits are joined, consolidated, or otherwise proceed as a single action for any purpose.

**(C) Exception for derivative actions**

Notwithstanding subparagraph (B), the term ''covered class action'' does not include

an exclusively derivative action brought by one or more shareholders on behalf of a corporation.

**(D) Counting of certain class members**

For purposes of this paragraph, a corporation, investment company, pension plan, partnership, or other entity, shall be treated as one person or prospective class member, but only if the entity is not established for the purpose of participating in the action.

**(E) Covered security**

The term ''covered security'' means a security that satisfies the standards for a covered security specified in paragraph (1) or (2) of section 18(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77r(b)], at the time during which it is alleged that the misrepresentation, omission, or manipulative or deceptive conduct occurred, except that such term shall not include any debt security that is exempt from registration under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] pursuant to rules issued by the Commission under section 4(2) of that Act [15 U.S.C. 77d(2)].

**(F) Rule of construction**

Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to affect the discretion of a State court in determining whether actions filed in such court should be joined, consolidated, or otherwise allowed to proceed as a single action.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 28, 48 Stat. 903; Pub. L. 94–29, § 21, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 160; Pub. L. 97–303, § 4, Oct. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1409; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§ 327–329, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, § 103(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3422; Pub. L. 105–353, title I, § 101(b)(1), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3230; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, §§ 203(a)(2), 210], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–422, 2763A–436.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (c) and (e), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (f)(5)(E), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§ 77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 210], inserted ''subject to this chapter'' after ''privilege, or other security'', substituted ''any such security'' for ''any such instrument, if such instrument is traded pursuant to rules and regulations of a self-regulatory organization that are filed with the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title'', and inserted at end ''No provision of State law regarding the offer, sale, or distribution of securities shall apply to any transaction in a security futures product, except that this sentence shall not be construed as limiting any State antifraud law of general applicability.''

Subsec. (e)(4). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 203(a)(2)], added par. (4).

1998—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–353, § 101(b)(1)(A), substituted ''Except as provided in subsection (f) of this section, the rights and remedies'' for ''The rights and remedies''.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 105–353, § 101(b)(1)(B), added subsec. (f).

1996—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–290 substituted ''Except as otherwise specifically provided in this chapter, nothing'' for ''Nothing''.

1987—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–181, § 327, substituted ''on'' for ''or'' after ''self-regulatory organization''.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–181, § 328, substituted ''change in beneficial'' for ''change is beneficial''.

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 100–181, § 329, substituted ''subsequent to the date of enactment of the Securities Acts Amendments of 1975'' for ''subsequent to the date of enactment of the Securities Acts Amendments in 1975'', which for purposes of codification was translated as ''subsequent to June 4, 1975,'' thus requiring no change in text.

1982—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97–303 inserted provision that no State law which prohibits or regulates the making or promoting of wagering or gaming contracts, or the operation of ''bucket shops'' or other similar or related activities, shall invalidate any put, call, straddle, option, privilege, or other security, or apply to any activity which is incidental or related to the offer, purchase, sale, exercise, settlement, or closeout of any such instrument, if such instrument is traded pursuant to rules and regulations of a self-regulatory organization that are filed with the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title.

1975—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29, § 21(1), struck out provisions that nothing in this chapter be construed to modify existing law with regard to the binding effect on any member of an exchange of any disciplinary action taken by the authorities of an exchange and made the remaining provisions applicable to all members of and participants in all self-regulatory organizations as well as municipal securities professionals.

Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 94–29, § 21(2), added subsecs. (c) to (e).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–353 not to affect or apply to any action commenced before and pending on Nov. 3, 1998, see section 101(c) of Pub. L. 105–353, set out as a note under section 77p of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78cc. Validity of contracts

**(a) Waiver provisions**

Any condition, stipulation, or provision binding any person to waive compliance with any provision of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder, or of any rule of an exchange required thereby shall be void.

**(b) Contract provisions in violation of chapter**

Every contract made in violation of any provision of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder, and every contract (including any contract for listing a security on an exchange) heretofore or hereafter made, the performance of which involves the violation of, or the continuance of any relationship or practice in violation of, any provision of this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder, shall be void (1) as regards the rights of any person who, in violation of any such provision, rule, or regulation, shall have made or engaged in the performance of any

such contract, and (2) as regards the rights of any person who, not being a party to such contract, shall have acquired any right thereunder with actual knowledge of the facts by reason of which the making or performance of such contract was in violation of any such provision, rule, or regulation: *Provided*, (A) That no contract shall be void by reason of this subsection because of any violation of any rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to paragraph (3) of subsection (c) of section 78*o* of this title, and (B) that no contract shall be deemed to be void by reason of this subsection in any action maintained in reliance upon this subsection, by any person to or for whom any broker or dealer sells, or from or for whom any broker or dealer purchases, a security in violation of any rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (c) of section 78*o* of this title, unless such action is brought within one year after the discovery that such sale or purchase involves such violation and within three years after such violation. The Commission may, in a rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to such paragraph (2) of such section 78*o*(c) of this title, designate such rule or regulation, or portion thereof, as a rule or regulation, or portion thereof, a contract in violation of which shall not be void by reason of this subsection.

**(c) Validity of loans, extensions of credit, and creation of liens; actual knowledge of violation**

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed (1) to affect the validity of any loan or extension of credit (or any extension or renewal thereof) made or of any lien created prior or subsequent to the enactment of this chapter, unless at the time of the making of such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or the creating of such lien, the person making such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or acquiring such lien shall have actual knowledge of facts by reason of which the making of such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or the acquisition of such lien is a violation of the provisions of this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder, or (2) to afford a defense to the collection of any debt or obligation or the enforcement of any lien by any person who shall have acquired such debt, obligation, or lien in good faith for value and without actual knowledge of the violation of any provision of this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder affecting the legality of such debt, obligation, or lien.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 29, 48 Stat. 903; June 25, 1938, ch. 677, § 3, 52 Stat. 1076; Pub. L. 101–429, title V, § 507, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 956.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (b), and (c), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–429 substituted in cl. (A) ''paragraph (3)'' for ''paragraph (2) or (3)'' and in cl. (B) ''paragraph (1) or (2)'' for ''paragraph (1)'', and inserted at end ''The Commission may, in a rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to such paragraph (2) of such section 78*o*(c) of this title, designate such rule or regulation, or portion thereof, as a rule or regulation, or portion thereof, a contract in violation of which shall not be void by reason of this subsection.''

1938—Subsec. (b). Act June 25, 1938, inserted proviso.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

## § 78dd. Foreign securities exchanges

(a) It shall be unlawful for any broker or dealer, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce for the purpose of effecting on an exchange not within or subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, any transaction in any security the issuer of which is a resident of, or is organized under the laws of, or has its principal place of business in, a place within or subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors or to prevent the evasion of this chapter.

(b) The provisions of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder shall not apply to any person insofar as he transacts a business in securities without the jurisdiction of the United States, unless he transacts such business in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate to prevent the evasion of this chapter.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 30, 48 Stat. 904.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (b), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## § 78dd–1. Prohibited foreign trade practices by issuers

**(a) Prohibition**

It shall be unlawful for any issuer which has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title or which is required to file reports under section 78*o*(d) of this title, or for any officer, director, employee, or agent of such issuer or any stockholder thereof acting on behalf of such issuer, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce corruptly in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to—

(1) any foreign official for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official to use his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such issuer in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person;

(2) any foreign political party or official thereof or any candidate for foreign political office for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such party, official, or candidate to use its or his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such issuer in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person; or

(3) any person, while knowing that all or a portion of such money or thing of value will be offered, given, or promised, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, to any foreign political party or official thereof, or to any candidate for foreign political office, for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to use his or its influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such issuer in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person.

**(b) Exception for routine governmental action**

Subsections (a) and (g) of this section shall not apply to any facilitating or expediting payment to a foreign official, political party, or party official the purpose of which is to expedite or to secure the performance of a routine governmental action by a foreign official, political party, or party official.

**(c) Affirmative defenses**

It shall be an affirmative defense to actions under subsection (a) or (g) of this section that—

(1) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was lawful under the written laws and regulations of the foreign official's, political party's, party official's, or candidate's country; or

(2) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was a reasonable and bona fide expenditure, such as travel and lodging expenses, incurred by or on behalf of a foreign official, party, party official, or candidate and was directly related to—

(A) the promotion, demonstration, or explanation of products or services; or

(B) the execution or performance of a contract with a foreign government or agency thereof.

**(d) Guidelines by Attorney General**

Not later than one year after August 23, 1988, the Attorney General, after consultation with the Commission, the Secretary of Commerce, the United States Trade Representative, the Secretary of State, and the Secretary of the Treasury, and after obtaining the views of all interested persons through public notice and comment procedures, shall determine to what extent compliance with this section would be enhanced and the business community would be assisted by further clarification of the preceding provisions of this section and may, based on such determination and to the extent necessary and appropriate, issue—

(1) guidelines describing specific types of conduct, associated with common types of export sales arrangements and business contracts, which for purposes of the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, the Attorney General determines would be in conformance with the preceding provisions of this section; and

(2) general precautionary procedures which issuers may use on a voluntary basis to conform their conduct to the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section.

The Attorney General shall issue the guidelines and procedures referred to in the preceding sentence in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 and those guidelines and procedures shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 7 of that title.

**(e) Opinions of Attorney General**

(1) The Attorney General, after consultation with appropriate departments and agencies of the United States and after obtaining the views of all interested persons through public notice and comment procedures, shall establish a procedure to provide responses to specific inquiries by issuers concerning conformance of their conduct with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section. The Attorney General shall, within 30 days after receiving such a request, issue an opinion in response to that request. The opinion shall state whether or not certain specified prospective conduct would, for purposes of the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, violate the preceding provisions of this section. Additional requests for opinions may be filed with the Attorney General regarding other specified prospective conduct that is beyond the scope of conduct specified in previous requests. In any action brought under the applicable provisions of this section, there shall be a rebuttable presumption that conduct, which is specified in a request by an issuer and for which the Attorney General has issued an

opinion that such conduct is in conformity with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, is in compliance with the preceding provisions of this section. Such a presumption may be rebutted by a preponderance of the evidence. In considering the presumption for purposes of this paragraph, a court shall weigh all relevant factors, including but not limited to whether the information submitted to the Attorney General was accurate and complete and whether it was within the scope of the conduct specified in any request received by the Attorney General. The Attorney General shall establish the procedure required by this paragraph in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 and that procedure shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 7 of that title.

(2) Any document or other material which is provided to, received by, or prepared in the Department of Justice or any other department or agency of the United States in connection with a request by an issuer under the procedure established under paragraph (1), shall be exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5 and shall not, except with the consent of the issuer, be made publicly available, regardless of whether the Attorney General responds to such a request or the issuer withdraws such request before receiving a response.

(3) Any issuer who has made a request to the Attorney General under paragraph (1) may withdraw such request prior to the time the Attorney General issues an opinion in response to such request. Any request so withdrawn shall have no force or effect.

(4) The Attorney General shall, to the maximum extent practicable, provide timely guidance concerning the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy with respect to the preceding provisions of this section to potential exporters and small businesses that are unable to obtain specialized counsel on issues pertaining to such provisions. Such guidance shall be limited to responses to requests under paragraph (1) concerning conformity of specified prospective conduct with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section and general explanations of compliance responsibilities and of potential liabilities under the preceding provisions of this section.

**(f) Definitions**

For purposes of this section:

(1)(A) The term ''foreign official'' means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or of a public international organization, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality, or for or on behalf of any such public international organization.

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), the term ''public international organization'' means—

(i) an organization that is designated by Executive order pursuant to section 288 of title 22; or

(ii) any other international organization that is designated by the President by Executive order for the purposes of this section, effective as of the date of publication of such order in the Federal Register.

(2)(A) A person's state of mind is ''knowing'' with respect to conduct, a circumstance, or a result if—

(i) such person is aware that such person is engaging in such conduct, that such circumstance exists, or that such result is substantially certain to occur; or

(ii) such person has a firm belief that such circumstance exists or that such result is substantially certain to occur.

(B) When knowledge of the existence of a particular circumstance is required for an offense, such knowledge is established if a person is aware of a high probability of the existence of such circumstance, unless the person actually believes that such circumstance does not exist.

(3)(A) The term ''routine governmental action'' means only an action which is ordinarily and commonly performed by a foreign official in—

(i) obtaining permits, licenses, or other official documents to qualify a person to do business in a foreign country;

(ii) processing governmental papers, such as visas and work orders;

(iii) providing police protection, mail pickup and delivery, or scheduling inspections associated with contract performance or inspections related to transit of goods across country;

(iv) providing phone service, power and water supply, loading and unloading cargo, or protecting perishable products or commodities from deterioration; or

(v) actions of a similar nature.

(B) The term ''routine governmental action'' does not include any decision by a foreign official whether, or on what terms, to award new business to or to continue business with a particular party, or any action taken by a foreign official involved in the decisionmaking process to encourage a decision to award new business to or continue business with a particular party.

**(g) Alternative jurisdiction**

(1) It shall also be unlawful for any issuer organized under the laws of the United States, or a State, territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States or a political subdivision thereof and which has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title or which is required to file reports under section 78*o*(d) of this title, or for any United States person that is an officer, director, employee, or agent of such issuer or a stockholder thereof acting on behalf of such issuer, to corruptly do any act outside the United States in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to any of the persons or entities set forth in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (a) of this section for the purposes set forth therein, irrespective of whether such issuer or such officer, director, employee, agent,

or stockholder makes use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in furtherance of such offer, gift, payment, promise, or authorization.

(2) As used in this subsection, the term ''United States person'' means a national of the United States (as defined in section 1101 of title 8) or any corporation, partnership, association, joint-stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship organized under the laws of the United States or any State, territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States, or any political subdivision thereof.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 30A, as added Pub. L. 95–213, title I, § 103(a), Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1495; amended Pub. L. 100–418, title V, § 5003(a), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1415; Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(a)–(c), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3302, 3303.)

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(a)(1), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

''(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, or (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or''.

Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(a)(2), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

''(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, or (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate,''.

Subsec. (a)(3)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(a)(3), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

''(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, or (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or''.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(c)(2), substituted ''Subsections (a) and (g)'' for ''Subsection (a)''.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(c)(3), substituted ''subsection (a) or (g)'' for ''subsection (a)''.

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(b), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: ''The term 'foreign official' means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality.''

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(c)(1), added subsec. (g).

1988—Pub. L. 100–418 substituted ''Prohibited foreign trade'' for ''Foreign corrupt'' in section catchline and amended text generally, revising and restating provisions of subsec. (a) relating to prohibitions, adding subsecs. (b) to (e), and redesignating provisions of subsec. (b) relating to definitions as subsec. (f) and amending those provisions generally.

TREATMENT OF INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS PROVIDING COMMERCIAL COMMUNICATIONS SERVICES

Pub. L. 105–366, § 5, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3309, provided that:

''(a) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this section:

''(1) INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION PROVIDING COMMERCIAL COMMUNICATIONS SERVICES.—The term 'international organization providing commercial communications services' means—

''(A) the International Telecommunications Satellite Organization established pursuant to the Agreement Relating to the International Telecommunications Satellite Organization; and

''(B) the International Mobile Satellite Organization established pursuant to the Convention on the International Maritime Satellite Organization.

''(2) PRO-COMPETITIVE PRIVATIZATION.—The term 'pro-competitive privatization' means a privatization that the President determines to be consistent with the United States policy of obtaining full and open competition to such organizations (or their successors), and nondiscriminatory market access, in the provision of satellite services.

''(b) TREATMENT AS PUBLIC INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS.—

''(1) TREATMENT.—An international organization providing commercial communications services shall be treated as a public international organization for purposes of section 30A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78dd–1) and sections 104 and 104A of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 (15 U.S.C. 78dd–2 [and 78dd–3]) until such time as the President certifies to the Committee on Commerce [now Committee on Energy and Commerce] of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Banking, Housing and Urban Affairs and Commerce, Science, and Transportation that such international organization providing commercial communications services has achieved a pro-competitive privatization.

''(2) LIMITATION ON EFFECT OF TREATMENT.—The requirement for a certification under paragraph (1), and any certification made under such paragraph, shall not be construed to affect the administration by the Federal Communications Commission of the Communications Act of 1934 [47 U.S.C. 151 et seq.] in authorizing the provision of services to, from, or within the United States over space segment of the international satellite organizations, or the privatized affiliates or successors thereof.

''(c) EXTENSION OF LEGAL PROCESS.—

''(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as required by international agreements to which the United States is a party, an international organization providing commercial communications services, its officials and employees, and its records shall not be accorded immunity from suit or legal process for any act or omission taken in connection with such organization's capacity as a provider, directly or indirectly, of commercial telecommunications services to, from, or within the United States.

''(2) NO EFFECT ON PERSONAL LIABILITY.—Paragraph (1) shall not affect any immunity from personal liability of any individual who is an official or employee of an international organization providing commercial communications services.

''(3) EFFECTIVE DATE.—This subsection shall take effect on May 1, 1999.

''(d) ELIMINATION OR LIMITATION OF EXCEPTIONS.—

''(1) ACTION REQUIRED.—The President shall, in a manner that is consistent with requirements in international agreements to which the United States is a party, expeditiously take all appropriate actions necessary to eliminate or to reduce substantially all privileges and immunities that are accorded to an international organization described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of subsection (a)(1), its officials, its employees, or its records, and that are not eliminated pursuant to subsection (c).

''(2) DESIGNATION OF AGREEMENTS.—The President shall designate which agreements constitute international agreements to which the United States is a party for purposes of this section.

''(e) PRESERVATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT AND INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS.—Nothing in subsection (c) or (d) of this section shall affect any immunity from suit or legal process of an international organization providing commercial communications services, or the privatized affiliates or successors thereof, for acts or omissions—

''(1) under chapter 119, 121, 206, or 601 of title 18, United States Code, the Foreign Intelligence Surveil-

lance Act of 1978 (50 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.), section 514 of the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 (21 U.S.C. 884), or Rule 104, 501, or 608 of the Federal Rules of Evidence [28 App. U.S.C.];

''(2) under similar State laws providing protection to service providers cooperating with law enforcement agencies pursuant to State electronic surveillance or evidence laws, rules, regulations, or procedures; or

''(3) pursuant to a court order.

''(f) RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.—

''(1) NEGOTIATIONS.—Nothing in this section shall affect the President's existing constitutional authority regarding the time, scope, and objectives of international negotiations.

''(2) PRIVATIZATION.—Nothing in this section shall be construed as legislative authorization for the privatization of INTELSAT or Inmarsat, nor to increase the President's authority with respect to negotiations concerning such privatization.''

[Memorandum of President of the United States, Nov. 16, 1998, 63 F.R. 65997, delegated to Secretary of State functions and authorities vested in the President by section 5(d)(2) of Pub. L. 105–366, set out above.]

ENFORCEMENT AND MONITORING

Pub. L. 105–366, §6, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3311, provided that:

''(a) REPORTS REQUIRED.—Not later than July 1 of 1999 and each of the 5 succeeding years, the Secretary of Commerce shall submit to the House of Representatives and the Senate a report that contains the following information with respect to implementation of the Convention:

''(1) RATIFICATION.—A list of the countries that have ratified the Convention, the dates of ratification by such countries, and the entry into force for each such country.

''(2) DOMESTIC LEGISLATION.—A description of domestic laws enacted by each party to the Convention that implement commitments under the Convention, and assessment of the compatibility of such laws with the Convention.

''(3) ENFORCEMENT.—As assessment of the measures taken by each party to the Convention during the previous year to fulfill its obligations under the Convention and achieve its object and purpose including—

''(A) an assessment of the enforcement of the domestic laws described in paragraph (2);

''(B) an assessment of the efforts by each such party to promote public awareness of such domestic laws and the achievement of such object and purpose; and

''(C) an assessment of the effectiveness, transparency, and viability of the monitoring process for the Convention, including its inclusion of input from the private sector and nongovernmental organizations.

''(4) LAWS PROHIBITING TAX DEDUCTION OF BRIBES.—An explanation of the domestic laws enacted by each party to the Convention that would prohibit the deduction of bribes in the computation of domestic taxes.

''(5) NEW SIGNATORIES.—A description of efforts to expand international participation in the Convention by adding new signatories to the Convention and by assuring that all countries which are or become members of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development are also parties to the Convention.

''(6) SUBSEQUENT EFFORTS.—An assessment of the status of efforts to strengthen the Convention by extending the prohibitions contained in the Convention to cover bribes to political parties, party officials, and candidates for political office.

''(7) ADVANTAGES.—Advantages, in terms of immunities, market access, or otherwise, in the countries or regions served by the organizations described in section 5(a) [set out as a note above], the reason for such advantages, and an assessment of progress toward fulfilling the policy described in that section.

''(8) BRIBERY AND TRANSPARENCY.—An assessment of anti-bribery programs and transparency with respect to each of the international organizations covered by this Act [enacting section 78dd–3 of this title, amending this section and sections 78dd–2 and 78ff of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section].

''(9) PRIVATE SECTOR REVIEW.—A description of the steps taken to ensure full involvement of United States private sector participants and representatives of nongovernmental organizations in the monitoring and implementation of the Convention.

''(10) ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.—In consultation with the private sector participants and representatives of nongovernmental organizations described in paragraph (9), a list of additional means for enlarging the scope of the Convention and otherwise increasing its effectiveness. Such additional means shall include, but not be limited to, improved recordkeeping provisions and the desirability of expanding the applicability of the Convention to additional individuals and organizations and the impact on United States business of section 30A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78dd–1] and sections 104 and 104A of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 [15 U.S.C. 78dd–2, 78dd–3].

''(b) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this section, the term 'Convention' means the Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions adopted on November 21, 1997, and signed on December 17, 1997, by the United States and 32 other nations.''

INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS CONCERNING ACTS PROHIBITED WITH RESPECT TO ISSUERS AND DOMESTIC CONCERNS; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 5003(d) of Pub. L. 100–418 provided that:

''(1) NEGOTIATIONS.—It is the sense of the Congress that the President should pursue the negotiation of an international agreement, among the members of the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development, to govern persons from those countries concerning acts prohibited with respect to issuers and domestic concerns by the amendments made by this section [amending sections 78dd–1, 78dd–2, and 78ff of this title]. Such international agreement should include a process by which problems and conflicts associated with such acts could be resolved.

''(2) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—(A) Within 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 23, 1988], the President shall submit to the Congress a report on—

''(i) the progress of the negotiations referred to in paragraph (1),[;]

''(ii) those steps which the executive branch and the Congress should consider taking in the event that these negotiations do not successfully eliminate any competitive disadvantage of United States businesses that results when persons from other countries commit the acts described in paragraph (1); and

''(iii) possible actions that could be taken to promote cooperation by other countries in international efforts to prevent bribery of foreign officials, candidates, or parties in third countries.

''(B) The President shall include in the report submitted under subparagraph (A)—

''(i) any legislative recommendations necessary to give the President the authority to take appropriate action to carry out clauses (ii) and (iii) of subparagraph (A);

''(ii) an analysis of the potential effect on the interests of the United States, including United States national security, when persons from other countries commit the acts described in paragraph (1); and

''(iii) an assessment of the current and future role of private initiatives in curtailing such acts.''

[For delegation of functions of the President under section 5003(d)(1) of Pub. L. 100–418 to the Secretary of State, see section 3–101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12661, Dec. 27, 1988, 54 F.R. 779, set out as a note under section 2901 of Title 19, Customs Duties.]

EX. ORD. NO. 13259. DESIGNATION OF PUBLIC INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS FOR PURPOSES OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934 AND THE FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES ACT OF 1977

Ex. Ord. No. 13259, Mar. 19, 2002, 67 F.R. 13239, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 30A(f)(1)(B)(ii) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78dd–1(f)(1)(B)(ii)) and sections 104(h)(2)(B)(ii) and 104A(f)(2)(B)(ii) of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 (15 U.S.C. 78dd–2(h)(2)(B)(ii), 78dd–3(f)(2)(B)(ii)), I hereby designate as ''public international organizations'' for the purposes of application of section 30A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and sections 104 and 104A of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977:

(a) The European Union, including: the European Communities (the European Community, the European Coal & Steel Community, and the European Atomic Energy Community); institutions of the European Union, such as the European Commission, the Council of the European Union, the European Parliament, the European Court of Justice, the European Court of Auditors, the Economic and Social Committee, the Committee of the Regions, the European Central Bank, and the European Investment Bank; and any departments, agencies, and instrumentalities thereof; and

(b) The European Police Office (Europol), including any departments, agencies, and instrumentalities thereof.

Designation in this Executive Order is intended solely to further the purposes of the statutes mentioned above and is not determinative of whether an entity is a public international organization for the purpose of other statutes or regulations.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

## § 78dd–2. Prohibited foreign trade practices by domestic concerns

### (a) Prohibition

It shall be unlawful for any domestic concern, other than an issuer which is subject to section 78dd–1 of this title, or for any officer, director, employee, or agent of such domestic concern or any stockholder thereof acting on behalf of such domestic concern, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce corruptly in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to—

(1) any foreign official for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official to use his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such domestic concern in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person;

(2) any foreign political party or official thereof or any candidate for foreign political office for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such party, official, or candidate to use its or his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such domestic concern in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person; or

(3) any person, while knowing that all or a portion of such money or thing of value will be offered, given, or promised, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, to any foreign political party or official thereof, or to any candidate for foreign political office, for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to use his or its influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such domestic concern in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person.

### (b) Exception for routine governmental action

Subsections (a) and (i) of this section shall not apply to any facilitating or expediting payment to a foreign official, political party, or party official the purpose of which is to expedite or to secure the performance of a routine governmental action by a foreign official, political party, or party official.

### (c) Affirmative defenses

It shall be an affirmative defense to actions under subsection (a) or (i) of this section that—

(1) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was lawful under the written laws and regulations of the foreign official's, political party's, party official's, or candidate's country; or

(2) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was a reasonable and bona fide expenditure, such as travel and lodging expenses, incurred by or on behalf of a foreign official, party, party official, or candidate and was directly related to—

(A) the promotion, demonstration, or explanation of products or services; or

(B) the execution or performance of a contract with a foreign government or agency thereof.

### (d) Injunctive relief

(1) When it appears to the Attorney General that any domestic concern to which this section

applies, or officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder thereof, is engaged, or about to engage, in any act or practice constituting a violation of subsection (a) or (i) of this section, the Attorney General may, in his discretion, bring a civil action in an appropriate district court of the United States to enjoin such act or practice, and upon a proper showing, a permanent injunction or a temporary restraining order shall be granted without bond.

(2) For the purpose of any civil investigation which, in the opinion of the Attorney General, is necessary and proper to enforce this section, the Attorney General or his designee are empowered to administer oaths and affirmations, subpoena witnesses, take evidence, and require the production of any books, papers, or other documents which the Attorney General deems relevant or material to such investigation. The attendance of witnesses and the production of documentary evidence may be required from any place in the United States, or any territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States, at any designated place of hearing.

(3) In case of contumacy by, or refusal to obey a subpoena issued to, any person, the Attorney General may invoke the aid of any court of the United States within the jurisdiction of which such investigation or proceeding is carried on, or where such person resides or carries on business, in requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of books, papers, or other documents. Any such court may issue an order requiring such person to appear before the Attorney General or his designee, there to produce records, if so ordered, or to give testimony touching the matter under investigation. Any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof. All process in any such case may be served in the judicial district in which such person resides or may be found. The Attorney General may make such rules relating to civil investigations as may be necessary or appropriate to implement the provisions of this subsection.

**(e) Guidelines by Attorney General**

Not later than 6 months after August 23, 1988, the Attorney General, after consultation with the Securities and Exchange Commission, the Secretary of Commerce, the United States Trade Representative, the Secretary of State, and the Secretary of the Treasury, and after obtaining the views of all interested persons through public notice and comment procedures, shall determine to what extent compliance with this section would be enhanced and the business community would be assisted by further clarification of the preceding provisions of this section and may, based on such determination and to the extent necessary and appropriate, issue—

(1) guidelines describing specific types of conduct, associated with common types of export sales arrangements and business contracts, which for purposes of the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, the Attorney General determines would be in conformance with the preceding provisions of this section; and

(2) general precautionary procedures which domestic concerns may use on a voluntary basis to conform their conduct to the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section.

The Attorney General shall issue the guidelines and procedures referred to in the preceding sentence in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 and those guidelines and procedures shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 7 of that title.

**(f) Opinions of Attorney General**

(1) The Attorney General, after consultation with appropriate departments and agencies of the United States and after obtaining the views of all interested persons through public notice and comment procedures, shall establish a procedure to provide responses to specific inquiries by domestic concerns concerning conformance of their conduct with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section. The Attorney General shall, within 30 days after receiving such a request, issue an opinion in response to that request. The opinion shall state whether or not certain specified prospective conduct would, for purposes of the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, violate the preceding provisions of this section. Additional requests for opinions may be filed with the Attorney General regarding other specified prospective conduct that is beyond the scope of conduct specified in previous requests. In any action brought under the applicable provisions of this section, there shall be a rebuttable presumption that conduct, which is specified in a request by a domestic concern and for which the Attorney General has issued an opinion that such conduct is in conformity with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, is in compliance with the preceding provisions of this section. Such a presumption may be rebutted by a preponderance of the evidence. In considering the presumption for purposes of this paragraph, a court shall weigh all relevant factors, including but not limited to whether the information submitted to the Attorney General was accurate and complete and whether it was within the scope of the conduct specified in any request received by the Attorney General. The Attorney General shall establish the procedure required by this paragraph in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 and that procedure shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 7 of that title.

(2) Any document or other material which is provided to, received by, or prepared in the Department of Justice or any other department or agency of the United States in connection with a request by a domestic concern under the procedure established under paragraph (1), shall be exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5 and shall not, except with the consent of the domestic concern, be made publicly available, regardless of whether the Attorney General responds to such a request or the domestic concern withdraws such request before receiving a response.

(3) Any domestic concern who has made a request to the Attorney General under paragraph (1) may withdraw such request prior to the time

the Attorney General issues an opinion in response to such request. Any request so withdrawn shall have no force or effect.

(4) The Attorney General shall, to the maximum extent practicable, provide timely guidance concerning the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy with respect to the preceding provisions of this section to potential exporters and small businesses that are unable to obtain specialized counsel on issues pertaining to such provisions. Such guidance shall be limited to responses to requests under paragraph (1) concerning conformity of specified prospective conduct with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section and general explanations of compliance responsibilities and of potential liabilities under the preceding provisions of this section.

**(g) Penalties**

(1)(A) Any domestic concern that is not a natural person and that violates subsection (a) or (i) of this section shall be fined not more than $2,000,000.

(B) Any domestic concern that is not a natural person and that violates subsection (a) or (i) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.

(2)(A) Any natural person that is an officer, director, employee, or agent of a domestic concern, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern, who willfully violates subsection (a) or (i) of this section shall be fined not more than $100,000 or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

(B) Any natural person that is an officer, director, employee, or agent of a domestic concern, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern, who violates subsection (a) or (i) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.

(3) Whenever a fine is imposed under paragraph (2) upon any officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder of a domestic concern, such fine may not be paid, directly or indirectly, by such domestic concern.

**(h) Definitions**

For purposes of this section:

(1) The term ''domestic concern'' means—

(A) any individual who is a citizen, national, or resident of the United States; and

(B) any corporation, partnership, association, joint-stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship which has its principal place of business in the United States, or which is organized under the laws of a State of the United States or a territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States.

(2)(A) The term ''foreign official'' means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or of a public international organization, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality, or for or on behalf of any such public international organization.

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), the term ''public international organization'' means—

(i) an organization that is designated by Executive order pursuant to section 288 of title 22; or

(ii) any other international organization that is designated by the President by Executive order for the purposes of this section, effective as of the date of publication of such order in the Federal Register.

(3)(A) A person's state of mind is ''knowing'' with respect to conduct, a circumstance, or a result if—

(i) such person is aware that such person is engaging in such conduct, that such circumstance exists, or that such result is substantially certain to occur; or

(ii) such person has a firm belief that such circumstance exists or that such result is substantially certain to occur.

(B) When knowledge of the existence of a particular circumstance is required for an offense, such knowledge is established if a person is aware of a high probability of the existence of such circumstance, unless the person actually believes that such circumstance does not exist.

(4)(A) The term ''routine governmental action'' means only an action which is ordinarily and commonly performed by a foreign official in—

(i) obtaining permits, licenses, or other official documents to qualify a person to do business in a foreign country;

(ii) processing governmental papers, such as visas and work orders;

(iii) providing police protection, mail pickup and delivery, or scheduling inspections associated with contract performance or inspections related to transit of goods across country;

(iv) providing phone service, power and water supply, loading and unloading cargo, or protecting perishable products or commodities from deterioration; or

(v) actions of a similar nature.

(B) The term ''routine governmental action'' does not include any decision by a foreign official whether, or on what terms, to award new business to or to continue business with a particular party, or any action taken by a foreign official involved in the decision-making process to encourage a decision to award new business to or continue business with a particular party.

(5) The term ''interstate commerce'' means trade, commerce, transportation, or communication among the several States, or between any foreign country and any State or between any State and any place or ship outside thereof, and such term includes the intrastate use of—

(A) a telephone or other interstate means of communication, or

(B) any other interstate instrumentality.

**(i) Alternative jurisdiction**

(1) It shall also be unlawful for any United States person to corruptly do any act outside

the United States in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to any of the persons or entities set forth in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (a) of this section, for the purposes set forth therein, irrespective of whether such United States person makes use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in furtherance of such offer, gift, payment, promise, or authorization.

(2) As used in this subsection, the term ''United States person'' means a national of the United States (as defined in section 1101 of title 8) or any corporation, partnership, association, joint-stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship organized under the laws of the United States or any State, territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States, or any political subdivision thereof.

(Pub. L. 95–213, title I, § 104, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1496; Pub. L. 100–418, title V, § 5003(c), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1419; Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXIII, § 330005, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2142; Pub. L. 105–366, § 3, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3304.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of Pub. L. 95–213, the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, and not as part of act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which comprises this chapter.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(a)(1), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

''(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, or (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or''.

Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(a)(2), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

''(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, or (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate,''.

Subsec. (a)(3)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(a)(3), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

''(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, or (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or''.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(d)(2), substituted ''Subsections (a) and (i)'' for ''Subsection (a)''.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(d)(3), substituted ''subsection (a) or (i)'' for ''subsection (a)'' in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(d)(4), substituted ''subsection (a) or (i)'' for ''subsection (a)''.

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(b)(1), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows:

''(1)(A) Any domestic concern that violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than $2,000,000.

''(B) Any domestic concern that violates subsection (a) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.''

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(b)(2), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows:

''(2)(A) Any officer or director of a domestic concern, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern, who willfully violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than $100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

''(B) Any employee or agent of a domestic concern who is a United States citizen, national, or resident or is otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States (other than an officer, director, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern), and who willfully violates subsection (a) of this section, shall be fined not more than $100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

''(C) Any officer, director, employee, or agent of a domestic concern, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern, who violates subsection (a) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.''

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(c), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: ''The term 'foreign official' means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality.''

Subsec. (h)(4)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(e), substituted ''The'' for ''For purposes of paragraph (1), the'' in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 105–366, § 3(d)(1), added subsec. (i).

1994—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 103–322 substituted ''domestic concern'' for ''issuer'' in closing provisions.

1988—Pub. L. 100–418 substituted ''Prohibited foreign trade'' for ''Foreign corrupt'' in section catchline and amended text generally, revising and restating as subsecs. (a) to (h) provisions of former subsecs. (a) to (d).

## § 78dd–3. Prohibited foreign trade practices by persons other than issuers or domestic concerns

### (a) Prohibition

It shall be unlawful for any person other than an issuer that is subject to section 78dd–1 of this title or a domestic concern (as defined in section 78dd–2 of this title), or for any officer, director, employee, or agent of such person or any stockholder thereof acting on behalf of such person, while in the territory of the United States, corruptly to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or to do any other act in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to—

(1) any foreign official for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official to use his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such person in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person;

(2) any foreign political party or official thereof or any candidate for foreign political office for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such party, official, or candidate to use its or his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such person in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person; or

(3) any person, while knowing that all or a portion of such money or thing of value will be offered, given, or promised, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, to any foreign political party or official thereof, or to any candidate for foreign political office, for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to use his or its influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such person in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person.

**(b) Exception for routine governmental action**

Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to any facilitating or expediting payment to a foreign official, political party, or party official the purpose of which is to expedite or to secure the performance of a routine governmental action by a foreign official, political party, or party official.

**(c) Affirmative defenses**

It shall be an affirmative defense to actions under subsection (a) of this section that—

(1) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was lawful under the written laws and regulations of the foreign official's, political party's, party official's, or candidate's country; or

(2) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was a reasonable and bona fide expenditure, such as travel and lodging expenses, incurred by or on behalf of a foreign official, party, party official, or candidate and was directly related to—

(A) the promotion, demonstration, or explanation of products or services; or

(B) the execution or performance of a contract with a foreign government or agency thereof.

**(d) Injunctive relief**

(1) When it appears to the Attorney General that any person to which this section applies, or officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder thereof, is engaged, or about to engage, in any act or practice constituting a violation of subsection (a) of this section, the Attorney General may, in his discretion, bring a civil action in an appropriate district court of the United States to enjoin such act or practice, and upon a proper showing, a permanent injunction or a temporary restraining order shall be granted without bond.

(2) For the purpose of any civil investigation which, in the opinion of the Attorney General, is necessary and proper to enforce this section, the Attorney General or his designee are empowered to administer oaths and affirmations, subpoena witnesses, take evidence, and require the production of any books, papers, or other documents which the Attorney General deems relevant or material to such investigation. The attendance of witnesses and the production of documentary evidence may be required from any place in the United States, or any territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States, at any designated place of hearing.

(3) In case of contumacy by, or refusal to obey a subpoena issued to, any person, the Attorney General may invoke the aid of any court of the United States within the jurisdiction of which such investigation or proceeding is carried on, or where such person resides or carries on business, in requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of books, papers, or other documents. Any such court may issue an order requiring such person to appear before the Attorney General or his designee, there to produce records, if so ordered, or to give testimony touching the matter under investigation. Any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof.

(4) All process in any such case may be served in the judicial district in which such person resides or may be found. The Attorney General may make such rules relating to civil investigations as may be necessary or appropriate to implement the provisions of this subsection.

**(e) Penalties**

(1)(A) Any juridical person that violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than $2,000,000.

(B) Any juridical person that violates subsection (a) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.

(2)(A) Any natural person who willfully violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than $100,000 or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

(B) Any natural person who violates subsection (a) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.

(3) Whenever a fine is imposed under paragraph (2) upon any officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder of a person, such fine may not be paid, directly or indirectly, by such person.

**(f) Definitions**

For purposes of this section:

(1) The term ''person'', when referring to an offender, means any natural person other than a national of the United States (as defined in section 1101 of title 8[1] or any corporation, partnership, association, joint-stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship organized under the law of a foreign nation or a political subdivision thereof.

(2)(A) The term ''foreign official'' means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or of a public international organization, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality, or for or on behalf of any such public international organization.

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), the term ''public international organization'' means—

(i) an organization that is designated by Executive order pursuant to section 288 of title 22; or

(ii) any other international organization that is designated by the President by Executive order for the purposes of this section, effective as of the date of publication of such order in the Federal Register.

(3)(A) A person's state of mind is knowing, with respect to conduct, a circumstance or a result if—

(i) such person is aware that such person is engaging in such conduct, that such circumstance exists, or that such result is substantially certain to occur; or

(ii) such person has a firm belief that such circumstance exists or that such result is substantially certain to occur.

(B) When knowledge of the existence of a particular circumstance is required for an offense, such knowledge is established if a person is aware of a high probability of the existence of such circumstance, unless the person actually believes that such circumstance does not exist.

(4)(A) The term ''routine governmental action'' means only an action which is ordinarily and commonly performed by a foreign official in—

(i) obtaining permits, licenses, or other official documents to qualify a person to do business in a foreign country;

(ii) processing governmental papers, such as visas and work orders;

(iii) providing police protection, mail pick-up and delivery, or scheduling inspections associated with contract performance or inspections related to transit of goods across country;

(iv) providing phone service, power and water supply, loading and unloading cargo, or protecting perishable products or commodities from deterioration; or

(v) actions of a similar nature.

(B) The term ''routine governmental action'' does not include any decision by a foreign official whether, or on what terms, to award new business to or to continue business with a particular party, or any action taken by a foreign official involved in the decision-making process to encourage a decision to award new business to or continue business with a particular party.

(5) The term ''interstate commerce'' means trade, commerce, transportation, or communication among the several States, or between any foreign country and any State or between any State and any place or ship outside thereof, and such term includes the intrastate use of—

(A) a telephone or other interstate means of communication, or

(B) any other interstate instrumentality.

(Pub. L. 95–213, title I, § 104A, as added Pub. L. 105–366, § 4, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3306.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of Pub. L. 95–213, the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, and not as part of act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which comprises this chapter.

## § 78ee. Transaction fees

**(a) Recovery of cost of services**

The Commission shall, in accordance with this section, collect transaction fees and assessments that are designed to recover the costs to the Government of the supervision and regulation of securities markets and securities professionals, and costs related to such supervision and regulation, including enforcement activities, policy and rulemaking activities, administration, legal services, and international regulatory activities.

**(b) Exchange-traded securities**

Subject to subsection (j) of this section, each national securities exchange shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate equal to $15 per $1,000,000 of the aggregate dollar amount of sales of securities (other than bonds, debentures, other evidences of indebtedness, security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)) transacted on such national securities exchange.

**(c) Off-exchange trades of exchange registered and last-sale-reported securities**

Subject to subsection (j) of this section, each national securities association shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate equal to $15 per $1,000,000 of the aggregate dollar amount of sales transacted by or through any member of such association otherwise than on a national securities exchange of securities (other than bonds, debentures, other evidences of indebtedness, security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)) registered on a national securities exchange or subject to prompt last sale reporting pursuant to the rules of the Commission or a registered national securities association.

**(d) Assessments on security futures transactions**

Each national securities exchange and national securities association shall pay to the Commission an assessment equal to $0.009 for each round turn transaction (treated as includ-

[1] So in original. A closing parenthesis probably should appear.

ing one purchase and one sale of a contract of sale for future delivery) on a security future traded on such national securities exchange or by or through any member of such association otherwise than on a national securities exchange, except that for fiscal year 2007 and each succeeding fiscal year such assessment shall be equal to $0.0042 for each such transaction.

**(e) Dates for payments**

The fees and assessments required by subsections (b), (c), and (d) of this section shall be paid—

(1) on or before March 15, with respect to transactions and sales occurring during the period beginning on the preceding September 1 and ending at the close of the preceding December 31; and

(2) on or before September 30, with respect to transactions and sales occurring during the period beginning on the preceding January 1 and ending at the close of the preceding August 31.

**(f) Exemptions**

The Commission, by rule, may exempt any sale of securities or any class of sales of securities from any fee or assessment imposed by this section, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the equal regulation of markets and brokers and dealers, and the development of a national market system.

**(g) Publication**

The Commission shall publish in the Federal Register notices of the fee and assessment rates applicable under this section for each fiscal year not later than April 30 of the fiscal year preceding the fiscal year to which such rate applies, together with any estimates or projections on which such fees are based.

**(h) Pro rata application**

The rates per $1,000,000 required by this section shall be applied pro rata to amounts and balances of less than $1,000,000.

**(i) Deposit of fees**

**(1) Offsetting collections**

Fees collected pursuant to subsections (b), (c), and (d) of this section for any fiscal year—

(A) shall be deposited and credited as offsetting collections to the account providing appropriations to the Commission; and

(B) except as provided in subsection (k) of this section, shall not be collected for any fiscal year except to the extent provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

**(2) General revenues prohibited**

No fees collected pursuant to subsections (b), (c), and (d) of this section for fiscal year 2002 or any succeeding fiscal year shall be deposited and credited as general revenue of the Treasury.

**(j) Recapture of projection windfalls for further rate reductions**

**(1) Annual adjustment**

For each of the fiscal years 2003 through 2011, the Commission shall by order adjust each of the rates applicable under subsections (b) and (c) of this section for such fiscal year to a uniform adjusted rate that, when applied to the baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales for such fiscal year, is reasonably likely to produce aggregate fee collections under this section (including assessments collected under subsection (d) of this section) that are equal to the target offsetting collection amount for such fiscal year.

**(2) Mid-year adjustment**

For each of the fiscal years 2002 through 2011, the Commission shall determine, by March 1 of such fiscal year, whether, based on the actual aggregate dollar volume of sales during the first 5 months of such fiscal year, the baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar volume of sales used under paragraph (1) for such fiscal year (or $48,800,000,000,000 in the case of fiscal year 2002) is reasonably likely to be 10 percent (or more) greater or less than the actual aggregate dollar volume of sales for such fiscal year. If the Commission so determines, the Commission shall by order, no later than such March 1, adjust each of the rates applicable under subsections (b) and (c) of this section for such fiscal year to a uniform adjusted rate that, when applied to the revised estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales for the remainder of such fiscal year, is reasonably likely to produce aggregate fee collections under this section (including fees collected during such 5-month period and assessments collected under subsection (d) of this section) that are equal to the target offsetting collection amount for such fiscal year. In making such revised estimate, the Commission shall, after consultation with the Congressional Budget Office and the Office of Management and Budget, use the same methodology required by subsection (*l*)(2) of this section.

**(3) Final rate adjustment**

For fiscal year 2012 and all of the succeeding fiscal years, the Commission shall by order adjust each of the rates applicable under subsections (b) and (c) of this section for all of such fiscal years to a uniform adjusted rate that, when applied to the baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales for fiscal year 2012, is reasonably likely to produce aggregate fee collections under this section in fiscal year 2012 (including assessments collected under subsection (d) of this section) equal to the target offsetting collection amount for fiscal year 2011.

**(4) Review and effective date**

In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall not be required to comply with the provisions of section 553 of title 5. An adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (1), (2), or (3) and published under subsection (g) of this section shall not be subject to judicial review. Subject to subsections (i)(1)(B) and (k) of this section—

(A) an adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (1) shall take effect on the later of—

(i) the first day of the fiscal year to which such rate applies; or

(ii) thirty days after the date on which a regular appropriation to the Commission for such fiscal year is enacted;

(B) an adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (2) shall take effect on April 1 of the fiscal year to which such rate applies; and

(C) an adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (3) shall take effect on the later of—

(i) the first day of fiscal year 2012; or

(ii) thirty days after the date on which a regular appropriation to the Commission for fiscal year 2012 is enacted.

**(k) Lapse of appropriation**

If on the first day of a fiscal year a regular appropriation to the Commission has not been enacted, the Commission shall continue to collect (as offsetting collections) the fees and assessments under subsections (b), (c), and (d) of this section at the rate in effect during the preceding fiscal year, until 30 days after the date such a regular appropriation is enacted.

***(l)* Definitions**

For purposes of this section:

**(1) Target offsetting collection amount**

The target offsetting collection amount for each of the fiscal years 2002 through 2011 is determined according to the following table:

| Fiscal year: | Target offsetting collection amount |
|---|---|
| 2002 | $732,000,000 |
| 2003 | $849,000,000 |
| 2004 | $1,028,000,000 |
| 2005 | $1,220,000,000 |
| 2006 | $1,435,000,000 |
| 2007 | $881,000,000 |
| 2008 | $892,000,000 |
| 2009 | $1,023,000,000 |
| 2010 | $1,161,000,000 |
| 2011 | $1,321,000,000 |

**(2) Baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales**

The baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales for any fiscal year is the baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales of securities (other than bonds, debentures, other evidences of indebtedness, security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)) to be transacted on each national securities exchange and by or through any member of each national securities association (otherwise than on a national securities exchange) during such fiscal year as determined by the Commission, after consultation with the Congressional Budget Office and the Office of Management and Budget, using the methodology required for making projections pursuant to section 907 of title 2.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 31, 48 Stat. 904; Mar. 17, 1944, ch. 101, 58 Stat. 117; Pub. L. 94–29, § 22, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 162; Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, § 405(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3442; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, § 301(b)(14), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–432; Pub. L. 107–123, §§ 2, 3, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2390.)

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(1), substituted ''Subject to subsection (j) of this section, each'' for ''Every'' and struck out at end ''Fees collected pursuant to this subsection shall be deposited and collected as general revenue of the Treasury.''

Pub. L. 107–123, § 2(1)–(3), substituted ''$15 per $1,000,000'' for ''1/300 of one percent'' and ''security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)'' for ''and security futures products'' and struck out '', except that for fiscal year 2007 or any succeeding fiscal year such rate shall be equal to 1/800 of one percent of such aggregate dollar amount of sales'' before period at end of first sentence.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(3), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c), substituted ''Off-exchange trades of exchange registered and last-sale-reported securities'' for ''Off-exchange trades of last-sale-reported securities'' in subsec. heading, struck out par. (1) heading, substituted ''Subject to subsection (j) of this section, each national securities'' for ''Each national securities'', inserted ''registered on a national securities exchange or'' after ''narrow-based security index))'', struck out '', excluding any sales for which a fee is paid under subsection (c) of this section'' after ''national securities association'', and struck out pars. (2) and (3), which related to deposit of fees and lapse of appropriations.

Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(2), struck out heading and text of former subsec. (c). Text read as follows: ''Each national securities association shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate equal to 1/300 of one percent of the aggregate dollar amount of sales transacted by or through any member of such association otherwise than on a national securities exchange of securities registered on such an exchange (other than bonds, debentures, other evidences of indebtedness, and security futures products), except that for fiscal year 2007 or any succeeding fiscal year such rate shall be equal to 1/800 of one percent of such aggregate dollar amount of sales. Fees collected pursuant to this subsection shall be deposited and collected as general revenue of the Treasury.''

Pub. L. 107–123, § 2(1),(2), (4), which directed that subsec. (d) be amended by substituting ''$15 per $1,000,000'' for ''1/300 of one percent'' and ''security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)'' for ''and security futures products'', and striking out '', except that for fiscal year 2007, or any succeeding fiscal year, such rate shall be equal to 1/800 of one percent of such aggregate dollar amount of sale'' before period at end of par. (1), was executed by making the amendment in subsec. (c), to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the amendment by Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(3), which redesignated subsec. (d) as (c). See above.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(4), (6), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d) and substituted ''except that for fiscal year 2007 and each succeeding fiscal year such assessment shall be equal to $0.0042 for each such transaction'' for ''except that for fiscal year 2007 or any succeeding fiscal year such assessment shall be equal to $0.0075 for each such transaction. Assessments collected pursuant to this subsection shall be deposited and collected as general revenue of the Treasury''. Former subsec. (d) redesignated (c).

Pub. L. 107–123, § 2(5), which directed that subsec. (e) be amended by substituting ''$0.009'' for ''$0.02'', was executed by making the amendment in subsec. (d), to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the amendment by Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(4), (6) which redesignated subsec. (e) as (d). See above.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(5), (6), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e) and substituted ''Dates for payments'' for ''Dates for payment of fees'' in heading and ''The fees and assessments required'' for ''The fees required'' in introductory provisions. Former subsec. (e) redesignated (d).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(6), redesignated subsec. (g) as (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (e).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(6), (b)(2), redesignated subsec. (h) as (g) and inserted before period at end ''not later than April 30 of the fiscal year preceding the fiscal year to which such rate applies, together with any estimates or projections on which such fees are based''. Former subsec. (g) redesignated (f).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(6), redesignated subsec. (i), as enacted by Pub. L. 107–123, § 2(6), as (h). See below. Former subsec. (h) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(a)(7), added subsec. (i). Pub. L. 107–123, § 2(6), added subsec. (i).

Subsecs. (j) to (*l*). Pub. L. 107–123, § 3(b)(1), added subsecs. (j) to (*l*).

2000—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)(1)], inserted ''and assessments'' after ''fees''.

Subsecs. (b), (c), (d)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)(2)], substituted ''other evidences of indebtedness, and security futures products'' for ''and other evidences of indebtedness''.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)(6)], added subsec. (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (f).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)(5)], redesignated subsec. (e) as (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)(3)], inserted ''or assessment'' after ''fee''.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)(5)], redesignated subsec. (f) as (g). Former subsec. (g) redesignated (h).

Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)(4)], inserted ''and assessment'' after ''fee''.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 106–554, § 1(a)(5) [title II, § 206(f)(5)], redesignated subsec. (g) as (h).

1998—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted ''this section'' for ''this subsection''.

1996—Pub. L. 104–290 reenacted section catchline without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: ''Every national securities exchange shall pay to the Commission on or before March 15 of each calendar year a fee in an amount equal to one three-hundredths of 1 per centum of the aggregate dollar amount of the sales of securities (other than bonds, debentures, and other evidences of indebtedness) transacted on such national securities exchange during each preceding calendar year to which this section applies. Every registered broker and dealer shall pay to the Commission on or before March 15 of each calendar year a fee in an amount equal to one three-hundredths of 1 per centum of the aggregate dollar amount of the sales of securities registered on a national securities exchange (other than bonds, debentures, and other evidences of indebtedness) transacted by such broker or dealer otherwise than on such an exchange during each preceding calendar year: *Provided, however*, That no payment shall be required for any calendar year in which such payment would be less than one hundred dollars. The Commission, by rule, may exempt any sale of securities or any class of sales of securities from any fee imposed by this section, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the equal regulation of markets and brokers and dealers, and the development of a national market system.''

1975—Pub. L. 94–29 amended section generally, extending provisions requiring the payment of fees to include transactions in listed securities which occur in the over-the-counter market.

1944—Act Mar. 17, 1944, amended section generally, inserting provisions exempting from the payment of the fee securities designated for exemption by the Secretary of the Treasury.

### Effective Date of 2002 Amendment

Pub. L. 107–123, § 11, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2401, provided that:

''(a) In General.—Except as provided in subsections (b) and (c), the amendments made by this Act [see Short Title of 2002 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 2001.

''(b) Immediate Transaction Fee Reductions.—The amendments made by section 2 [amending this section] shall take effect on the later of—

''(1) the first day of fiscal year 2002; or

''(2) thirty days after the date on which a regular appropriation to the Commission for such fiscal year is enacted.

''(c) Additional Exceptions.—The authorities provided by section 6(b)(9) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)(9)] and sections 13(e)(9), 14(g)(9), and 31(k) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(e)(9), 78n(g)(9), and 78ee(k)], as so designated by this Act, shall not apply until October 1, 2002.''

### Effective Date of 1996 Amendment

Section 405(b) of Pub. L. 104–290 provided that:

''(1) In general.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to transactions in securities that occur on or after October 1, 1997.

''(2) Off-exchange trades of last sale reported transactions.—The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to transactions described in section 31(d)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [subsec. (d)(1) of this section] (as amended by subsection (a) of this section) that occur on or after September 1, 1997.''

### Effective Date of 1975 Amendment

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective Jan. 1, 1976, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### Transfer of Functions

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§ 1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### Study of the Effect of Fee Reductions

Pub. L. 107–123, § 9, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2400, provided that:

''(a) Study.—The Office of Economic Analysis of the Securities and Exchange Commission (hereinafter referred to as the 'Office') shall conduct a study of the extent to which the benefits of reductions in fees effected as a result of this Act [see Short Title of 2002 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] are passed on to investors.

''(b) Factors for Consideration.—In conducting the study under subsection (a), the Office shall—

''(1) consider the various elements of the securities industry directly and indirectly benefiting from the fee reductions, including purchasers and sellers of securities, members of national securities exchanges, issuers, broker-dealers, underwriters, participants in investment companies, retirement programs, and others;

''(2) consider the impact on different types of investors, such as individual equity holders, individual investment company shareholders, businesses, and other types of investors;

''(3) include in the interpretation of the term 'investor' shareholders of entities subject to the fee reductions; and

''(4) consider the economic benefits to investors flowing from the fee reductions to include such factors as market efficiency, expansion of investment opportunities, and enhanced liquidity and capital formation.

''(c) Report to Congress.—Not later than 2 years after the date of the enactment of this Act [Jan. 16, 2002], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall submit to the Congress the report prepared by the Of-

fice on the findings of the study conducted under subsection (a).''

FEES FROM NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS FOR MEMBER TRANSACTIONS OTHER THAN ON NATIONAL SECURITIES EXCHANGES

Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, § 101(a) [title V], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009, 3009–61, provided in part: ''That effective January 1, 1997, every national securities association shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate of one-three-hundredth of one percentum of the aggregate dollar amount of sales transacted by or through any member of such association otherwise than on a national securities exchange (other than bonds, debentures, and other evidences of indebtedness) subject to prompt last sale reporting pursuant to the rules of the Commission or a registered national securities association, excluding any sales for which a fee is paid under section 31 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78ee), and such increase shall be deposited as an offsetting collection to this appropriation, to remain available until expended, to recover the costs to the Government of the supervision and regulation of securities markets and securities professionals: *Provided further*, That the fee due from every national securities association shall be paid on or before September 30, 1997, with respect to transactions and sales occurring during the period beginning on January 1, 1997, and ending at the close of August 31, 1997''.

## § 78ff. Penalties

### (a) Willful violations; false and misleading statements

Any person who willfully violates any provision of this chapter (other than section 78dd–1 of this title), or any rule or regulation thereunder the violation of which is made unlawful or the observance of which is required under the terms of this chapter, or any person who willfully and knowingly makes, or causes to be made, any statement in any application, report, or document required to be filed under this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title, or by any self-regulatory organization in connection with an application for membership or participation therein or to become associated with a member thereof which statement was false or misleading with respect to any material fact, shall upon conviction be fined not more than $5,000,000, or imprisoned not more than 20 years, or both, except that when such person is a person other than a natural person, a fine not exceeding $25,000,000 may be imposed; but no person shall be subject to imprisonment under this section for the violation of any rule or regulation if he proves that he had no knowledge of such rule or regulation.

### (b) Failure to file information, documents, or reports

Any issuer which fails to file information, documents, or reports required to be filed under subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title or any rule or regulation thereunder shall forfeit to the United States the sum of $100 for each and every day such failure to file shall continue. Such forfeiture, which shall be in lieu of any criminal penalty for such failure to file which might be deemed to arise under subsection (a) of this section, shall be payable into the Treasury of the United States and shall be recoverable in a civil suit in the name of the United States.

### (c) Violations by issuers, officers, directors, stockholders, employees, or agents of issuers

(1)(A) Any issuer that violates subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1 of this title shall be fined not more than $2,000,000.

(B) Any issuer that violates subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1 of this title shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Commission.

(2)(A) Any officer, director, employee, or agent of an issuer, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who willfully violates subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1 of this title shall be fined not more than $100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

(B) Any officer, director, employee, or agent of an issuer, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who violates subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1 of this title shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Commission.

(3) Whenever a fine is imposed under paragraph (2) upon any officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder of an issuer, such fine may not be paid, directly or indirectly, by such issuer.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 32, 48 Stat. 904; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 9, 49 Stat. 1380; June 25, 1938, ch. 677, § 4, 52 Stat. 1076; Pub. L. 88–467, § 11, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 580; Pub. L. 94–29, §§ 23, 27(b), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 162, 163; Pub. L. 95–213, title I, § 103(b), Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1496; Pub. L. 98–376, § 3, Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 100–418, title V, § 5003(b), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1419; Pub. L. 100–704, § 4, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4680; Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(d), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3303; Pub. L. 107–204, title XI, § 1106, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 810.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–204 substituted ''$5,000,000, or imprisoned not more than 20 years'' for ''$1,000,000, or imprisoned not more than 10 years'' and ''$25,000,000'' for ''$2,500,000''.

1998—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(d)(1), (2), substituted ''subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1'' for ''section 78dd–1(a)'' in subpars. (A) and (B).

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 105–366, § 2(d)(3), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows:

''(2)(A) Any officer or director of an issuer, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who willfully violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title shall be fined not more than $100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

''(B) Any employee or agent of an issuer who is a United States citizen, national, or resident or is otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States (other than an officer, director, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer), and who willfully violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title, shall be fined not more than $100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

''(C) Any officer, director, employee, or agent of an issuer, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than $10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Commission.''

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–704 substituted ''$1,000,000'' for ''$100,000'', ''10 years'' for ''five years'',

''is a person other than a natural person'' for ''is an exchange'', and ''$2,500,000'' for ''$500,000''.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–418 amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows:

''(1) Any issuer which violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title shall, upon conviction, be fined not more than $1,000,000.

''(2) Any officer or director of an issuer, or any stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who willfully violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title shall, upon conviction, be fined not more than $10,000, or imprisoned not more than five years, or both.

''(3) Whenever an issuer is found to have violated section 78dd–1(a) of this title, any employee or agent of such issuer who is a United States citizen, national, or resident or is otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States (other than an officer, director, or stockholder of such issuer), and who willfully carried out the act or practice constituting such violation shall, upon conviction, be fined not more than $10,000, or imprisoned not more than five years, or both.

''(4) Whenever a fine is imposed under paragraph (2) or (3) of this subsection upon any officer, director, stockholder, employee, or agent of an issuer, such fine shall not be paid, directly or indirectly, by such issuer.''

1984—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–376 substituted ''$100,000'' for ''$10,000''.

1977—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95–213, § 103(b)(1), inserted ''(other than section 78dd–1 of this title)'' after ''Any person who willfully violates any provision of this chapter''.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95–213, § 103(b)(2), added subsec. (c).

1975—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29, §§ 23(1), 27(b), inserted ''or by any self-regulatory organization in connection with an application for membership or participation therein or to become associated with a member thereof,'' and substituted ''or imprisoned not more than five years'' for ''or imprisoned not more than two years''.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94–29, § 23(2), struck out subsec. (c) which rendered this section inapplicable to violations of any rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to paragraph (3) of subsection (c) of section 78*o* of this title.

1964—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88–467 substituted ''required to be filed under'' for ''pursuant to an undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in'' and inserted ''or any rule or regulation thereunder'' after ''section 78*o* of this title.''

1938—Subsec. (c). Act June 25, 1938, added subsec. (c).

1936—Subsec. (a). Act May 27, 1936, inserted ''or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78*o* of this title''.

Subsec. (b). Act May 27, 1936, added subsec. (b).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–704 not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704, set out as a note under section 78*o* of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–376 effective Aug. 10, 1984, see section 7 of Pub. L. 98–376, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

### § 78gg. Separability

If any provision of this chapter, or the application of such provision to any person or circumstances, shall be held invalid, the remainder of the chapter and the application of such provision to persons or circumstances other than those as to which it is held invalid, shall not be affected thereby.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 33, 48 Stat. 905.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original ''this Act''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

### § 78hh. Effective date

This chapter shall become effective on July 1, 1934, except that sections 78f and 78*l*(b to e) of this title shall become effective on September 1, 1934; and sections 78e, 78g, 78h, 78i(a)(6), 78j, 78k, 78*l*(a), 78m, 78n, 78*o*, 78p, 78q, 78r, 78s, and 78dd of this title shall become effective on October 1, 1934.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 34, 48 Stat. 905.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original ''This Act''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

### § 78hh–1. Effective date of certain sections

This Act shall become effective on May 27, 1936; except that clause (2) of subsection (f) of section 78*l* of this title, and subsections (a) and (d) of section 78*o* of this title, shall become effective ninety days after May 27, 1936, and that clause (3) of subsection (f) of section 78*l* of this title shall become effective six months after May 27, 1936.

(May 27, 1936, ch. 462, § 12, 49 Stat. 1380.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is act May 27, 1936, ch. 462, 49 Stat. 1375, popularly known as the Unlisted Securities Trading Act, which enacted sections 78*l*–1, 78*o*–1, 78*o*–2, and 78hh–1 of this title, and amended sections 78*l*, 78*o*, 78q, 78r, 78t, 78u, 78w, and 78ff of this title.

CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

### § 78ii. Omitted

CODIFICATION

Section, act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title II, § 210, 48 Stat. 908, transferred the powers, duties and functions of the Federal Trade Commission under subchapter I of chapter 2A of this title to the Securities and Exchange Commission. Pending proceedings before the Federal Trade Commission were continued before the Securities and Exchange Commission.

### § 78jj. Repealed. Pub. L. 100–181, title III, § 330, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259

Section, act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title II, § 211, 48 Stat. 909, provided for a study and report by Securities and Exchange Commission of reorganization proceedings. Study as basis for Trust Indenture Act of 1939, see section 77bbb of this title.

### § 78kk. Authorization of appropriations

In addition to any other funds authorized to be appropriated to the Commission, there are au-

thorized to be appropriated to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Commission, $776,000,000 for fiscal year 2003, of which—

(1) $102,700,000 shall be available to fund additional compensation, including salaries and benefits, as authorized in the Investor and Capital Markets Fee Relief Act (Public Law 107–123; 115 Stat. 2390 et seq.);

(2) $108,400,000 shall be available for information technology, security enhancements, and recovery and mitigation activities in light of the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001; and

(3) $98,000,000 shall be available to add not fewer than an additional 200 qualified professionals to provide enhanced oversight of auditors and audit services required by the Federal securities laws, and to improve Commission investigative and disciplinary efforts with respect to such auditors and services, as well as for additional professional support staff necessary to strengthen the programs of the Commission involving Full Disclosure and Prevention and Suppression of Fraud, risk management, industry technology review, compliance, inspections, examinations, market regulation, and investment management.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 35, as added Pub. L. 94–29, § 24, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 162; amended Pub. L. 95–20, Apr. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 47; Pub. L. 95–211, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1492; Pub. L. 95–425, § 1, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 96–477, title IV, § 401, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2291; Pub. L. 100–181, title I, § 101, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1249; Pub. L. 100–704, § 8, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4683; Pub. L. 101–550, title I, § 102, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2713; Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, § 403, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3441; Pub. L. 105–353, title II, § 201, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3233; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, § 601, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 793.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Investor and Capital Markets Fee Relief Act, referred to in par. (1), is Pub. L. 107–123, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2390. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title of 2002 Amendments note set out under section 78a of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 94–29, which directed amendment of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 by adding this section at the end, is reflected in the source credit above as adding this section to title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

AMENDMENTS

2002—Pub. L. 107–204 reenacted section catchline without change and amended text generally, updating fiscal year from 1999 to 2003, striking out subsec. designations, and substituting provisions relating to funding of additional compensation, terrorist-related information technology, security enhancements, and recovery and mitigation activities, and an additional 200 qualified professionals to provide enhanced oversight for provisions relating to miscellaneous expenses such as meetings and official functions.

1998—Pub. L. 105–353 reenacted section catchline without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: ''There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Commission $300,000,000 for fiscal year 1997, in addition to any other funds authorized to be appropriated to the Commission.''

1996—Pub. L. 104–290 reenacted section catchline without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: ''There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Commission—

''(1) $178,023,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1990; and

''(2) $212,609,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1991.''

1990—Pub. L. 101–550 amended section generally, substituting present provisions for former provisions which provided for fiscal years 1988 and 1989: in subsec. (a), for authorization of appropriations for the Commission; in subsec. (b), for amounts for the EDGAR system; and in subsec. (c), for amounts for reception and representation expenses and for membership in the International Organization of Securities Commissions.

1988—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–704 added subsec. (c).

1987—Pub. L. 100–181 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section read as follows: ''There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Commission not to exceed $51,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1976, $56,500,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1977, $63,750,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1978, $69,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1979, $79,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1980, $85,500,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1981, $96,640,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1982, and $106,610,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1983. For fiscal years succeeding fiscal year 1983, there may be appropriated such sums as the Congress may hereafter authorize by law.''

1980—Pub. L. 96–477 authorized appropriations of $85,500,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1981, $96,640,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1982, and $106,610,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1983, and provided that for fiscal years succeeding 1983, there may be appropriated such sums as Congress may authorize by law.

1978—Pub. L. 95–425 inserted provision authorizing appropriations of not to exceed $69,000,000, and $79,000,000 for fiscal years ending Sept. 30, 1979 and 1980, respectively, and substituted ''fiscal year 1980'' for ''fiscal year 1978''.

1977—Pub. L. 95–211 authorized appropriations of not to exceed $63,750,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1978, and substituted ''For the fiscal years succeeding fiscal year 1978'' for ''For fiscal years succeeding the 1977 fiscal year'' in provisions relating to appropriations for succeeding fiscal years.

Pub. L. 95–20 substituted ''$56,500,000'' for ''$55,000,000''.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–704 not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 set out as a note under section 78*o* of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

## § 78*ll*. Requirements for the EDGAR system

The Commission, by rule or regulation—

(1) shall provide that any information in the EDGAR system that is required to be disseminated by the contractor—

(A) may be sold or disseminated by the contractor only pursuant to a uniform schedule of fees prescribed by the Commission;

(B) may be obtained by a purchaser by direct interconnection with the EDGAR system;

(C) shall be equally available on equal terms to all persons; and

(D) may be used, resold, or redisseminated by any person who has lawfully obtained

such information without restriction and without payment of additional fees or royalties; and

(2) shall require that persons, or classes of persons, required to make filings with the Commission submit such filings in a form and manner suitable for entry into the EDGAR system and shall specify the date that such requirement is effective with respect to that person or class; except that the Commission may exempt persons or classes of persons, or filings or classes of filings, from such rules or regulations in order to prevent hardships or to avoid imposing unreasonable burdens or as otherwise may be necessary or appropriate.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 35A, as added Pub. L. 100–181, title I, § 102, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1249; amended Pub. L. 105–353, title II, § 202, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3234.)

CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 100–181, which directed amendment of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 by adding this section after section 35 of the Act, is reflected in the source credit above as adding this section to title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. See Codification note set out under section 78kk of this title.

AMENDMENTS

1998—Subsecs. (a) to (c). Pub. L. 105–353, § 202(1), struck out subsecs. (a) to (c) which: in subsec. (a) required certifications and reports as prerequisite to obligation or expenditure of funds for establishment or operation of EDGAR system, and provided that former section 78kk(b) amounts were to be exclusive source of funds for systems procurement and operation; in subsec. (b) required report on status of EDGAR development, implementation, and progress to certain Congressional committees at six-month intervals; and in subsec. (c) required certification to Congressional committees of total costs, cost/benefit analysis, assurances of compliance, capabilities of system, competence of personnel, and review of test group filings prior to entering into contract for EDGAR system.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 105–353, § 202(2), struck out ''(d)'' before ''The Commission'' in introductory provisions, in par. (2) substituted period for ''; and'' at end, and struck out par. (3) which read as follows: ''shall require all persons who make any filing with the Commission, in addition to complying with such other rules concerning the form and manner of filing as the Commission may prescribe, to submit such filings in written or printed form—

''(A) for a period of at least one year after the effective date specified for such person or class under paragraph (2); or

''(B) for a shorter period if the Commission determines that the EDGAR system (i) is reliable, (ii) provides a suitable alternative to such written and printed filings, and (iii) assures that the provision of information through the EDGAR system is as effective and efficient for filers, users, and disseminators as provision of such information in written or printed form.''

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 105–353, § 202(1), struck out subsec. (e) which read as follows: ''For the purposes of carrying out its responsibilities under subsection (d)(3) of this section, the Commission shall consult with representatives of persons filing, disseminating, and using information contained in filings with the Commission.''

## § 78mm. General exemptive authority

### (a) Authority

#### (1) In general

Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, but notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any person, security, or transaction, or any class or classes of persons, securities, or transactions, from any provision or provisions of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder, to the extent that such exemption is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and is consistent with the protection of investors.

#### (2) Procedures

The Commission shall, by rule or regulation, determine the procedures under which an exemptive order under this section shall be granted and may, in its sole discretion, decline to entertain any application for an order of exemption under this section.

### (b) Limitation

The Commission may not, under this section, exempt any person, security, or transaction, or any class or classes of persons, securities, or transactions from section 78*o*–5 of this title or the rules or regulations issued thereunder or (for purposes of section 78*o*–5 of this title and the rules and regulations issued thereunder) from any definition in paragraph (42), (43), (44), or (45) of section 78c(a) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 36, as added Pub. L. 104–290, title I, § 105(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3424.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

## § 78nn. Tennessee Valley Authority

### (a) In general

Commencing with the issuance by the Tennessee Valley Authority of an annual report on Commission Form 10–K (or any successor thereto) for fiscal year 2006 and thereafter, the Tennessee Valley Authority shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission has prescribed or may prescribe, such periodic, current, and supplementary information, documents, and reports as would be required pursuant to section 78m of this title if the Tennessee Valley Authority were an issuer of a security registered pursuant to section 78*l* of this title. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, the Tennessee Valley Authority shall not be required to register any securities under this chapter, and shall not be deemed to have registered any securities under this chapter.

### (b) Limited treatment as issuer

Commencing with the issuance by the Tennessee Valley Authority of an annual report on Commission Form 10–K (or any successor thereto) for fiscal year 2006 and thereafter, the Tennessee Valley Authority shall be deemed to be an issuer for purposes of section 78j–1 of this title, other than for subsection (m)(1) or (m)(3) of section 78j–1 of this title. The Tennessee Valley Authority shall not be required by this subsection to comply with the rules issued by any national securities exchange or national securi-

ties association in response to rules issued by the Commission pursuant to section 78j–1(m)(1) of this title.

**(c) No effect on TVA authority**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to diminish, impair, or otherwise affect the authority of the Board of Directors of the Tennessee Valley Authority to carry out its statutory functions under the Tennessee Valley Authority Act of 1933 [16 U.S.C. 831 et seq.].

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, § 37, as added Pub. L. 108–447, div. H, title V, § 520(2), Dec. 8, 2004, 118 Stat. 3267.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original ''this title''. See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title and Codification note below.

The Tennessee Valley Authority Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (c), is act May 18, 1933, ch. 32, 48 Stat. 58, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 12A (§ 831 et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 831 of Title 16 and Tables.

CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 108–447, which directed amendment of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 by adding this section at the end, is reflected in the source credit above as adding this section to title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

## CHAPTER 2B–1—SECURITIES INVESTOR PROTECTION

Sec.
78aaa. Short title.
78bbb. Application of Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
78ccc. Securities Investor Protection Corporation.
(a) Creation and membership.
(b) Powers.
(c) Board of Directors.
(d) Meetings of Board.
(e) Bylaws and rules.
78ddd. SIPC Fund.
(a) In general.
(b) Initial required balance for fund.
(c) Assessments.
(d) Requirements respecting assessments and lines of credit.
(e) Prior trusts; overpayments and underpayments.
(f) Borrowing authority.
(g) SEC loans to SIPC.
(h) SEC notes issued to Treasury.
(i) Consolidated group.
78eee. Protection of customers.
(a) Determination of need of protection.
(b) Court action.
(c) SEC participation in proceedings.
(d) SIPC participation.
78fff. General provisions of a liquidation proceeding.
(a) Purposes.
(b) Application of title 11.
(c) Determination of customer status.
(d) Apportionment.
(e) Costs and expenses of administration.
78fff–1. Powers and duties of a trustee.
(a) Trustee powers.
(b) Trustee duties.
(c) Reports by trustee to court.
(d) Investigations.
78fff–2. Special provisions of a liquidation proceeding.
(a) Notice and claims.
(b) Payments to customers.
(c) Customer related property.
(d) Purchase of securities.
(e) Closeouts.
(f) Transfer of customer accounts.
78fff–3. SIPC advances.
(a) Advances for customers' claims.
(b) Other advances.
(c) Discretionary advances.
78fff–4. Direct payment procedure.
(a) Determination regarding direct payments.
(b) Notice.
(c) Payments to customers.
(d) Effect on claims.
(e) Jurisdiction of Bankruptcy Courts.
(f) Discontinuance of direct payment procedures.
(g) References.
78ggg. SEC functions.
(a) Administrative procedure.
(b) Enforcement of actions.
(c) Examinations and reports.
78hhh. Examining authority functions.
78iii. Functions of self-regulatory organizations.
(a) Collection agent.
(b) Immunity.
(c) Inspections.
(d) Reports.
(e) Consultation.
(f) Financial condition of members.
78jjj. Prohibited acts.
(a) Failure to pay assessment, etc.
(b) Engaging in business after appointment of trustee or initiation of direct payment procedure.
(c) Concealment of assets; false statements or claims.
78kkk. Miscellaneous provisions.
(a) Public inspection of reports.
(b) Liability of members of SIPC.
(c) Liability of SIPC and Directors, officers, or employees.
(d) Advertising.
(e) SIPC exempt from taxation.
(f) Section 78t(a) of this title not to apply.
(g) SEC study of unsafe or unsound practices.
78*lll*. Definitions.

### § 78aaa. Short title

This chapter may be cited as the ''Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970''.

(Pub. L. 91–598, § 1(a), Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1636.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original ''This Act'', meaning Pub. L. 91–598, Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1636. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Tables.

SHORT TITLE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 95–283, § 1, May 21, 1978, 92 Stat. 249, provided that: ''This Act [enacting sections 78fff–1 to 78fff–4 of this title, amending sections 77c, 78c, 78k, and 78ccc to 78*lll* of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 78k of this title] may be cited as the 'Securities Investor Protection Act Amendments of 1978'.''

### § 78bbb. Application of Securities Exchange Act of 1934

Except as otherwise provided in this chapter, the provisions of the Securities Exchange Act of